CAESAR
GALIC WAR
BOOKS I-II
WITH JANES
SIGHT READING

JANES AND JANES
JULIUS CAESAR.

Bust in the British Museum.
CAESAR
GALLIC WAR
BOOKS I–II

EDITED WITH NOTES
SUMMARY OF FORMS AND SYNTAX, PROSE COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARY BY

ERNST RIESS

AND

ARTHUR L. JANES

OF THE DEPARTMENT OF CLASSIC LANGUAGES
BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN

Combined with
Janes's Sight Reading

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION RECEIVED
SEP 9 - 1914

LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO
PREFACE

This edition of Caesar has been prepared in view of the tendency of many teachers of Latin, in accordance with the recommendations of the New York State Education Department for second-year Latin, to limit the intensive study of Caesar to Books I and II of the Gallic War, thus leaving for sight reading a wider variation of material to be selected from the remainder of the Gallic War, from the Civil War, or from the Lives of Nepos. It provides the material for thorough study of these two books and furthermore, as a preparation for the requirements of the College Entrance Examination Board, it will be found serviceable when used in conjunction with any collection of sight reading material, although it is specially designed to be used with Janes's Second Year Sight Reading.

The text is that of Meusel, revised on the basis of the Caesar Studien by Klotz. To aid in the important part which reading aloud should hold in the classroom, all long vowels have been marked, and to insure the acquisition of a working vocabulary, all words required by the New York City Syllabus, which is based on the Lodge list, have been printed in full-faced type where they occur first. These words are also listed on pages 263 to 271 in order of first occurrence for purposes of drill and review.

The notes on the two books are equally full in order to enable teachers to begin the reading of the Commentaries with either book. Our aim has been to make difficult points clear to the pupil without either unduly facilitating the translation or befogging him by elaborate grammatical explanations. The editors have regarded their practical experience in the classroom as their safest guide.

The introduction, for which we beg to acknowledge
gratefully the help derived from Sihler's *Annals of Caes.* is intended to be assigned to the pupil for recitation. Should help him to understand the historical background of the work, to grow into an appreciation of Caesar as man and as a writer, and to form a clear idea of the Roman army as a splendidly organized machine of war. For the latter part Oehler's excellent monograph on the Roman army has been used as foundation.

The illustrations, while their artistic merit may serve well to attract the eye of the casual reader, have been selected with care to clear up, by objective representational points not readily elucidated in the compass of a note.

The editors are convinced that second-year pupils are not mature enough to profit by thumbing a grammar. Therefore, an appendix has been added which provides in simple form all of the Caesarean syntax required, illustrated by examples taken from the text. In this, as well as in the making of the prose exercises, the statistics gathered by Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators have been of the greatest service. A short outline of accidence has been included, to enable the teacher to give during the year the ever necessary review in forms.

One distinctly novel feature is to be noted. While the exercises for prose composition follow a systematic syntactical outline, their content covers a connected narrative of the events of the two campaigns. The editors believe that during the second year students should be required only to render into Latin sentences that are reasonable short. But they hope, by the arrangement just indicate that these sentences will have been made more interesting in their sequence than would otherwise have been the case.

ERNST RIESS.
ARTHUR L. JANES.
# CONTENTS

**RIESS AND JANES'S CAESAR, BOOKS I–II**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAPS AND PLANS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INTRODUCTION:

I. Caesar's Life:
   A. To the Governorship of Gaul  
   B. The Conquest of Gaul  
   C. Caesar as Ruler of Rome  
II. Caesar's Writings  
III. Caesar the Man  
IV. The Roman Army  
V. The Gallic Civilization  

## TEXT OF Gallic War:

- Book I  
- Book II  

## NOTES:

- Book I  
- Book II  

## GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY:

- Inflections  
- Syntax  

## WORD LIST  

## LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION  

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY  

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY
JANES'S *SECOND YEAR LATIN FOR SIGHT READING*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SIGHT TRANSLATION</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAESAR: Selections from the Gallic War:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAESAR: Selections from the Civil War:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEPOS: Life and Works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selections from the Lives:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. Miltiades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Themistocles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Cimon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Epaminondas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Hannibal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Cato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WORD FORMATION</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDEX OF PROPER NAMES</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

IN RIESS AND JANES'S CAESAR, BOOKS I-II

Julius Caesar. Bust in the British Museum  Frontispiece
Roman Soldier. Photograph of a model in the Central Museum, Mainz, Germany 20
Roman Shield. Reconstruction from a shield found in the River Tyne, near South Shields, England 22
Pilum 23
Gladius 23
Centurion 25
Roman Horseman 27
Musical Instruments 28
Standard Bearer 29
Eagle of the Legion 29
Testudo 31
Roman Camp. From plan of Novaesium in Germany 33
Siege of a Town 35
Siege Engines. (1) Ariës. (2) Vinea. (3) Sketch showing agger, turris, and vineae 37
Siege Artillery. (1) Catapulta. (2) Scorpiō. (3) Ballista 38
Roman Ship 39
Gallic Warrior 41
Carrus et Iumenta 45
Roman Bridge 51
Matara et Tragula 59
Gallic Coin 61
Head of a German 69
Sagittarius 85
Funditor 85

IN JANES'S SECOND YEAR LATIN FOR SIGHT READING

Beginning of the Third Book of the Gallic War, from a manuscript of the tenth century 9
Centurion 13
Navis Longa 27
Silver Denarius, struck 38–36 B.C. 35

7
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Obsidio
Signa
Testudo
Reindeer and European Elk
The Defenses on Caesar's Rampart before Alesia
Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia
Conjectural Appearance of Caesar's Works before Alesia
Levis Armaturae Miles
Glans
Pompey
Bridge of Boats
Return of the Greeks from Salamis
Citharae
Sacrificium
Amphorae
Caduceus

MAPS AND PLANS
IN RIESS AND JANES'S CAESAR, BOOKS 1-1
Gaul (double page)
Campaign of B.C. 58
Fortifications along the Rhone
Battle with the Helvetians
Sketch of Vesontio
Maneuvers of Ariovistus
Campaign of B.C. 57
Battle on the Axona
Battle with the Nervii

IN JANES'S SECOND YEAR LATIN FOR SIX READING
Imperium Romanum (double page). Graecia and Cherson (inserts)
The Siege of Alesia
Macedonia and Thessaly
Caesar's Siege of Pompey near Dyrrhachium
The Piraeus
INTRODUCTION

I. Caesar’s Life.

A. To the Governorship of Gaul

1. Gaius Iulius Caesar was born at Rome on July 12, 100 B.C. His family belonged to the highest nobility of the city, tracing its origin back through Iulus, son of Aeneas, the founder of Lavinium, to the goddess Venus herself and incidentally, through this connection, to Romulus, the founder of Rome. In spite of this, however, the men of the family, for some generations before Gaius, had not held the highest office in the gift of the Roman nation, the consulship. Nor was that branch of the Julian house to which Gaius belonged closely allied with the ruling aristocracy. On the contrary, Caesar’s aunt had married the great leader of the popular party, Marius, and this family tie was of marked consequence in shaping the political career of the young man.

2. He had hardly finished his early education, which had been completely under Greek influence, when—in 85 B.C.—his father died, just after the youth had been nominated by Marius to one of the highest priestly offices in Rome, the priesthood of Juppiter. In Roman fashion, he married very early, when barely seventeen years old. His bride was Cornelia, daughter of Cornelius Cinna, the successor of Marius. Thus his marriage bound the young man more closely still to the destinies of the popular party. Small wonder, then, that upon the restoration of the aristocratic power by Sulla he was one of the first to fall under the ban of the dictator. He was ordered
to divorce his young wife, but with a courage extreme rare among his contemporaries he refused to obey as was proscribed. Only through the earnest prayers of his friends was the dictator moved to pardon Caesar, although with deep insight into the young man's character, he said to have exclaimed, "In this one youth there are many Mariuses."

3. Caesar thought it wise to withdraw from the eyes of the ruler and, in order to gain some military experience, entered the Roman army then fighting against Mithradates in the East. There he so distinguished himself by personal bravery that he received the corona civica, a wreath given to those who, at the risk of their own life, had rescued a fellow soldier from death.

4. After the death of Sulla, Caesar returned to Rome and became a prominent member of the Roman bar, distinguishing himself as a relentless prosecutor of aristocrat evildoers. Probably to escape the enmity aroused by his attitude, he took refuge once more in the East, on the occasion in the island of Rhodes, where he studied eloquence under the Greek teachers, who at that time were the chief glory of that commonwealth. During his journey thither he fell into the hands of the pirates who thronged the waterways of the Mediterranean. The story goes that while he charmed these men by his wit and amability, he did not hesitate to assert, in apparent jest, that as soon as he should be set free he would pursue them and would put them to death. This promise he kept. His studies at Rhodes were interrupted by the renewal of the Mithradatic War. Out of his own fortune he enlisted some troops and with them held the southwest of Asia Minor, Caria, and Lycia, against the powerful enemy.

5. In 73 B.C. he again returned to Rome and became
the successful candidate for the office of pontifex, a dignity in which he succeeded his mother's brother. In 68 he entered upon his political career, by filling the office of quaestor. After his wife's death, he, for a while, seemed to ally himself with the aristocrats, for he married Pompeia, Sulla's granddaughter. His quaestorship took him to Spain and he discharged its important financial duties with skill and devotion. Upon his return he supported Pompey, now his relative, for the command in the Mithradatic War, thus joining forces with the orator Cicero against the aristocrats. In 65 he held the office of aedilis, the duties of which consisted chiefly in supervising the grain supply and in winning the favor of the populace in the capital by lavish public spectacles. In 63 Caesar became the head of the pontifical College (pontifex maximus), and at the same time he was elected praetor for the year succeeding. He now declared himself openly the leader of the popular party. When, after the disclosure of the conspiracy of Catiline, the aristocrats had voted to inflict the extreme penalty on the conspirators, he had the courage to oppose these measures and proposed life imprisonment instead of the illegal execution of the defendants. After discharging the duties of the praetorship he went to Spain as governor. This province he managed with great skill, although not with exceeding honesty. On the contrary, he understood so well how to enrich himself at the expense of the provincials that upon his return he was sufficiently in funds to be able to pay off a debt of more than $1,000,000, and still had left an ample fortune.

6. On his return to Rome, Caesar found himself confronted by a critical political situation. Pompey, a man a few years older than himself, had, by a peculiar chain of circumstances, achieved great fame as a military com-
with admirable energy Caesar raised first the militia, then a force of six legions, and succeeded in annihilating the greater part of the invaders and turning the rest back into Switzerland. The story of how, through this victory, Rome was led into a war with the Germans, how the Gauls of the north, fearing for their independence, rose up in arms only to be defeated, forms the content of the first two books of Caesar's Commentaries; the remainder tells of the complete subjugation of France, the repeated invasion by the Roman army of both Germany and Britain, and, finally, the last great, and almost successful, struggle of the Gauls for their freedom under their brave leader, Vercingetorix. When this man had finally been captured, Gallic independence was forever at an end, and Caesar could turn more peaceful means of incorporating the conquered into the Roman Empire.

II. We can hardly overestimate the importance of the conquest of Gaul. For the first time in a century Rome ceased to face toward the east, and turned her aspirations toward the west, where she was destined to leave her abiding impress in the ultimate creation of the so-called Romance nations, Spain and France, whose languages still show the stamp of the centuries of Roman domination. Nay more, had not Rome, continuing in Caesar's footsteps, made the west her own, there would be to-day no Roman church and the world of western, that is, European and American, civilization would bear a totally different aspect.

C. Caesar as Ruler of Rome

12. Caesar was not destined to carry the pacification of Gaul to its completion. The alliance of the three triumvirs had been renewed at a conference at Lucca, in 56 B.C. Yet at the end of the five-year period for which it had been
concluded, Caesar and Pompey had become bitter enemies. The death of Crassus, who in 53 had fallen at Carrhae in Syria in a battle against the Parthians, had made it plain that the question must be decided whether Caesar or Pompey should become the sole ruler. The former, as yet, gave no indication of the wide range of his ambitions. He demanded merely permission to stand again for the consulship while still governor of Gaul—an unconstitutional proceeding, it is true, but the Roman constitution had by now often been set aside—and together with this the renewal of his governorship for another five years. When both demands had been refused, the senate in subservience to Pompey tried to weaken his forces,—they demanded that he detach some of his legions for a pretended war of vengeance against the Parthians,—and when all peace proposals on his part had been scornfully rejected, Caesar took the decisive step. He crossed the little stream Rubico, which formed the boundary between his province and Italy, and thus began the Civil War.

13. Pompey, pursued by Caesar's troops, fled, first to Brundisium in the southeast of Italy, and later to Greece; while Caesar, preferring to secure his rear before pursuing, returned to Rome, established there a provisional government of his own, and then set out to defeat Pompey's lieutenants in the latter's official province, Spain. After a difficult but successful campaign; he returned, crossed to Greece, and confronted his adversary, first at Dyrrhachium on the west coast, where he was unsuccessful, and a few months later on the plain of Pharsalus in Thessaly. There Pompey was so thoroughly defeated that he took ship for Egypt, hoping for a refuge with its boy king whom in times of distress he had befriended. But he was treacherously betrayed by Ptolemy, and when Caesar, in hasty pursuit,
color his narrative in such a manner that he appears to have been drawn into every one of his wars against hisvion and to have undertaken them only to defend an guard the Roman state and its allies. Yet, even the temporaries, torn as they were by conflicting emotions of love and hatred, bestowed unanimous admiration upon charm of his narrative. The Commentaries, however, became popular in the way in which the great clas Roman literature intertwined themselves with the the Romans. They were never used by the Romans.

17. Space permits us merely to mention, in passing, there are still extant other writings by Caesar, dealin the Civil War (three books), the campaigns in Alexia in Africa, and in Spain. The last three are Caesar' indirectly, in so far as they are based upon his notes. real authors are to be sought among the officers of his

III. Caesar the Man.

18. No book can claim to be great, unless in read we clearly discern the character of the man who com it. Judged by this standard, Caesar's Commentaries justly lay claim to greatness. His character, both in and private relations, is revealed in his writings. As dier, he was resourceful, energetic but cautious, persc brave, and always ready to learn both from his own takes and those of his subordinates or of the enemy relentless fighter, he knew, true statesman as he was, to temper severity with clemency, when by its near might gain the love of those whom he had taught the superiority of the Roman arms. And yet, this man, speaks of his mercy as well known, could punish resis or treachery with a cruelty which seems a blot on
character, but which must be credited to the necessity im-
posed upon a conqueror who is far from the base of na-
tional support. He knew and loved his soldiers, and by
strict but just discipline, as well as by indulgence at the
right moment, he had ensured a loyalty and devotion on
their part, which more than once won the day for him
when all seemed lost. With all his tireless energy and
devotion to duty he possessed a keen sense of humor and
a gift of making warm personal friends, not only among
his Roman associates, but also among the Gauls whom he
ruled and conquered. Nothing, perhaps, is more marvel-
ous than that, after eight years of incessant warfare, and
only one year after a rebellion which had threatened to
bury the conqueror amid the ruins of his conquest, he
could leave Gaul, without fear of a new revolt, never to set
foot in it again. In fact, a generation after the conquest
the country had become thoroughly Romanized, and within
a century it was fitted to receive from the emperor Claudius
full Roman citizenship.

19. As Caesar stands revealed in his writings, so he is
shown in his portraits, of which several have survived to
our own times. The high forehead — he had early become
bald and later loved to hide this blemish under a laurel
wreath — shows the deep and clear thinker, the bold eye
reveals the keen glance which penetrated and read the
souls of men. The thin but sensitive lips betray the
orator and the wit, but also the man who appreciated the
good things of life, while the spare but lithe frame befits
the soldier of many campaigns.

20. Such in image and in word Caesar stands before us,
the greatest Roman of the end of the republic. Much
hated and much loved, he has been made the object of im-
moderate praise and immoderate abuse, both among an-
cients and moderns. But, if his admirers have exaggerated his good traits no less than his adversaries have overemphasized the faults of his nature, in one thing friend and foe agree and that is praise of the general, the statesman, the writer. He stands deservedly a solitary imposing figure at the portal leading from republican to imperial type and model of ages.

IV. The Roman Army

21. Originally a body formed of the citizens in times of fighting in times of but otherwise engaged in the peaceful pursuit of agriculture and commerce, the Roman army had undergone great changes about two generations before Caesar’s ascendancy. When, in the time of Marius, the citizens’ army had proved insufficient to meet the demands of modern and prolonged warfare, great military genius in Marius had turned the army into a profession body, still nominally
crushed from among the citizens, but enlisted for a period of twenty years and thoroughly drilled in a rigid system of tactics.

22. The army consisted of infantry (militēs, peditēs) and of cavalry (equitēs). The former was divided into soldiers of the legions (legiōnāriī) and allies (auxilia).

23. The legiōnārius was a citizen, who by the oath of allegiance (sacrāmentum) enlisted for twenty years. This gave him the right to carry arms and the claim to wages (stipendium) and a pension (praemia militāria). Caesar raised the annual pay of the private from 120 to 225 dēnāriī (§50), of the subaltern from 250 to 450 dēnāriī (§100). This was paid three times a year, and after deducting certain moneys for supplies furnished, the remainder was—at least in imperial times—invested for the soldier's benefit. The total saved, together with gifts on the part of the general and the soldier's share in the booty, was paid to him when he was honorably discharged, and in addition he received a special reward, either in cash or in the form of a land grant.

24. The unit of the army was the legion—theoretically 6000 men strong, but in fact generally numbering about 4000, divided as follows:

1 legiō = 10 cohortēs = 30 manipuli = 60 centuriae.

After eight years of service a legion earned the honorary title of legiō veterāna; until then it was known, first as a body of recruits (tirōnēs), and then as newly enrolled (proximē cōnscripta). The legions were officially numbered throughout the whole army. The consuls commanded numbers I–IV. Caesar began with the seventh legion; by enrollment he reached number XV, and at the last he also had legiō I under his command, ten legions all together.

25. The soldier was dressed in high boots (calīga), a
Roman Shield.
(Reconstruction from a shield found in the River Tyne, near South Shields, England.)
THE ROMAN ARMY

thick shirtlike garment (túnica), and a short cloak (sagum) fastened by a safety pin on the right shoulder. The tunic was belted to hold it close. In very cold weather he wore also a thick hooded cloak. His head was protected by a helmet (galea), ornamented with a crest (crista) of three feathers. On the march the helmet was carried over the right shoulder. He also had a leather cuirass (lōrica) and a shield (scūtum), four-cornered and oblong, curved like a half cylinder. This shield was made of two layers of wood covered with canvas or skin, and reënforced with metal strips. The center was further strengthened by a boss (umbō), from which metal strips radiated to the corners, forming the representation of a thunderbolt. Leather covers protected the shield on the march and saved the labor of polishing. They were taken off immediately before going into battle. On the march the shield was carried by means of a strap, commonly on the back.

26. The weapons of attack were two. The javelin (pīlum) was about six feet long, of which one third to one half was formed by the iron point, a thin rod of iron with

PILUM. a steel head, while the shaft itself

GLADIUS.
was of heavy wood. It could be fetched back, in case of a miss, by means of a leather strap fastened to its end. The shaft ended in a short pointed metal shoe, by which it could be rammed into the ground when the army camped. But the principal weapon was a short, straight sword (*gladius*), two-edged and pointed and used chiefly for thrusting. Contrary to our custom, it was carried on the right side by means of a belt from the left shoulder to the right hip.

27. **On the march** the soldier was burdened not only with his arms, but also with a large amount of baggage (*sarcinae*), several posts for the fortifying of the camp, saws, spades, hatchets, a sickle for the cutting of forage, a cooking spit, a pot, and a cup. In addition to this he carried a war ration of three days' grain, and on for marches, when the supply train was left behind, he carried 20 days' biscuit. All together he was burdened with about 44 pounds' weight. To enable him to transport all this, he was equipped with a forked stick to which the poles, etc., were tied and which he carried over his shoulder. The whole burden, of course, was always laid aside (*expeditus*) before the army went into battle.

28. The great mass of **supplies**, also the tents and siege engines (*impedimenta*), were transported with the attendants on wagons and pack animals, and accompanied by a large number of general servants (*calonēs*).

29. The army was also accompanied by **traders** who bought up the booty and prisoners, and by **hawkers** who sold goods. These, however, were not allowed inside the camp and were required to stop outside the rear gate.

30. The **immediate command** of the soldiers was in hands of the *centurionēs*, heads of the *centuriae*. The men had risen from the ranks and could not attain
higher position. The sixty centurions in each legion ranked according to the number of the cohorts, so that the six centurions of the first cohort—primi pilii—out-ranked all others and were privileged to take part in the deliberations of the council of war. They were distinguished by their uniform and by carrying a cane, of which they made a liberal use in disciplining the soldiers.

31. Between the centurions and the privates there were several petty officers, among whom the standard bearers (signiferi) were the most important. They had to be men of great courage, since the standards, and especially that of the legion, the eagle, were looked upon as holy and their loss was an irreparable disgrace.

32. The staff officers began with the tribuni militum, six to a legion and holding command in rotation, each for two months. In Caesar’s army these men were appointed by him from among the young Romans in his suite, and were, therefore, not always distinguished for their military excellence. The great panic before the encounter with Ariovistus was started by these young men.

33. Directly under the commander in chief were the general officers, legati, who were nominated by the Roman
senate. Caesar, in the battle with Ariovistus, for the time introduced the custom of placing them in comm of a legion. At that time he had only five légātī therefore was compelled to place one legion under his master-general, the quaestor. The highest in rank am the légātī had the title prō praetōre, and commanded army during the absence of the commander in chief.

34. All staff officers were distinguished by their unifo chiefly by a red tunic, and by a cuirass made of metal stead of leather.

35. The commander in chief (dux) wore the palūdān tum, a cloak of purple color.

36. The finances of the army were in the hands of paymaster-general, quaestor, who was elected by the peo while the engineer corps of the army was directly un the supervision of the praefectus fabrum, who in Caes camp also acted as his confidential secretary.

37. The auxilia, who were recruited among non-citizens furnished the light-armed troops and the main body of cavalry. The foot soldiers among them served chiefly slingers and archers, or were equipped with their natic arms. From their usual position at the right and left wi of the army in battle line they were also known as ālā Caesar's cavalry consisted largely of Gauls, and after first year, when Caesar had learned to appreciate t skill, of hired Germans as well. They were command by native officers under a Roman staff commander, praefectus equitum, and were divided into troops (turn of about 80 men each.

38. The bodyguard of the commander was formed the cohors praetūria, a body of picked men who receiv 50 per cent more pay than the ordinary privates.

39. The army also numbered in its ranks musicians, w
were employed to give the necessary signals. The instruments used were the *tuba*, a straight wind instrument, about three feet long, used chiefly for summons to attack or to retreat, a signal repeated for each detachment on the *cornū*, an almost circular instrument. The signal for relieving the watches was given on the *bucina*. Every even-

*Roman Horseman.*

ing after supper the *classicum* or “taps” was sounded, to mark the beginning of night service.

40. The soldiers, however, placed their chief reliance for the commands to be given in the *standards* (*signa*). Each legion had a silver eagle (*aquila*) placed on a cross-piece on top of a pole. This eagle, carried by the *aquilifer*, was in charge of the *senior primus pilus* and was always kept in the quarters of the commander of the legion. The cohort had no standard, but each *manipulus* had one,
INTRODUCTION

MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS.
consisting of a pole topped by a cross-piece with ribbons and medals fastened to the pole. The auxiliaries, too, had their signa, sometimes known as vēxilla, a piece of cloth fastened to a crosspiece on top of a pole. Such vēxilla were also carried by any detached body of troops. In addition, there was a scarlet vēxillum, displayed over the commander’s tent (vēxillum prōpōnere) when the men were to form under arms. On the march, the standards were carried in the van, but in battle they were placed behind the last line. In camp, the colors were massed next to headquarters, near a little chapel.

41. The battle order was commonly a triple line (aciēs triplex) for each legion, 4, 3, 3 cohorts. In each cohort the maniples stood side by side and in each maniple the centuriae behind each other, thus:

FRONT

= = =
= = =
= = =
= = =
= = =
= = =
= = =
= = =
the intervals between the cohorts being equal to the size filled by a cohort. After the first discharge, the second line moved up into the vacant spaces and a single line of seven cohorts was formed, thus:

```
FRONT
== ==|== ==|== ==|== ==|== ==|== ==|== ==|== ==
== ==
== ==
```

while the third line remained in reserve.

```
FRONT
****
****
****
****
****
****
****
```

42. The tactics were always offensive. Possible, position was taken on a gentle slope, in order to increase the momentum of charge. An address by the general (actato) after the troops were drawn up (ad instruere) preceded the action. Then the otersign was passed along the ranks and the tuba gave signal to charge. First the soldiers threw their p then they followed this up with a sword charge, w was repeated again and again, until one of the two and gave way. As long as the men retreated in an ord fashion, facing the enemy (pedem referre), the vic might still be regained, but to turn around (terga ver) usually meant a total rout. In an uphill battle, soldiers often formed a roof of shields (testudō). first line held their shields in front, while the other raised the shields over their heads so as to overlap each other. This formation was also used in storming a fortification.
43. On the march the army was divided into a van (agmen primum), the main body (agmen), and a rear guard (agmen novissimum), while scouts and the cavalry preceded and followed and also screened the sides of the marching column.

44. A detachment of centurions and surveyors, under the command of a tribune, preceded the column at a considerable distance, in order to select and lay out the camp for the end of the day.
45. The baggage train of each legion commonly followed immediately in its rear, but when the army was the enemy, three fourths of the soldiers, sub sarcinis, ceded, and one fourth followed, the train of the army. In these circumstances, where the territory mitted it, the whole body marched in battle line.

46. The length of the march usually amounted to a 12 to 15 miles (iter iūstum), interrupted by halts for. There were also rest days. When speed was param- forced marches (magna itinera) of over 20 miles: maxima itinera of about 25 miles, were resorted to, at critical times even night marches were demanded the soldiers.

47. When the army reached the spot selected, the for each body of troops as well as the lines of the ran and the places for the gates had already been mark. flags and the soldiers could at once go to work, but the camp (castra munīre).

48. Whenever possible, the camp was built in the of a rectangle with rounded corners. The earth for king the rampart was secured by making a trench throwing the excavated earth to the inside. But ti for strengthening the rampart and sods to cover its had to be fetched from some distance. In the neigh- hood of the enemy, this was, of course, done under protection of a guard and the soldiers kept their cuir on. The posts which each soldier carried were fast to the top of the rampart and formed a stockade, which strengthened by wooden turrets erected at regular intervals. The gates, of which there were four, one in middle of each side, were protected by a fronting ran (clāvicula), which compelled all strangers to appr them with the unprotected (right) side facing the sol
A space of 200 feet in width was left unoccupied behind the rampart so as to give free communication all around. The front gate (*porta praetòria*) was connected with the rear gate (*porta decumâna*) by a road 50 feet wide (*cardô, via decumâna*), which was broken at the center by the *praetòrium* and *quaestòrium*. As the camp was generally located on the slope of a hill, the road ascended from the...
front to the rear, thus making a successful attack difficult. About midway, the *via decumāna* was inters by another road, 100 feet wide (*via principālis*), con ing the two side gates (*porta principālis dextra, porta cipālis sinistra*). On this street headquarters fronted. the middle of the *via decumāna* was an altar, whil mediately behind it was the general's tent (*praetō* to the right and left of which the *cohors praetōria* can To the right was the quaestor's tent, while in the rear were workshops and the guardhouse. Narrower 1 divided the tents of the *centuriae* and the cohorts, st ranged that they stood back to back between the st: In short, the camp very much resembled, imitated in the plan of a Roman city. The tents (*pellēs, ten tabernācula*) were made of leather and housed each a of ten men.

49. At all times the camp was well patrolled, in reliefs by day and in four watches by night, inspecte the tribunes, while on each side there were strong out (*stationēs*). When, in the morning, camp was broken *tra movēre*), three signals were given: at the first the packed their baggage and struck tents, at the secon carts and pack animals were loaded, at the third the n began.

50. In times of peace, or in winter quarters, the sol were subject to **incessant drill**, both in marching ar the use of their arms. Maneuvers formed a regular of their practice, and three times a month they were cised on a practice march of ten miles.

51. The **discipline** was severe and the **punishments** (lashes, degradation, dishonorable discharge, and execu were frequent and swift. On the other hand, merit rewarded by public commendation, money gifts, promo
increased pay and rations, and by military decorations. The latter (insignia) consisted of wreaths of various kinds, among which the most highly prized were an oak wreath (corōna cīvica), given for the rescue of a comrade in the face of an enemy, and a golden crown (corōna mūrālis) for the man who first scaled the wall of an enemy's fortress. In addition, the men received medals (phalerae) which they wore fastened to their cuirasses (see illustration on p. 25).

52. In contrast to the field operations, which were carried on with great rapidity, the capture of a fortified town, unless
it could be taken by surprise (\textit{ex itinere oppugnāre}), a slow and tedious process. First the ground was leveled to give easier access to the siege engines. This was done by huge movable shields (\textit{plutei}). Then an \textit{agger} or earthworks was constructed of beams, stones, earth, etc. It was commenced at a distance and gradually rose until it equaled in height that of the city wall. As it progressed, the soldiers worked under the protection of sheds of strong timbers on rollers, covered with mats soaked in water, so as to frustrate any attempt on the part of the beleaguered to set them on fire. When the sheds had been extended across the moat, a movable tower (\textit{ambulātōria}) was brought up, or, if the efforts of the defenders prevented this, the battering ram (\textit{clādus}) was brought into play. Such a ram consisted of a tree 60 to 100 feet long, with an iron ram’s head in front that was suspended from the ceiling of a \textit{vīnea} and swung against the walls by means of ropes. Until this ram had approached the walls, the townspeople might ask for terms of surrender, but after that the town, even if surrendered, was considered to have been taken by storm (\textit{expugnāre}) and its inhabitants were killed or sold into slavery.

53. Where siege works were considered impossible, account of the difficulty of the ground, the still tedious process of starving the town by a \textit{blockade} (\textit{oculatio}) was employed.

54. The \textit{artillery} (\textit{tormenta}) were used by Caesar the first time in field operations, largely, however, for defensive purposes. They were of two kinds, according to whether they shot stones (\textit{ballista}) or beams (\textit{cata}) but were both constructed on the same principle.
SIEGE ENGINES.

(1) Ariēs. (2) Vinea. (3) Sketch showing agger, turris, and vineae.
SIEGE ARTILLERY.

(1) Catapulta. (a) Scorpiō. (3) Ballista.
were worked by means of twisted ropes (*torques*) which, when released, shot their missile with great force and as far as 300 feet. A lighter weapon, the *scorpiò*, could be handled by one man.

55. The **Roman navy** consisted of two kinds of vessels, the galleys (*nāvēs longae*) and the dispatch boats. The galleys were open, rather long and narrow, and were propelled by oars, assisted by the hoisting of a sail when the wind was favorable. The rowers were arranged in tiers or rows, one above the other. The steering was done by means of sweeps, huge paddles, one on each side of the stern. The chief strength of the galleys, which otherwise were very frail vessels, lay in their ram (*rō-strum*), a heavy piece of timber tipped with iron or bronze, at or under the water line. In an engagement the aim was
to cripple the hostile ship either by ramming it or by bringing one side of its oarage by driving one's vessel over. Roman galleys often carried collapsible towers with arti
crafts in them, or boarding bridges. By means of the latter galley was fastened to the enemy's vessel, and the test thus turned into one of military strength, in which complement of regular soldiers carried by the galleys generally proved superior to the sailors of the enemy. Scouting was done by dispatch boats (nāvēs āctuārēs) (Merchant's vessels (nāvēs onerāriae) of all kinds were pressed to carry the troops and supplies where a landing on hostile soil was intended.

V. The Gallic Civilization.

56. The Gauls were by no means a nation of savages, though far less advanced in civilization than their conquerors. They were an agricultural people, and generally lived in open villages or in fortified towns. Their houses were of a rule circular, with thatch roofs. Politically they were divided into a large number of tribes, which were governed by their nobles. In some instances they lived under kings, and often the great landholders intrigued to assume royal dignity. There was little unity among the tribes which were jealous of one another's prosperity. Caesar's time, however, matters had somewhat crystallized so that we may distinguish the three parts of which speaks, Celts, Aquitanians, and Belgians. Of these, Aquitanians seem to have been least civilized; certainly they were of the least importance politically. The Belg seem to have been bound together by a loose confeder; but this did not prove itself strong enough when the vader came, and the tribes fell one by one into his ha...
Through long contact with the Greek settlers of Massilia, they had even acquired the art of writing, using a modification of the Greek alphabet. There were among them two factions, one led by the *Aedui*, the other by the *Arverni*.

Both of these factions desired the sole control, but as neither was strong enough, they leaned on foreign help, — the *Arverni* on the Germans, the *Aedui* on the Romans, — thus furnishing both foreign nations the longed-for opportunity to conquer the country.

57. All the Gauls, including the inhabitants of Britain,
who were related to the continental Gauls, had the common bond of religion, a rather obscure worship of several divinities, directed by a caste of learned priests, the Druids, and of a stern and forbidding nature. It was certainly disfigured by the custom of human sacrifices, which were made chiefly as burnt offerings.

58. As soldiers, the Gauls were brave and enthusiastic, but they lacked the power of prolonged resistance. Defeat commonly sufficed to bring about the surrender of a tribe. They fought in a rude sort of battle line, a square (phalanx), often strengthened by a bulwark of carts. Their camps generally were made in the form of a circle. They wore no protective armor, save a rude head made of the heads of wild animals, and shields of wicker. They employed several kinds of javelins (mauli, trágula), and a long bronze saber for hewing. The tribes of northwestern Gaul, especially the Veneti (Vendée), were good sailors, skilled in maneuvering their sailing vessels. These were built with special regard to the nature of the rough sea of the Bay of Biscay, and for a while offered a stout resistance to Roman attack.
C. IULII CAESARIS

RERUM GESTARUM

BELLI GALLICI

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

Gaul and its inhabitants.

sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēn
montēs et eam partem Óceanī quae est ad Hispāi
pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionē

The conspiracy of Orgetorix, the Helvētian; his death.

25 2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et di-
mus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōnsuli
rēgni cupiditāte inductus consūrātiōnem nōbilitātis
et civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus c
exirent: Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestā
30 totius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius iis pe-
sit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētīi continentur:
ex parte flūmine Rhēnō. lātissimō atque altissimō,
agrum Helvētium ā Germāniō dividit; alterā ex p
monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquanōs et H
35 tiōs; tertīā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui
vinciam nostram ab Helvētiōs dividit. Hīs rēbus fī
ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finit
bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellī
cupidi magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine au
40 hominum et prō gloriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angu
sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, qui in longitūdinēm n
passuum cxxl, in lātītūdinēm clxx patēbant.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis
mōti cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinē
45 comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum
merum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, u
itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs civi
bus pācem et amicitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad ēas rēs c
iciēndās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tert
50 annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad ēas rēs c
iciēndās Orgetorīx dēlīgitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem
civitātēs suscipit. In cē itinere persuādet Casticō, C
mantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater régnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et á senātū populi Rōmānī

Carrus et iumenta.

55 amicus appellātus erat, ut régnum in civitāte suā occu-
pāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgi Aeduo, frātri Diviciāci, qui eō tempore principātum in
civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut idem
cōnārētur persuādet, eique filiam suam in mātrimōnium
dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere,
propetēa quod ipse suae civitātīs imperium obtentūrus
esse: Nōn esse dubium quin tōtius Galliae plūrum Hel-
vētii possent: sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis régna
cconciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc orātiōne adducti inter sē
65 fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et rēgnō occupātō per trēs
potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē
potīri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōri-
bus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgérunt;
70 damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. 
Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūducium
omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undi-
que coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum
magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per
75 nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam
incitāta armis iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, mult
nemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent
gotorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Hē
arbitrantur, quin ipse sībi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetians prepare to emigrate; their choice of routes.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētii id cōnstituerant facere cōnāntur, ut ē finibus suīs exer
Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, op
sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringe;
reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum ut
praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut
mum reditionīs spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia per
subeunda essent; trium mēsium molīta cībāria
quemque domō efferre iūbent. Persuādent Rauracī
Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, fīnitimis uti eōdem ūsi cōns
90 oppidis suīs vicīsque exustis, ūnā cum iis proficiscan
Bōīsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in ag
Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnābant, rece
ad sē sociōs sībi asciscunt.

6. Erant omninō itīnera duo quibus itineribus de
95 exire possent: ūnum per Sēquānōs, angustum et diffic
inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vīx quā sin
carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impedē
ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per ĭ
vinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, pr
tereā quod inter ūnes Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum,
nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus flūt, isque nōnnūllis le
vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum
proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus s

Caesar hurries to Gaul; he parleys with the Helvetians.

7. Caesari cum id nūntiātum essent, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe proficīsci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam uteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā uteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescīndī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitātīs, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sībi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterēā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eīs voluntāte id sībi facere līceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occissum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum non putābat; neque homīnēs inimīcō animō, data facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābant. Tamen, ut spātium intercēdere posset, dum militēs quōs imperāverat conveniērent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad delīberandum sūmptūrum; si quīd vellent, ad Íd. April. reverterentur.

Caesar fortifies the passes and repulses the enemy.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, qui in
flümen Rhodanum influxit, ad montem Iūram, qui
135 Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum
mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque per
Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnīt, castella com-
quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnentur, pro-
possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs
140 et lēgāti ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre ēt ex
populi Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dar
si vīm facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Hu-
ea spē dēiecti, nāvibus iūnctis ratibusque compli-
factis, aliī vādis Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flū-
erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius nōctū si perru-
possent cōnāti, operis mūnitōne et militum concu-
tēlis repulsi ħoc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

The Helvetians negotiate with the Sequani; Caesar levies an

9. Relinquebātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēc
invitis propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cu-
150 sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumno
Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs im-
rent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēq
plūrimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod
civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimōnium dūxe
155 cupiditāte rēgni adductus novis rēbus studēbat et
plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficīō habēre obstrictās vo
Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per
suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque uti intεr-
dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohib
160 Helvētiī, ut sine maleficīō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesāri renūntiātur Helvētiis esse in anim
agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum
facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt,
civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat n
cum periculö prövinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque frumentāris finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei munitiōni quam fecerat T. Labiēnum légātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs conscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs edūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriori Galliam per Alpēs erat cum his quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Catuриgēs, locis superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnabantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsiō, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prövinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulterioris prövinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hi sunt extrā prövinciam trāns Rhodanum primi.

The Gauls appeal to Caesar for aid.

fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmptrī, in Santōnos Helvēt
venirent.

*After part of the Helvetians have been annihilated, they try to... with Caesar; he defies them.*

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōr
Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdīli lēnitā
ut oculūs in utram partem fluat iūdicāri nōn possit
Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūncōs trānsībant. Ut
explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam
cōpio rum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtā
partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē
vīgiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ac
partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.
impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus magnam plē
eōrum concīdit; reliqui sē fugae mandārunt atque
proxīmās silvās abdīderunt. Is pāgus appellā
Tigurīnūs; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor
divisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset per
nostōrum memorīā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēce
eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sīve cāsi
cōnsiliō deōrum immortāliūm, quae pars cīvitātīs ḗ
nīae insignē calamitātem populō Rōmānō intuler
princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn
publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod
sōcerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tīg
eōdem proelīō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proelīō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōr
consequī posset, pontem in Arari faciendum cūrat
ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius ad
commōtī, cum id quod ipsi diēbus xx aegerrimē cē
erant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse
legerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius légā
Diviō princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux He
orum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem

ītūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar con-
stituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellō persequi perseveraret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprō-
visō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ī qui flūmen trāns-
issent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem
aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret;
sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis niterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi conōstitissent ex
calamitāte populi Römānī et internecīōne exe
240 nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.
14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus d
tiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētīi com-
rāssent memorīā tenēret, atque eō gravius fer-
minus meritō populi Römānī accidissent; quī si al
245 iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuissete difficile ca-
sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē in
geret quárē timēret, neque sine causā timendum pu-
Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num
recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvi
250 per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Amb
quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dépōnere p
Quod suā victoriā tam īsolenter glōriārentur, quē
tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, e
pertinēre. Ĉonsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō g
255 hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō se
eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs e
turniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita
tamen, si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, utī ea quae polli
tur factūrés intellegat, et si Aeduīs dē iniūriis quās
260 sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus sa-
ciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum. Divī
spondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs
uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērīnt; eiu
populum Römānum esse testem. Hōc responsō
265 discessit.

Caesar's cavalry defeated.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem
Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum qua
milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque e
sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant qu:
270 partēs hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissi
agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelii sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multituidinem equum propulerant, audacios subsistere nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelii nostris lacesse coepserunt. Caesar suos a proelii continet ac satis habebat in praesenti hostem rapinis, pabullationibus, populatiobusque prohibere. Ita diis circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinies aut senis milibus passuum interesser.

Caesar suspects treachery on the part of the Aeduans.

16. Interim cotidiem Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent publice polliciti flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat; eodem frumento quod flumine Arari navibus subvexerat propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolabant. Diem ex die ducere Aedu; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diuitiis duci intellexit et diem instare quo die frumentum militibus metiri oportaret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Diviciaco et Lisco, qui summis magistratu praerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedu, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris simi possit, tam necessarii tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab ipsis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magnis ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius quod sit desstitutus queritur.
17. Tum dénum Liscus oratiōne Caesaris addu quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs quō auctōritās apud plēbem plurimum valeat, qui privi plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēdiōsā at improbā oratiōne multitūdinem deterrēre nē frūmen cōnferant quod dēbeant: Praestāre, sī iam principā Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānō imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quin, si Helvētiōs s rāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduis libem sint ūreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia quaequ castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā sē coēi nōn posse; quin etiam, quod necessāriam rem coā Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsēquantō id cum 1 culō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit t isse.

18. Caesar hāc oratiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Divi frātrem, dēsignāri sentiēbat; sed, quod pluribus sentibus eās rēs iactāri nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dītit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conv dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēc ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Durigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem pro liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Cor rēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum v gālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, proptereā quod licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et s rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum nās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sē domi, sed etiam apud fīnitimās civitātēs largiter atque huius potentiae causā mātre in Biturigibus ho illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsun
Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinendi venire; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē ēa quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātui quem auxiliō Caesari Aeduī miserant Dumnorīx praerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar consults Diviciācus, Dumnorīx's brother, and pardons the traitor.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs cer-tissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satīs esse causae arbitra-bōtur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iūbere. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōma-num studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam nē eius suppliantiō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbōtur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Trucillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum
365 eò colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsò praesè in conciliò dè Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit sè separatim quisque dè eò apud sè dixerit. Petit ad hortâtur ut sine eius offensiōne animi vel ipse dò causà cògnitā statuat, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

370 20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem, plexus obsecrāre coepit nè quid gravius in frātrem stereet: Scire sè illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eò quam sè dolōris capere, propertē quod, cum ipse grā리um domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minus propter adulēsentiam posset, per sè crēvisset; quod opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, paene ad perniciem suam ǔterētur. Sēsē tamen et an frāternō et exīstimātione vulgi commovēri. Quod si d ei à Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum loc amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum uti tōtius ciliae animi à sè āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verēns à Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextrae prēn cōnsōlātus rogat finem ērandi faciat; tanti eius apud 385 grātiam esse ostendit uti et rei publicae iniūriam et su dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dum gem ad sè vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eò reprehē ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur pōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciā vitet; praeterita sè Diviciācō frātri condōnāre d Dumnorigī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibus loquātur, scire possit.

An ambuscaae is planned, but frustrated by the cowardice of one of officers.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātoribus certior factus ho sub monte cōnscīisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris c
BOOK I, CHAPTERS 20–23

395 quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus qui cōgnōscerent misit. Renūntiātum est faciēm esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et īis ducibus qui iter cōgnōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui cōnsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui rei militāris peritissimus habēbatur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explōrātoribus praemittitur.

405 22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēre tur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quin gentis passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvis compērit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius ēquō amissō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupāri voluerit ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praecceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiāe prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sībi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

Caesar turns to Bibracte; the Helvetians follow.

23. Postridiē eius diē, quod omnīnō biduum supererat cum exercitui frūmentum mētīri oportēret, et quod ā 425 Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiō-
sissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii abera
frūmentāriae prōspiendum existimāvit; itaque it
Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ēre contendit. Ea rēs
fugitīvōs L. Aemilīiī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, l
430bus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre pertes
Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, ēō magis
pridiē superiōribus locis occupātīs proelium nōn
misissent, sive ēō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdi l
435cōnsiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere con-
osterōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacesere coepē

The Helvetians, defeated in a decisive battle, flee.

24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caes
proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque qui susti
hostium impetum misit. Ípse interim in colle 1
triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānā
440in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā cīt
proximē cōnscripserat et omnia auxilia collocāri, it
suprā sē tōtum montem hominibus complēret, in
menta sārcināsque in ūnum locum cōnferri et eum:
qui in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūniri iussit. He
445cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūti impedimenta in i
locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēlectō n
equitātū, phalanget factā sub prīmam nostram s
successērunt.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōns]
450remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spēm 1
tolleret, cohortātūs suōs proelium commisit. Mīli
locō superiōre pilis missīs facile hostium phalae
perfrēgērunt. Ėa disiectā gladiis dēstrictis in eō
petum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat im
455mentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pil-
trānsfixīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, r
BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

A. Position of Helvetians at the beginning of first engagement
B. Position of Romans at the beginning of first engagement
C. Position of Romans after the first engagement
D. Position of Helvetians after renewing the battle
ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multi ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingī, qui hominum milians circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenire, et id cônspicāti Helvētīi, qui in montem sēsé recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmāni conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancīpiti proelīō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēperunt, alterī ad im- pedimenta et carrōs suōs sē con-

483 tuliērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proelīō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vāllo carrōs oblīcerant et ē locō superiore in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāisque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nos-
trōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum pedimentīs castrisque nostrī potiti sunt. Ibi Orggis filia atque ūnus ē filīis captus est. Ex eō prī circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt eāque nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis it intermissī in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnē cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepult occisōrum nostrī triduum morātī eōs sequī nōn posent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mis eōs frūmentō neve aliā rē iuvārent; qui si iūvisset eōdēm locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō i missō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetians surrender and are sent back to their country.

27. Helvētii omnium rērum inopīa adductī légātī déditiōne ad eum misērunt. Qui cum eum in iti convēnissent séque ad pedēs proīcissent supplicite locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō essent suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pāruē Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs ad eōs perfugissent posoccit. Dum ea conquirunt cōnferuntur, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterriti nē a trādītis suppliciō afficeruntur, sīve spē salūtis ind quod in tantā multitudine dēditiōrum suam fugam occultāri aut omnīō ignōrāri posse existimārent, prī nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum egressī ad Rhēnum finē;

510 Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīt, quōrum per finēs ierīs uti conquirerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō hāc reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugis trādītis déditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigē
finēs suōs, unde erant profectioni, reverti iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus amissis domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frumenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicīsque quōs incenderant resti-
525 tuere iussit. Id eā maximē ratione fēcit, quod nōluit
eum locum unde Helvētii discesserant vacare, nē propter
bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt,
ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimi
Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs peten-
530 tibus Aeduis, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in
finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs
dedērunt quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātīisque
condicionem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

Size of the Helvetic forces.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae reperta sunt liti-
535 teris Graecis cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in

Gallic Coin.

tabulis nominātīm ratiō cōnfecta erat, qui numerus domō
exisset eōrum qui arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm
quot pueri, senēs, mulierēsque. Summa erat capiūm
Helvētiōrum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium ;
Latobrigōrum xiv, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxx
his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā
Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia cclxxviii. Eōrū
domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperā
repertus est numerum milium c et x.

The Gauls appeal to Caesar for help against Ariovistus. How th
had come to Gaul.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtius ferē G
lēgāti, prīncipēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātūn
vēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus
vētiōrum inīriis populi Rōmānī ab his poenās
repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex īsū G
quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō
siliō florentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquit:
uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potīr
locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligērent, que
omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuosissimum
cāssent, reliquāsque civitātēs stipendiāriās habē
Petiērunt uti sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem cō
indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret:
habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū a
petere vellent. Eā rē permīssā diem conciliō cō
ērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi qu
commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērū

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem prīncipēs civitātēs
ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque
sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō a
licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flēntēs Caesa
pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contender
labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod, si ēnūnti
esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos videre. Logicns est pro his Diviciacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatibus inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse ut ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. 575 Horum primi circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse; postea-quam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari admassent, traductos plures; nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et viginti milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis con-tendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accipisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amississe. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suae virtute et populii Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuisse, coactos esse Sequanis obidess dare, nobilissimos civitatis, et iure iurandos civitatem ob-stringere sesse neque obsidies repetituros neque auxilium a populii Romani imploraturos neque recusaturos quominus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. Unum esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum quia adduci nnon potuerit ut iurare aut liberos suos obsidies dare. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iure iurandos neque obsidibus tenentur. Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consen-disset tertiamque partem agris Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere iubaret, propterea quod pacis menses ante Harudum milia hominum xxiv ad eum venisse- sent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurus esse pacis annis uti omnem Galli e finibus pellerentur atque
omnēs Germāni Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim ferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, hanc consuetūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. 605 vistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō quod proelium factum sit Adмагetobrigae, super crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimi cuiusque poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūisque ē quā rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius fac Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri. Nisi quid in C. populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallis ider faciendum quod Helvētī fēcerint, ut domō ēm aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, 615 fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. si ēnūntiāta Ario vestō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē obligationibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum suppūsītum. Caesarem vel auctōritāte sua atque exerci recenti victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dē posse nē maiōr multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum cātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ario vestō iniūriā dēfendere.

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciāco habitā, omnēs qu erant magnō flētū auxiliō ā Caesare petere coep Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanō eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent, sed capite dēmissō terram intuēri. Eius rei quae caus mirātus ex ipsis quae sēi. Nihil Sēquanī respondē in eādem tristitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs 630 quaereret neque ūllum omnīnō vocem exprimere idem Diviciācus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse mise et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliqu quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem queri neque au implōrāre audērent absentisque Ario vestō crūdēli
velut si cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, qui intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendi.

Caesar's reasons for interfering.


Ariovistus rejects Caesar's request for a conference. Caesar sends an ultimatum; Ariovistus's haughty reply.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret qui ab eō postulārent uti aliquem locum medium
utriusque colloquiō dēligaret: Velle sē dē rē pūb
665 summis utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēg
Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsī ā Caesare opus
sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid ille sē velit
ad sē venire oportēre. Praeterea sē neque sine e:
in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar
670 dēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū
mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse.
autem mirum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam
vicissit, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populo Rōmānō
esset.
675 35. His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātīs iterum a
Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: Quōniam
suō populiō Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in
lātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātūs esse
sibi populiō Rōmānī grātiam referret, ut in co
680 um venire invitātūs gravārētur neque dē comm
 dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec ess
ab cō postulāret: prīnum, nē quam multitūdinem
num amplius tràns Rhēnum in Galliam trādī
deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs redderet.
685 nisque permitteret ut quōs ipsi habērent voluntā
reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesserē
his sociisque eōrum bellum inferret. Si ita fēcissē
populiō Rōmānī perpetuam grātiam atque amī
cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sē, quoniam
690 Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnuisse
quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod cor
rei pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque populi Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriā
neglēctūrum.
695 36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bī
qui vicissent īs quōs vicissent quem ad modum
imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre consuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre uterētur, nōn oportēre sēse ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superāti essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convenisset stipendium que quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fecissent, longē īs frāternūm nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciei contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur: intellectūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimi in armīs, qui inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

Renewed complaints of the Gauls. Caesar starts against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesari mandāta referēbantur, et légāti ab Aeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Aeduī questum quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliīā trānsportāti essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēseō obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisses; Trēverī autem, pāgos centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimerium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus matūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēseō conflānxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.
Caesar seizes Vesontio. His soldiers are panic-stricken.

38. Cum tridui viam processisset, nūntiātum Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiās ad occup 730 Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēqua contendere triduīque viamā suis fīnibus prōcessisse nē accideret magnopere sibi prae cavendum Caesar mābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum erant summa erat in eō facultās, idemque nātūrā lūminēbātur ut magnam ad dum bellum daret facultātem tereā quod fūmen Dūbis, ut circum ducuntum, paene tōtum dum cīgit; reliquum sī quod est nōn amplius pēdu centōrum, quā fūmen ānte mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādicēs eius ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc 745 circumdātus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit.

Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnisque ītineribus co- occupātoque oppidō ibi præsidium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūme commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne 750 rum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, qui magnītūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdībīlī virtūt exercitātiōne in armīs esse prae dicābant (saepe rē sēsē cum īs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitē 755 ommem exercitum occupāvīt ut nōn mediocriter o mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīnum ortu tribūnīs militum, praefectīs, reliquīisque qui ex url citiae causā Caesarem secūti nōn magnum in rē 1
ūsum habēbant; quorum alius aliā causā illātā, quam
sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat
ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnullī pudōre
adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem
vitārent, remanēbant. Hī
neque vultum fingere neque
interdum lacrimās tenēre pote-
rant; abditi in tabernāculis
aut suum fātum querēbantur
aut cum familiāribus suis com-
mūne perīculum miserābantur.
Vulgō tōtis castrīs testāmenta
obsignābantur. Hōrum vöci-
bus ac timōre paulātim etiam
ii qui magnum in castrīs ūsum
habēbant, militēs centuriō-
nēsque quīque equitātui prae-
erant, perturbābantur. Qūi sē
ex his minus timidōs existimārī
volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī,
sed angustiās itineris et magni-
tūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque
Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē
supportāri posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōnnullī etiam
Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movēri ac signa ferī
iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter
timōrem signa lātūrōs.

He quells the mutiny. The soldiers apologize. He starts again.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō
omniaque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitis centuriō-
nibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīnum, quod aut quam
in partem aut quò cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaere
aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule
dissimē populi Rōmānī amicitiam appētīsse; cūr hur
temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret?
quidem persuādēri, cōgnitis sui postulātīs atque aeq
condicionum perspectā, eum neque suam neque
Rōmānī grātiām repudiāturum. Quod si furōre
āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem
rentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligent
spērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrun
trōrum memorīā, cum Cimbris et Teutonis ā C.
pulsis nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse
rātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in
servī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ľusus ac disc
quam ā nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iū
posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantiā, pro
quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timui
hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dē
hōs esse ēōsdem Germanōs quibuscum sāepe nū
Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam īn
finibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse n
exercituī nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proeliī
fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaerērent, re
posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātīs Gallīs, Ariovist
cum multitūs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset n
sui potestātem fēcissent, dēspērantēs iam dē pug
dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō n
virtūte vicissē. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs bar
atque imperitōs locus fuissent, hāc nē ipsum qu
spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum tim
in rei frūmentāriae difficultātem angustiāisque itineri
cūrae simulātiōnem cōnferrent facere arroganter,
aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre vidērentur aut
scribere audērent. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevi tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque signa lātūri dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovēri; scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam défuisset aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse spectatam. Itaque sē quod in longīorem diem collātūrus fuisset reprezentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod si praeterea nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitet, sībique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōni Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfidēbat maximē.

41. Hāc ōratiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi illāta est, princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parā-

845 tissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum centurīōnibus ēgērunt, uti Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā belli suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse. Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisītō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, milium amplius quinquāgentā circuitū, locis apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus
certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās à nostrīs milia pas quattuor et vigintī abesse.

Ariovistus offers to meet Caesar.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgāti eum mittit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāset, id sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit cōiōmariamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāset ultrō cērētur, magnamque in sper veniēbat, prō suīs 1 populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cōgnītis suīs pālātis, fore utī pertināciā désisteret. Diēs colloquiō ĉ est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgāti citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāv quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Vō sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumveniētur; uterque 870 equitātū veniēret; alīa ratione sēsē nōn esse ventū Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū mittere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omni equīs Gallis equītibus dētractis, eō legiōnāriōs m 875 legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē confidēbat, impō ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irridiculē qu ex militībus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam polli esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis tōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad eq rescribere.

The conference has no result; treachery of the Germans.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terr satis grandis. Hic locus aequum ferē spatium ā ca
utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium 885 vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equis dēvexerat pas-
sibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs
Ariovisti parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex
equis ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium
addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō
890 ōrātiōnis suæ senātūsque in eum beneficiā commemorāvit,
quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod
mūnēra amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse
et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat;
illum, cum neque adītum neque causam postulandi iūstam
895 habēret, beneficiō ac liberalitātē suā ac senātūs ea praemia
cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque
iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduis intercē-
derent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns quamque honōri-
ifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae
900 principātum Aedui tenuissent, prīus etiam quam nostram
amicitiam appetissent. Populi Rōmāni hanc esse cōn-
suētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo sūi nihil
dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet
esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmāni attulissent,
905 id īis ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem
qua eōgātis in mandātis dederat: Nē aut Aeduis aut
eōrum sociōs bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; si nūllam
partem Germānōrum domum remittēre posset, at nē quōs
amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.
910 44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris paucā respondit,
dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum
sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs;
nōn sine magnā spē magnīisque praemiīs domum propin-
quōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs con-
915 cessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium
capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuē-
rint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intuli omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēniss contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē proelīō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum exp velint, sē iterum parā tum esse dēcertāre; si pāce velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā luntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam po Rōmāni sibi ornāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīm 925 esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per popu Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahant nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōn amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem mānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī 930 Galliae oppugnandae causā facere; eius rei ĭstīmōr esse quod nisī rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vērum populum Rōmānum. Nūnquam ante hoc ten exercitum populi Rōmāni Galliae prōvinciae fin 935 ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Ćur in suās possessi venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, illam nostram. Ut ipsis concēdī nōn oppor tēret, nostrōs finēs impetum facēret, sic ītem nōs esse inīc quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātr 940 senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barba neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret no bellō Allobrogum proxīmō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxi tulisse neque ipsōs in his contentiōnibus quās A sēcum et cum Sēquanis habuissent auxiliō populi Rōn 945 ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sēsē suspicāri simulātā Caesā amīcitā, quem exercitum in Galliā habēat, suī opprim causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēd ex his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō h habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit, multitīs sēsē r
libus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habère, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius mōrte redimere posset. Quod si dēcessisset et liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādīdisset, magnō sē illum praeīō remūnerāturum et quae cumque bella gērī vellet sine ūlī eius labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.

45. Multa ā Caesare ēnam sententiam dicta sunt, quam nōtīō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populi Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī ut optimē merītō sociōs dēsereret, neque sē īūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque ē prōvinciā redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquīsimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī īūdicium senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis légibus ūtī voluissēt.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est equītēs Ariovisti propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre et lapidēs tēlaque ē nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquenti finem fecit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum ē hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūlō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equītū proelium ēre vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsiēs hostibus dicī posset ēōs ab sē per fidem ē colloquiō circumventōs. Posteā quam ē vulgus militūm ēlātum est quā arrogantiā ē colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut īn nostrōs eius equītēs fēcissent eaque īrē colloquiōm dirēmisset, multō maiōr alacrītās studiōmque pugnāndī maius exercitūi īnjectum est.
Ariovistus asks for a new meeting, but illtreats the envoys.

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs n
Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae n
perfectae essent agere cum eō; uti aut iterum colle
diem cōnstitueret aut, si id minus velit, ex suis lē
aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa
nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germān
tinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs coniē
Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrī
hominibus feris obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commù
simum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. V
Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hūmāniteātē adūlēscen
cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitātē dōnātus er
propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam
multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine utēt
et quod in eō peccandi Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad
mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, qui hospitiō Ariovisti ū
tur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cō
serent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in co
Ariovistus cōnspēxisset, exercitū suō praesente
clāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī co
Cōnantēs dicer prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Ariovistus threatens to cut off Caesar’s base of supplies. Caesar
counterstroke.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus pas
sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē
diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et
bus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsili
frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs
portārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs
tinuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prō
et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus p
MANEUVERS OF ARIOVISTUS
contendere, et potestās non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelīō cotidiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae quō 1015 sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totiēm numerō peditēs vēlōcissīmī ac fortissīmī, quōs ex omni cōpiā singuli singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum his in proelīōs versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hi, si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; si quī 1020 graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē 1025 diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab īs, castrīs īdōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici in- structā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus 1030 ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat.
Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omni equitatū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiāe nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētiūs Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus 1035 perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxīt.

The Germans are forced to give battle.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxīt, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs 1040 prōgressus aciem īnstrūxīt, hostibusque pugnandi potes- tatēm fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter meridiē exercitum in castra redūxīt. Tum dē-
mum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae minōra oppugnāret misit. Ācriter utrimque usq 1045 vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās vistus multis et illātīs et acceptis vulneribus in reduxit. Cum ex captīvis quaereret Caesar qua rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn décertāret, hanc repe causam, quod apud Germānōs ea consuetūdō ess mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus rārent utrum proelium committi ex ūsū esset necita dicere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, si novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praeсидiō utrīisque quod satis esse visum est reliquit; ālāriōs omnēsī spectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōnstituit, minus multitūdine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hc numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriōs āterētur triplici instrictā aciē usque ad castra hostium aciē. Tum dénum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās cēduxerunt generātimque cōstituērant paribus inter Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Ner Sedusōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedēs et circumdedērant, nē qua spēs in fugā reliquerētur.

1065 mulierēs imposuerunt, quae ad proelium profiscī militēs passis manibus flentes implūrābant nē sē in tütem Rōmānīs tràderent.

The Germans are defeated; Ariovistus escapes.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs légāt quaestōrem praeūcit, uti eōs testēs suae quisque vi 1070 habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem m firmam hostium esse animadvertērat, proelium com Ita nostri acriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum féci itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurretur
spatium pila in hostēs coniciendi nōn darėtur. Rēiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri qui in phalangem insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs a sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, a dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equitātu praerat, quod expedītior erat quam iī qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō misit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salūtem reppe-rērunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam dēligātām ad ripam nactus eā profūgīt; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūti equītēs nostri interfēcerunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dúxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vociōnis soror, quam in Galliā dúxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā perīt. Fuērunt duae filiae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdībus in fugā trīnis catēnīs vincētus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū

105 incessuētām incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospītem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtūm vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et gratulātiōne quicquam fortūna déminuerat. Is sē praeente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dicēbat utrum
igni statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservā
sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The other Germans abandon their invasion. The Romans go into quarters. Caesar leaves for Italy.

54. Hōc proelīō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī
ripās Rhēni vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; qui
qui proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sē nōs
insecūti magnum ex iīs numerum occidērunt. C
ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mā
paulō quam tempus anni postulābat, in hiberna
quanōs exercītum dēdūxīt; hibernis Labiēnum
posuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs a
profectus est.
COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS

Caesar hears of plots on the part of the Belgians. He recruits reinforcements.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliâ, ita uti supera demonstrâvimus, crâbri ad eum rûmôres afferébantur, litterísque item Labiëni certior fíebat omnès Belgâs, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem diexerâmus, contrà populum Rômânnum coniûrâre obsidësque inter sê dare. Coniûrandi hâs esse causâs: primum, quod verërentur nê omni pàcâtâ Galliâ ad eós exercitus noster addücerëtur; deinde, quod ab nönnullis Gallis sollicitârentur, partim qui, ut Germânôs diütius in Galliâ versâri nöluerant, ita populi Rômâni exercitum hiemâre atque inverterâscere in Galliâ molestë ferëbant, partim qui móbilitate et levitâte animi novis imperiis studëbant, ab nönnullis etiam, quod in Galliâ à potentioribus atque ís qui ad condúcendôs hominës facultâtës habëbant vulgô rëgna occupábantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiô nostrô cónsequi poterant.

2. His nûntiis litterísque commôtus Caesar duûs legiônês in citeriore Galliâ novûs cônscriptûs et iniûa aestâte, in ulteriûrem Galliam qui dëdûceret, Q. Pedium légâtûm misit. Ipse, cum primum pâbuli cópia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vënît. Dat negotiûm Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimi Belgis erant uti ea quae apud eûs gerantur cûgnòscant sëque dê his rébus certiûrem faciant. Hi cûstanter omnès nûntiâvërunt manûs cógî, exercitum in ünum locum condûcî. Tum vêrò dubitandum nôn existimâvit quin ad eûs proficis-
cerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvisā castra movet diēb circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

*The Remi, a Belgian tribe, join Caesar.*

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium op vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximī Galliae ex Belgīs su eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cī mīsērunt, qui dicerent sē suaque omnia in fīdem potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sēs reliquis Belgīs cōnsēnsisse, neque contrā populur mānum coniūrsēsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs d imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēte rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armis Germānōsque qui cīs Rhēnum incolant sēsē cu coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium fu ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātēs cōnsanguineōsque qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imp ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, dēt potuerint quīn cum iīs cōnsentīrent.

*Who the Belgians are; the strength of their army.*

4. Cum ab iīs quae erat quae civitātēs quantaer armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reper Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnt antiquītus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem iīb sēdisse, Gallōsque qui ea loca incolent exp sōlōsque esse qui patrum nostrōrum memoriā, Galliā vexātā, Teutōnōs Cimbrosque intra suōs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri uti eārum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque sīn in rē militāri sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum om habēre explōrāta Rēmi dīcebant, propterea quod p quitātibus affinitātibusque coniūncti, quantam q
multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bello-
vacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valère; hōs posse cōnficere armāta milia centum;
60 pollicitōs ex eō numero élēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque
belli imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse
finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possi-
dēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā
Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum
65 magnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae
imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad
hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius
belli omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numero
xii; pollicēri milia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nεr-
70 viōs, quī maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque
absint; quīndecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem
milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vī milia, Caletōs x
milia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs
xī milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs,
75 qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri ad xl
milia.

Caesar camps at the river Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātioṇe
prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque
liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab his
80 diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Aeduōm
magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere rei publicae
commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinēri,
nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnficendum sit.
Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum
85 intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populāri coeperint. His
datis mandātis eum ā sē dimittit. Postquam omnēs
Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venire
neque iam longē abesse ab ipsis quōs mīserat explōrātī
et ab Rēmis cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod e
extrēmis Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere māt
atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus unum
trōrum ripis flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae
tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab 1
reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum su
stāri possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat:
praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Tit
Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. C
in altitūdinem pedum xii vāllō fossāque duodēv
pedum mūniēri iubet.

*The Belgians assault Bibrax, a Remian town, but foiled by Roma
forcements, they proceed toward Caesar.*

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine I
aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō ir
Belgae oppugnāre coeptērunt. Aegrē eō diē susten
est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnāt
haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum
moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī
mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine
propius succēdent mūrumque subruunt. Quod
facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs a
conicerent, in mūro cōnsistēndī potestās erat nūllī.

finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, sī
nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum oppidō pra
ūnus ex ipsis quī lēgāti dē pāce ad Caesarem vēn
nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sībi submit
sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūs
nūntiī ab Icclī vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagitt
et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; qu
adventū et Rēmis cum spē défēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandi accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundi oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dépopulāti, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et à milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

An attempt to storm Caesar's camp is frustrated. The Belgians disperse, but suffer much during their retreat.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclītābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellexit, locō prō castris
ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque id quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex tiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat
135 tum locī acīēs instruēcta tenēre poterat, atque ex ut parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter gātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque eius collis trānsversam fossam obedīxit circiter pas
cēt et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique
140 menta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugr
suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō, duābus nibus quās proximē cōnscripterat in castrīs relictis
quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex
145 ōnēs prō castrīs in acīē cōnstituit. Hostēs item
cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque ho
exercitum. Hanc si nostri trānsīrent, hostēs exs
bant; nostri autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundi
150 ut impeditōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. terim proeliō equestri inter duās acīēs contende
Ubi neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre eq
proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. E
prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contende
155 quod esse post nostrā castra dēmōnstrātum est.

vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praeeer
Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque intersect
rent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populāre
160 qui magnō nōbis usu ad bellum gerendum erant,
meātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equit
et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriī
ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter i
BOOK II, CHAPTERS 9-11

locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostri in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitudine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsque, qui trānsi- erant, equitātū circumventōs interfecerunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxerunt neque nostrōs in locum iniqui- ōrem prōgredi pugnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria déficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstitu- ērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et, quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxis- send, ad eōs défendendōs undique convenire, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnis fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cópiis rē frūmentāriae āterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appro- pinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādēri ut diūtius morā- rentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent non poterat.

II. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ārdine ineque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum pēteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōn- similis fugae profectioni vidērētur. Hác rē statim Caesar per speculatōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equi- stātumque castrīs continuīt. Primā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, qui novissīmum agmen morārētur, praemīsit eīque Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legionibus trībus subsequi iussit. Hī novissīmōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecūti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt. Cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōnsiste-
rent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinē
priōrēs, quod abesse à periculō vidērentur neque
necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clā
perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesi
pōnēbant. Ita sine ûllō periculō tantam eōrum mu
dinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spat
sub occāsum sōlis sequi dēstītērunt sēque in castī
erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The Suessiones and the Bellovaci surrender.

12. Postridiē eis diēi Caesar, priusquam sē host
terrōre ac fugā recipierent, in finēs Suessionum
proximi Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō it
ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itiner
pugnāre cōnāitus, quod vacuōm ab dēfēnsōribus
audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitūd
paucis dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Cī
mūnitīs vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum
erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā t
siōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte con
Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iactō turī
que cōnstitūtis, magnitūdine operum, quae neque
rant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōn
rum permōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mi
et, petentibus Rēmis ut cōnservārentur, impetrān

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmis civitātīs : ipsis
Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis armīisque omnībus
coppidō trāditīs, in dēditionēm Suessionēs accipit et
tumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Qui cum sē suaque o
in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque a
oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum
que abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi m
ad Caesarem tendere et vôce significāre coepercērunt, s
BOOK II, CHAPTERS 12-15

 eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra populum 230 Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castaque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō more pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.


Surrender of the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et conservatūrum dixit, et, 250 quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō col-lātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervī 255 attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūra mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperīebat: Nūllum esse adītum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferri, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimāre; esse
hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre a incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dissent patriamque virtūtem prōlēcissent; confīri sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque āllum condiciō pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs triduum iter fēcisset, invocavit ex captīvis Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amī milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nei cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, fīnitimīs suis (nam utrīsque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam ex rentur); exspectāri etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum cō atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

Caesar advances toward the Sabis river. The Nervii, at the adv
Belgian deserters, plan to ambush him there. Character of the coun

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centurionēs praemittit qui locum castris idōneum dēligant. Cun dēditiciis Belgīs reliquīisque Gallīs complūrēs Caesa secūti īnā iter facerent, quidam ex hīs, ut postēa ex tīvis cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsētūdine itin
nōstri exercītūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnē
atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs imp mentōrum magnum numerum intercēdēre, neque quicquam negotiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēni reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, h
sub sarcinis adorīri; quā pulsā impedimentīisque dire futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audē.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium qui rem déferēb quod Nervī antiquītus, cum equitātū nihil pos (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed quicq
possunt pedestribus valent cópiis), quō facilius fīnitimō-rum equitātum, si praedandi causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexīs, crēbris-que in lātitūdinem rāmis ēnātīs, et rubis sentibusque interiectīs, effecerant ut īnstar múrī hae saepēs múni-
mentum praebērent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspici quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum īter agminis nostri impedirētur, nōn omissendum sibi cōnsilium Nervīī existimāvērunt.

18. Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castris dēlēgerant. Collīs ab summō aequālīter déclīvis ad flūmen Sabīm, quod supra nōmināvīmur, vergerēbat. Ab eō flūmine pari acclivitāte collīs nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs ab infīmō apertura, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspici posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

Caesar’s precautions foil the ambuscade. A pitched battle follows.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cópiis; sed ratiō ordōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervīōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; índē duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittāriīisque flūmen trāngessi cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipierent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem
porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequī a
rent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant o
dimēnsō castra mūnire coepērunt. Ubi prima imi
menta nostri exercitūs ab īis qui in silvis abdītī lātē
visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī pr
convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ērdinēsque cōnstitue
atque ipsi sēsē cōnfirmāverant, subitō omnibus ci
prōvolāvērunt impetūmque in nostrōs equitēs fēcēr
Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibīlī celeritātī
flūmen dēcurrencērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad si
et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeri
adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in o
occupātī erant contendērunt.

The greatness of the danger.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: v
lum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne cum ad a
concurrī oportēret, ab opere revocandī militēs, qui p
longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcesc
aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum tūbā
dum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brev
et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus c
rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, qu
superiōribus proeliis exercitāti, quid fierī oportēret
minus commodē ipsī sībi praescribere quam ab
docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōn
singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitis ca
vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem et celeritā
ehostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant,
per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessāriis rēbus imperātīs ad cohortar
militēs quam partem fors obtulit dēcurrencīt, et
legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiore
tio ne cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriae retinereat neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinereat, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quod tulum adigi posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandae causae profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas indundas scutisque tegmenta detracta, tempus dexterit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casso defenit quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitus, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandis tempus dimitteretur.

22. Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura dieiectusque collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratiat atque ordin postulabant, cum diversae legiones aliae aliab in parte hostibus resisterent, saepiusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediritur, neque certa subsidia collocari neque quid in quaque parte operum esset prvideri neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tantae rerum iniquitatem fortunae quoque eventus varii sequabantur.

The plight of the ninth and tenth legions relieved by Caesar.

23. Legiones nonae et decimae militis, ut in sinistra parte aciee constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine examinantos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulsurunt, et tranisire cossantes insecati gladiis magnam partem eorum impedita interfecerunt. Ipsi transire simul flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus residentes hostes redintegrat proelio in fugam coniecerunt. Item aliab in parte diversae duae legiones,
ūndecima et octāva, prōstigātis Viromanduis, quibus erant congressae, ex locō superiores in ipsīs fluminis proelīabantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sīr parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecim non magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, summam imperīi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendēbat, quorum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvēbat, pars summum castrōrum locum petēre coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armā peditēs, quī cum īs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hos impetu pulsōs dixerāmus, cum sēsē in castra recipēbant, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rōrus aliām in par fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portē summō iūgō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse spēxerant, praedāndi causā égressi, cum respēxisse hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versāri vidissent, praeci fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum imamentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbatur, aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omni rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter G virtūtis opinīō est singulāris, qui auxiliī causā ā civ missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hos castra complēri, legiōnēs premi et paene circumventus, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidīās dispē dissipātōsque in omnēs partes fugere vidissent, dēspē nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs puerōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum homī potitōs civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad trum cornū prefectus, ubi suōs urgerī signisque in ū locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae coh-
omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferverē centurionibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in his primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus confectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiorēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimis désertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ēllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimis militī détractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ētī posserant. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in conspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmis suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Caesar relievs the seventh legion.

26. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iūxta conserēt, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliis aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audāciius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliiō nūntiatō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus conspiciēbantur; et Labiēnus castrīs hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castrīs gerentur conspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidio nostrī misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cálōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et
imperator versaretur cognovissent, nihil ad celeriti sibi reliqui fecerunt.

*The battle turns in favor of the Romans. The Nervii surrende*

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutati est: 
450 ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti pröcubuis, 
scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent; calônes pert 
tos hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis occurrer 
equitès vêro, ut turpitûdinem fugae virtûte déle 
omibus in locis pugnandi studiò sè legionariis milit 
praefèrent. At hostes etiam in extrêmâ spë tantam virtûtem praestiterunt ut, cum primi e 
cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque 
óorum corporibus pugnarent; his dêiectis et coacere 
cadaverebus, qui superessent ut ex tumulo tella in nos 
conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nì 
quam tantae virtûtis hominès iûdicari débëret ausòs 
trânsire lâtissimum flûmen, ascendere altissimâs r 
subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficî 
animi magnitudô redégerat.

28. Hoc proeliô factò et prope ad interneció 
gente ac nòmine Nerviòrum redactô, maiörès nátû, 
ûnà cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuària ac pal 
conjectôs dixeramus, hâc pugnà nûtiâtà, cum victòri 
nihil impeditum, victis nihil tûtum arbitrârentur, om 
qui supererat consensû légâtôs ad Caesarem misè 
sèque ei dêdidérunt; et, in commemorandâ civi 
calamitâtë, ex sescentis ad très senatórës, ex homè 
milibus LX vix ad quîngentôs qui arma ferre possent 
redactôs esse dixérunt. Quòs Caesar, ut in miserôs ac 
plicês usus misericordiâ vidèretur, diligentissimë co 
vâvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ûti iussit, et fini 
imperàvit ut ab iniuriâ et maleficiô sè suösque prohibë
Siege of Aduatuca.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus supra diximus, cum omnibus cópiis auxiliā Nerviūs venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūncīs oppidīs castellīisque désertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūisque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem non amplius pedum ducentōrum relinquentūr; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praecūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīisque prōgnāti, qui, cum iter in provincia nostro atque Ítāliam facerent, īs impedimentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhenum dēpositīs, custōdiae ac praesidiō sex milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs a finitimis exagītāti, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, consēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proelīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum xii in circuitū xv milium crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineīs āctīs aggere extrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vidērunt, primum irridēre ex mūrō atque incrēpitāre vocibus, quod tanta māchinātiō à tantō spatiō Instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrē (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est) tanti onerīs turrim in mūrō sē posse collocāre cōnfinderent?

CAESAR — RIESS AND JANES — 7
Surrender of the town. The treachery of the inhabitants is severely punished.

31. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare muris videt novam atque inusitatum speciei commoti legatos ad Caesarem paece miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti: Non sit istimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, quia altitudinis machinationes tantae celeritatis praemium possent, se suae omnia eorum potestatis permitter dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua mentia ac manusuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, stat set Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliat Sibi omnibus ferre finitimis esse inimicos ac suae vis invidere; a quibus se defendere traditum armis non sent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deduceret.

520 quamvis fortunam a populore Romanone pati, quam ab per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consueisse.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudinibus quaequem merito eorum civitatem conservatorem, si quam murura arieth attigisset sese deditissent; sed dedit

525 nullam esse condicionem nisi armis traditum. Se id quin Nervis fecisset facturum, finitimisque imperaturn nec quam dediticiis populi Romanone iniuriam inferre Rerentuntiatum ad suos, illi se quae imperarentur facturum. Armorum magnis multitudine de muris fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta, sic ut prsummae murura aggerisque altitutdinem acervi armorum adequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut po perspectuum est, celata atque in oppido retentat, po patefactis eodi die pacem sunt usi.

535 33. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militis quam oppidum exire iussit, nee quam noctu oppidi iniuriam acciperent. Illi ante initio, ut intellectum consilio, quod deditione facta nostris praesidia dei
turōs aut dēnique indīgentiūs servāturōs crēdiderant, 540 partim cum iis quae rētinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortīce factīs aut vīminibus ātextīs, quae subītō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellībus indūxerant, tertīā vigīliā, quà minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitōnēs ascēnsum vidēbātur omnibus cōpiibus repente 545 ex oppidō ēruptīōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō, contrā ēōs quà ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnāri débuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum rēiecti sunt. Postridē ēius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Cae- 555 sar vēndidit. Ab iis quà ēmerant capītum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quīnquāgintā trium.

Conquest of the tribes along the coast.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne septimā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuviōs, Aulerċōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae 560 civitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās civitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

The army in winter quarters. Caesar goes to Italy.

35. His rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opinīō perlāta est utī ab iis nātiōnibus 565 quae trāns Rhēnum incoherent lēgātiōnēs ad Caesarem mitterentur quae sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliām
Illyricumque properabat, initā proximā aestāte a reverteri iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turco quaeque civitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi be gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Ītalian fectus est. Ob eāque rēs ex litterīs Caesāris diē quindecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tem accidit nūlli.
NOTES

References to the text are preceded by I. (line) or Ch. (Chapter); all others are to sections in the Grammatical Summary.

BOOK I

CHAPTER 1.—DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

Page 43. Line 1. Gallia: the free Gaul, exclusive of the two provinces (Gallia Citerior, Gallia Ulterior), and comprising parts of France as well as of Belgium, Holland, Germany, and Switzerland.

omnis: translate by an adjective phrase; as a whole.

divisa: participle used as an adjective; hence est divisa = a present tense.

tres: numerals commonly precede their nouns. The position gives emphasis to the word.

quarum: genitive of the whole (55).

2. Belgae, etc.: the subject follows the predicate because the latter is emphasized. The verb must be (mentally) repeated with Aquitania and (it) qui.

ipsorum: instead of suum, so as to contrast it with nostrum.

3. linguae: ablative of means (85). Translation into idiomatic English?

Celtae, Galli: predicate nominatives (49). All parts of Gaul were inhabited by men speaking Celtic, the ancestral language of the Irish, Gaelic, and Welsh languages. The word Galli, too, is not Roman, but Celtic. It is the same word as the Galatians of the Bible. However, the tribes living in Gaul were not pure, but contained large admixtures of the original inhabitants in Aquitania, and of Germans in Belgium and Eastern Gaul.

linguae, etc.: ablatives of specification (95). Here linguae = dialect.

4. legibus: in translating insert and. In an enumeration the Romans either used no connectives at all or connected all the members of the series.

inter se: from one another. One another is expressed in Latin by inter and the reflexive pronoun.

Galliæ: the inhabitants of Central Gaul, the most important neighbors of the Roman province of Gallia Ulterior.
6. *dividit*: the predicate is in the singular because the river as tributary, followed from source to mouth, form one boundary line so are considered a unit. See map between pages 8 and 9.

_Hōrum_: for case cp. _quārum_, l. 1.

_omnium_: in direct agreement with _hōrum_ = of all these.

_propterea quod_: literally, _for this reason that_ = because. To a satisfactory and idiomatic English rendering the student should reach a perfect understanding of the Latin idea.

7. _quod_: to be understood again before _minimēque_, l. 8, and 7

_mēque_, l. 10.

_cultū atque hūmānitātē_: the former refers to outward, the latter intellectual refinement.

_prōvincae_: _Gallia Ulterior_, which is Southern Gaul, the more Provence. Greek and Roman influences had combined to give Province a polish which was but imperfectly reflected among its neighbors.

8. _minimēque_: with _saepe_, literally _least often_. The Romans _parum, minus, minimē_, with the sense of a negative. The phrase _n_ very seldom.

_mercātōres_: Greek and Roman peddlers.

9. _ad . . . animōs_: this is not a purpose construction. _Pert_ is regularly used with _ad_. Translate _to weaken the character_.

10. _Germānis_: dative with an adjective (70).

_trāns Rhēnum_: on which bank of the river?

_incolunt_: here intransitive. Above, l. 2, it is used as a transi The student should early train himself to notice the different cons tions possible for the same word.

11. _quibuscum_: for the position of _cum_ see 100, 2.

_Quā de causā_: translate _and for this reason_. The Romans to connect their sentences, if possible. Hence, a relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence instead of a demonstra When a preposition governs a noun with a modifier, the regular order is: modifier, preposition, noun.

12. _quoque_: postpositive. This word cannot be placed at the ginning of a sentence or clause. Other words of this character _autem_ and _enim_.

_Gallōs_: direct object of _praecēdunt_. Very many compounded _v_ are used with an accusative instead of a dative (65, _a_).

_virtūte_: see note on second _linguā_, l. 3.
13. proelis: see note on first lingua, l. 3.

14. cum . . . prohibit, . . . gerunt: this clause explains the preceding statement. Do not translate such constructions by when, but by phrases.

suis: refers to Helvetic, as does ipst, while eos, eorum refer to the Germans.

15. finibus: ablative of separation (79).
Eorum: refers to horum omnium, l. 6. Here begins a geographical digression. The main topic is resumed in Ch. 2.

Una pars: refers to the country, not to the people. Translate division.

quam: object of obtinere, of which Gallus is the subject accusative. The words quam . . . obtinere form the subject of dictum est.

17. Oceanus: the Atlantic, the only ocean known to the ancients.

18. ab Sequanis: ablative of point of view (80); on the side of, etc. Latin emphasizes the place from which, while in English it appears more natural to lay stress on the place where.

19. septentriones: the seven stars of the Great Bear or Dipper; north. The singular is used below.

extramus . . . finibus: counting from the Province.

21. in . . . solem: northeast.

Page 44. 23. ad Hispaniem: near Spain, i.e. the Bay of Biscay.

24. inter, etc.: northwest.

Chapters 2–29.—The Helvetic Invasion

25. longe: with superlatives measure is commonly expressed by an adverb, while the ablative is used with comparatives.

ditissimus = divitissimus: the order emphasizes the name (found on Gallic coins as ORGETIRIX = “king of the slayers”).

26. M. . . . consulibus: read Marcô. Always use the full, unabridged form of Roman names. For the manner of naming a Roman see 175. The Romans dated their years by the names of the (two annual) chief magistrates, which were put in the ablative absolute (96), with or without et between the two names. Consulibus represents the noun part of the predicate, the present participle of esse being missing. Marcus, etc., being consuls = in the consulate of . . . , here = 61 B.C.

27. regni, nobilitatis: objective genitive and subjective genitive (54, 53). Test this by turning the phrases into sentences with active verbs, when the genitive will become either subject or object, thus:
Orgetorix cupiēbat rēgnum, nōbilitās consuēvāvit. In most Gallic the royal power had been abolished in favor of popular govern but attempts at its restoration by the nobles were frequent.

nōbilitātīs: notice that the suffix -tās here has collective force word meaning a body of nobles. So cīvitātīs, immediately follow Translate nobles, citizens.

28. ut . . . exirent: a substantive clause of purpose, used as o of persuāsit (145). Literally, he made it pleasant to the body of sens that they should . . . ; be careful about the idiomatic tation. The verb is plural because with the collective noun the w thinks of the civēs composing the cīvitās.

cum . . . cōpis: in military expressions accompaniment is comm expressed by the ablative without a preposition. But it is question whether the word here has the military meaning.

29. Persfacile, etc.: infinitive of indirect discourse (164, b), bec persuāsit indicates that Orgetorix said something. The subject o indirect discourse is the infinitive postrī. Infinitives are of the n gender (114, a), hence persfacile. The per- serves to strengthen meaning of the adjective; what degree might have been used inst: See 106, 2. In translating the sentence into English, supply it be persfacile as a merely grammatical subject.

esse: the present tense, because Orgetorix used this tense v speaking. But praestārent is in the imperfect because subordi verbs, i.e. subjunctives in indirect discourse, follow the rule for sequ of tenses (158) after the verb of saying, persuāsit. In Engli similar change of tense takes place with each verb: ‘I cannot because I am ill; he says that he cannot come because he is ill said he could not come because he was ill.’

cum: causal, with subjunctive (132).

omnibus: dative with compounds (65).

30. Galliae: objective genitive.

imperīō: ablative (of means) with certain deponents (86).

Id: direct object of persuāsit (64, c).

hōc: ablative of degree of difference (89) or of cause (83)
facilīus.

facilius: adverb.

31. ūnā ex parte: on one side; supply continentur. For case note on l. 18. The Latin idiom is also the reason for the use of dique, literally, from all sides.
32. látissimó: for degree see 106, 2. 
quī: agrees with what?
33. alterā: here the same as aliam in l. 2. What is the usual 
difference between alius and alter?
34. monte: singular, but referring to the whole range. In l. 23 
the plural was used. Account for the gender of Íura. The highest 
elevation is about 5000 feet.
35. tertīa: supply ex parte.
quī . . . dīvidit: only the part of the Rhone from Geneva to 
Vienna formed the boundary line. The lower (southern) course, from 
Vienna to Arles, was within the province.
36. fiēbat: supply it as grammatical subject. Notice the tense, 
which shows that taking place during these years 
(62–58 B.C.).
37. ut . . . vagärentur: substantive clause of result (148), subject 
of fiēbat. The Helvetians were not a nomadic tribe, as one might con-
clude, but were slowly yielding to the constant pressure of German 
tribes in the north and east.
38. bellum inferre: distinguish this from bellum gerere. The 
former always refers to an offensive war.
quā ex parte: and for this reason; ablative of source (81), with 
causal meaning.
hominēs: as men; appositive to the subject of afficiēbantur.
bellandī: gerund in the genitive after an adjective (58).
39. Prō: in proportion to, for.
autem: see note on quoque, l. 12.
40. bellī: objective genitive (54).
bellī atque fortitūdinis: for bravery in war. Caesar likes to ex-
ress one idea by two independent nouns (hendiadys, 171, 1).
41. sē: subject of habēre, of which finēs is the object.
in longitūdinem: accusative of limit of motion (75); and so in

milla passuum: i.e. miles. Mille passūs, 1000 paces of five Roman 
est each, is one Roman mile (about 4850 English feet). The plural 
used as a neuter noun with the genitive of the whole.
42. patēbant: the indicative shows that these measurements are 
ed by Caesar. As the total number of Helvetians was 263,000 
Ch. 29), a population of 16.6 (or, if we refer 263,000 to soldiers 
only, of 83) to the square mile does not appear overcrowded to
modern ideas. Modern Switzerland supports about 212 persons t
square mile. But undoubtedly much less land was then under culti
and industrial life with its attendant crowding was entirely unkn

43. CHAPTER 3. His rébus: the facts mentioned before. Be
ful about the translation of rès, which rarely means thing. Its n
ing must be taken from the matters to which it refers.

permótí: force of per-?

44. ea: object of comparâre, which is complementary (object) :
itive (163, 2) to cōnstituérunt; so also coēmere, facere, cōnfi
lines 46 and 48.

ea . . . pertinérunt: the things required for . . . . Latin sent
may be simplified by turning dependent clauses, especially rel
clauses, into phrases. The verb is in the subjunctive of implied in
discourse (159) because cōnstituérunt is a verb of thinking.

45. carrōrum: a Gallic word (cp. our car), but early adopted b
Romans.

quam, etc.: see 106, 2.

46. sēmentēs . . . facere: to make sowings = to raise crops.

ut . . . suppeteret: adverb clause of purpose (123).

48. Ad . . . cōnfičiendās: to accomplish this end; a gerundive
struction of purpose (169, 3).

49. sībi: dative of reference (66).

dūxērunt: notice the meaning of this verb when followed by a
finite (of indirect discourse).

in tertium annum: translate for, etc.

50. cōnfirmant: the narrative tense (properly past) is often cha
to the present in order to give greater vividness (historical pre
116, 2). So also in the following lines: dēligitur, persuādet, dat, pr
dant, spērant. As the sense is past, a dependent subjunctive ma
used either in principal or historical sequence (occupāret, l. 55).

52. Casticō: "fair-eye."

Catamantaloedis: "just."

Page 45. 54. multōs annōs: accusative of extent of time (74
obtinuerat: be careful about the correct translation of tenses, it
use of which Latin is much more accurate than English. Cp. obtin
l. 58.

populi Rōmānī: an example of double dependence. The pl
modifies both senātū and amīcus; with both it is possessive. In t
lating, use a possessive adjective besides the noun: friend of the Rē
nation by its senate. This was an honorable title bestowed by the Senate upon foreigners, both persons and tribes, implying a loose alliance. Do not translate populus by people, but rather by nation, so as to keep clear the number of the verb.

55. amicus: predicate nominative (49).

ut . . . occuparet: see note on l. 28. Distinguish carefully occurpäre = to seize from obtinère = to occupy, hold. It is always dangerous to translate a Latin word by its English derivative.

56. ante = antea: adverb.

habuerat: for mood see note on l. 42.

Dumnorigi: with persuadet, l. 52. Dumnorix, "king of the world." The rivalry between these two brothers was destined to have far-reaching consequences in the events of the next five years.

57. qui: refers to Dumnorix.

eō tempore: ablative of time when (97).

principatum: not an official position.

maximē: with acceptus = superlative.

plēbi: dative with an adjective (acceptus). See 70.

59. mātrimonium: accusative of limit of motion, because there is a change from the unmarried to the married state.

60. Perfacile . . . esse: infinitive of indirect discourse after probat.

Its subject is perfacere.

factū: ablative of supine after an adjective (170, 6). As it has the same stem as perfacile, it need not be translated.

cōnāta: a perfect passive participle used as a noun.

61. obtentūrus esset: the periphrastic conjugation (43, 1) here denotes intention. Why is the verb in the subjunctive?

62. Nōn . . . quin: the clause introduced by quin (147) is the subject of the infinitive. Supply a grammatical subject, it.

plūrimum . . . possent: multum possum = I am powerful.

63. sē, suē, suō: the repeated reflexives emphasize the importance attached to Orgetorix.

cōpiis: not troops.

64. conciliātūrum: supply esse. The auxiliary verb of compound infinitives is frequently omitted.

inter sē . . . dant: give to each other = exchange. See note on l. 4.

65. fidem et íts iurandum: hendiadys, pledge and oath = a sworn pledge. See note on l. 40.

rēgnō occupātō: ablative absolute, showing circumstance.
66. totius Galliae: double dependence; see note on l. 54. It is
itive of the whole with populus, and objective genitive with which is followed by the ablative or genitive (86, 1).

67. posse: this verb lacks the future infinitive, which should be
with sperare (157, 1).

68. Chapter 4. Ea res: see note on l. 43.

indicium: abstract with collective force. See note on l. 27.

enuntiata: what is the effect of separating this participle from
auxiliary? Why is the prefix e- used?

Moribus: ablative of accordance (93).

69. ex vinculis: what preposition must be used in English?

note on ab Sequani, l. 18.

causam dicere: tell his case = plead.

70. damnatum: object of sequi, of which poenam is the sub
The whole phrase is subject of oportebat, and means, literally, (it:
necessary for the punishment to follow the condemned man. Da-
tum, however, is equivalent to si damnatus erat. Translate if
upon his conviction, the established punishment would be. . .

ut . . . cremaretur: explanatory (144) of poenam. What is
literal, and what the idiomatic translation of igni cremari?

71. Diē constitutā: ablative of time when. Notice the gender
the singular diēs is usually feminine when denoting a fixed and ap-

day.

causae dictioniā: causae dictio forms one idea, pleading.

72. familiam: be careful about the translation of this word.

ad: with numerals ad means about.

73. obaeratōs: men who had entered a semi-servile conditic
payment for financial support. Distinguish between et and -que.
latter is much the closer connective. Here two classes of peopl
summoned by Orgetorix; his immediate dependents (familia),
people under contract obligation to him. The latter are again
divided into clientes and obaerāti. There is a striking resemb-
of these relations to the vasselage and servitude of the M
Ages.

Page 46. 74. eōdem: adverb.

conduxit: contrast with habēbat. The latter is imperfect of de-
sition; the former shows a simple past fact.

75. nē . . . eripuit: sē eripuit = impedivit; therefore the nēc
(147).
76. armis: ablative of means, with exsequīt.
iūs: viz., to punish criminals.
cōnārētur, cōgerent: the subjunctive shows that this is circumstan-
tial (129). Distinguish between cum = when, showing the time of an
event (indicative), and cum = when, showing in what circumstances the
action occurs (subjunctive).
multītūdinēm: a levy of militia in times of disturbance.
78. ut . . . arbitrāntur: ut with the indicative means (1) as, (2)
when, as soon as, (3) because. What is its meaning with the subjunctive?
79. quīn . . . cōnsīcverit: neque abest suspiciō is almost equivalent
to nōn est dubium. See note on l. 62.
ipsē sībi: he himself to himself. Notice the difference between the
intensive ipsē, himself, and the reflexive. In English we may omit the
ipsē. What would be a good English translation for mortem sībi cōn-
sīscere?
80. Chapter 5. nihilō: by nothing the less = nevertheless; ab-
lative of degree of difference.
id . . . cōnstituerant: turn into a phrase, object of facere; their
purpose, etc.
81. cōnantur: for the present tenses in this chapter see note on
cōnfirmānt, l. 50.
ut . . . exeaṃt: substantive clause of purpose, appositive to id
quod. Insert namely.
82. Ubi: expressions of place are often used with regard to time.
83. numerō: ablative of specification.
84. reliqua: not the rest of.
privāta aedīsīciā: isolated houses outside of towns and villages;
farmhouses.
85. praeτer quod: supply id.
sēcum: see note on quibuscum, l. 11.
portātūri: see note on obtentūrus esset, l. 61.
combūrunt: distinguish between this word and incendunt, l. 84.
Can the difference be illustrated by English derivatives?
domum . . . sublātā: an ablative absolute of circumstance. Domum
reditōnis spē forms one idea, hope of returning home. Reditōnis is
objective genitive with spē; domum is accusative of limit of motion
(75. 1) with reditōnis, a noun formed from a verb and retaining verbal
force.
86. *sublātā*: from *tollō*.

*ad* . . . *subeunda*: see note on *ad* . . . *cōnfiendo*, l. 48.

87. *essent*: purpose clause.

*mēnsium*: genitive of measure (*57, a*); translate by *for*. Allc about 1 bushel a man per month, the load to be transported we at least 16,000 tons, and must have required no fewer than that nu of animals for transporting.

*sibi*: dative of reference.

88. *quemque*: this word, if possible, is always placed *next* reflexive.

*domō*: see 78, 1.

*Rauraci*, etc.: these tribes lived to the northeast, between and Lake Constance. *Rauraci*, "masters"; *Tulingi* and *Latobr* "mountaineers."

89. *uti*: notice the short *u* and distinguish from *ūti*, *to use*.

*ūsī*: translate as if *ut ītantur*. Similarly, *exūtīs* = *ut exurant*

90. *oppidīs* . . . *exustūs*: appositive to *cōnsilīō*.

*cum iīs*: we should expect *sēcum*.

91. *Bōiōsequ*: "the terrors." It is the object of *asctscunct*.

Boii lived north of the Rhine and were trying to escape the press the Germans by moving eastward into Styria and Carinthia (*Noric* The name survives in the word *Bohemia*.

92. *Nōreiam*: the present Neumarkt in Styria.

*oppugnābant*: contrast this tense with *transierant* and use as appropriate translation.

*receptūs ad sē*: appositive to *Bōiōs*.

93. *sociōs*: predicate accusative with *asctscunt* (*73, c*).

*sibi*: dative with compound verbs (*65*). Literally, *attach to t selves*; freely, *receive as their*.

94. **Chapter 6.** *Erant*: *esse* meaning *exist* is placed at the b ning of the sentence.

*itineribus*: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative c belongs to the formal, especially the legal language. It shows influence of Caesar's law studies upon his style. The case is abl of means, regularly employed to denote the way by which one proct

95. *possent*: characteristic relative clause (*125, a*); *roads of s kind that* . . . They might have crossed the Rhine to the north made their way through Alsace, but that would have meant a co with the Germans, whom they wanted to escape.
per Séquanos: the people, instead of their country; insert the and of.

96. inter, etc.: on the right bank through the Pas de L’Écluse, where the Rhone passes through a narrow defile. See map facing p. 48.

vix quâ = quâ (adverb) vix: barely such that there . . .

singuli: one each = single file. See 24.

97. dúcèrentur: see note on possent, l. 95. Insert could.

98. facile: adverb.

perpauti: force of the prefix ?

possent: subjunctive of result.

per, etc.: on the left bank of the river.

99. multō: ablative of degree of difference.

100. Allobrogum: "settlers on foreign soil," i.e. in the Province.

101. nūper: 62 B.C.

locis: when locus is accompanied by a modifier, no preposition is used.

102. trānsītur: is crossed (again and again) = can be crossed.

103. finibus: with proximum (70).

104. sērē: i.e. the Helvetians.

Page 47. 105. bonō animō: descriptive ablative (94, 1) with esse derstood.

in populum: accusative of the person toward whom the feeling is rected.

106. vidērentur: subjunctive of indirect discourse with existimábant.

cōactūrōs: the object (eōs) is not expressed.

ut . . . paterentur: object of both persuāsūrōs and cōactūrōs. With latter the infinitive is more common.

107. suōs: i.e. Allobrogum.

eōs: i.e. Helvētiōs.

108. diem dīcunt: a law phrase, appoint a day.

dīē: for use of the word see note on itineribus, l. 94. For gender note on l. 71.

109. convenient: relative clause of purpose (123, 4).

dīēs: masculine, because it is a calendar date.

a.d.: for the Roman way of reckoning time see 173, 174. Owing the confusion of the Roman calendar at that time, the date cannot be fixed with certainty. It probably coincided with the spring equinox, favorite date for such assemblies.

110. L. Pisōne: see note on l. 26. Piso was Caesar's father-in-law. The year was 58 B.C., the time of the present narrative.
III. Chapter 7. Caesar: indirect object of nuntiātum (circumstantial cum clause), placed before its clause (anticipate center attention on the hero.

id: explained by eōs . . . cōnārī, an appositive to id. In transit the infinitive construction insert namely.

112. facere: object (complementary) infinitive with cōnārī. C is infinitive of a progressive present.

mātūrat: this verb is never followed by the place to which.

ab urbe: which was the only city for a Roman? Caesar, as consul, had been near Rome, which a magistrate with military mand was forbidden to enter; therefore ab, not ex.

113. quam maximis: see 106, 2; the plural, because a long i is made every day.

itineribus: see note on first linguā, l. 3.

114. ad Genavam: for use of preposition see 75, 1, a.

pervenit: force of per-?

Prōvinciae: indirect object of imperat. The direct object is num.

Translate levies upon.

116. erat: indicative, because it is a geographical note of Caes

117. rescindī: iubeō is followed by an infinitive in indirect course. When the person commanded is named, the infiniti active; otherwise it is passive.

Ubi: see note on l. 82.

certiōres factī: see Vocabulary, certus.

118. lēgātōs: appositive to nōbilissimōs.

119. cuius lēgātiōnis: lēgātiōnis is antecedent of cuius. It is positive to nōbilissimōs, but has been incorporated into the re clause and put in the same case as the relative.

Nammūs: “son of Nannmus.”

Verucloetius: “far-famed.”

principem: words like princeps, dux, rēx, are often use adjectives.

120. qui dīcērent: relative clause of purpose. The infinitive and rogāre depend, as indirect discourse, on this dīcērent.

sibi: i.e. Helvētīs, possessive dative (68); literally, they had in = they intended. That which is in their mind (facere) is the s of esse.

122. nūllum: emphasized by its position. How does Es emphasize a negative?
rogāre: supply se; used with ut . . . liceat as object clause of purpose. Notice the irregular sequence of liceat.

eius: i.e. Caesaris. The fullness of the expression, it might be owed to them to march with his consent, is peculiar to the language of omacy. Translate freely, that he would consent to their marching.

123. L. Cassium cōnsulem: 107 B.C.
124. occisum, pulsum, missum, concēdendum: supply esse.
125. sub iugum: as a sign of disgrace, a surrendered army was sometimes forced to march through a gate (iugum) made of a spear laid horizontally over two spears fastened in the ground and so low that the soldiers had to bow their heads to pass. Cp. subjigate.
126. hominēs: subject of temperāturōs. Supply sibi esse.
animō: descriptive ablative.
dātā facultāte: ablative absolute = a condition.
127. itineris faciundī: the genitive is objective with facultāte; iundī = faciendī.
128. dum: with subjunctive it means until.
129. quōs: see note on prōvinciae, l. 114.
130. diem: here of indefinite time.
ad dēliberandum: gerund construction of purpose (169, 3).
quid: instead of aliquid (112, 2).
131. Id.: see 172, c, 3.
reverterentur: the subjunctive is used because an imperative, when ordered, is changed to the third person of the subjunctive. Caesar did, si quid vultis, revertimini.
132. CHAPTER 8. legiōne, militibus: ablatives of means.
133. qui . . . Influit: we should say that the lake has its outlet in the river.

Page 48. 135. milia: accusative of extent of space (74).
136. mūrum: Caesar exaggerates. In reality he only fortified level places and increased the slope of the river bank.
 fossamque: as there was a fixed ratio of about 3:2 between width and height of rampart, only one measurement need be given.
perdūcit: because the work progresses as if one draws a line with the ruler.
137. dispōnit: note the force of dis-, at intervals.
castella: these were at some distance behind the rampart and the
reserves for the sentinels on it. From them the troops, when summoned
by a signal.
commūnit: note the force of com-; see Vocabulary.
138. quō: regularly used with a comparative instead of ut
express purpose. The case is ablative of degree of difference.
sē invítō: ablative absolute; he being unwilling = against his.
cōsentur: subjunctive of (implied) indirect discourse, giving
reason in Caesar’s mind and representing an original future indica
dīēs: see note on l. 71.
vēnit: ubi = when is regularly used with the perfect indicative,
regardless of the time of the narrative. In past time we must use
pluperfect.
140. negat . . . posse: says that he cannot. Negāre regulē
discere nōn.
mōre: ablative of accordance (93).
mōre et exemplō: hendiadys, established precedent (171, 1).
141. iter: permission to march.
ūlili: usually an adjective; the pronoun is quisquam. Both are
in negative sentences.
142. cōsentur: subjunctive of indirect discourse instead of
indicative. Notice the sequence and see note on cōnfīrmant,
prohibitūrum: supply sē esse.
Helvētīi: subject of dēstitūrunt, l. 147. Alīt, l. 144, is appos
Helvētīi. We should expect an alīt also before nāvibus (some
others) but it is omitted to show that the greater number used
143. spē: ablative of separation (79). Translate thrown
from = disappointed in.
nāvibus . . . factīs: not ablative absolute, but ablative of m
Boats were fastened together and covered with boards so as to sei
a flatboat ferry.
144. quā: adverb.
minima: predicate adjective.
145. interdiī, noctū: adverbs, instead of the ablative of the no
sī . . . possent: object clause (indirect question) after a ve
trying, regularly introduced by sī (151).
146. mūnitōne: ablative of means. Notice the order: the rai
is the first obstacle; then, at the alarm given by the sentinels
soldiers come from the *castella* and, by a hail of missiles, drive the invaders back.

147. *cōnātū*: ablative of separation. Study carefully the arrangement of this sentence so as to understand how Latin develops a periodic structure. The principal fact, *Helvētītī dēstītērunt*, opens and closes the sentence. The modifiers of this idea are given in the order in which they occur in time: the Helvetians are disappointed in their hope for a peaceable arrangement; many build ferries; others cross the shoals; this is done repeatedly, both by day and by night; they try to rush the fortifications; the alarm is given; the reserves rush up and hurl their weapons; the enemy are beaten back; finally, they give up.

148. Chapter 9. *Relinquēbātur*: the emphatic position of the verb may be kept in English by using the adverb *there*.

*ēna*: *only*.

*Sēquani*: ablative absolute. See note on l. 138.

149. *angustiās*: the Pas de L’Écluse. See note on l. 96.

*cum* ... *possent*: a causal clause (132).

150. *Dumnōrigem*: see note on l. 56.

151. *ēdēprecātōre*: ablative absolute, with *dēprecātōre* as predicate noun, denoting means; *through him as mediator*.

*impetrārent*: their wish.

152. *grātiā*: ablative of cause (83).

153. *Helvētiī*: see 70.

154. *filiam*: see l. 59.

in *mātrimōnium dūxerat*: see Vocabulary, *mātrimōnium*. For case note on l. 59.

155. *rēgni*: objective genitive with *cupiditāte*.

*noviō rēbus*: dative of indirect object with *studēre*. See Vocabulary, *retain*.

156. *habēre obstrictās*: *habēō* with perfect passive participle shows the effect of the action lasts after its completion. Translate *habēō keep*.

157. *rem*: the mediation.

*impetrat*: the clause *ut* ... *patiantur* is its object, while the use *obsidēsque* ... *dēnt* is the object of *perficit*.

158. *obsidēs*: object of *dēnt* but placed before the *-que* (anticipation).

159. *Sēquani, Helvētii*: supply *obsidēs dant*.

*nē* ... *prohibeant, ut* ... *trānseant*: these clauses explain the
purpose of the exchange of hostages. Insert *pledging themselves* fore *né*.

161. Chapter 10. *renüntiätur*: force of prefix?

*Helvëtiä*, etc.: see note on l. 120.

*per agrum*: for this whole passage study the map of Gaul.

Santones lived on the right bank of the Garonne, near its mouth.

region is to-day called Saintonge.

163. *nön lönge*: really about 100 miles.

*Tolösätium*: to-day Toulouse.

*qua civitä*s: see note on *cuius légätiönis*, l. 119.

164. *Id*: *i.e.* the Helvetian settlement.

*sì fieret*: subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing an ori
ginal future indicative.

*magnö*, etc.: ablative of manner or attendant circumstance.

Page 49. 165. *prövinciae*: objective genitive with *periculö*.

*futürum*: supply *esse*; *ut* . . . *habëret* is the subject of this

finitive.

*ut* . . . *habëret*: *prövincia* (understood from *prövinciae*) is subject of the clause, *hominës* its object, *finitimö* predicate accusati

166. *populi*: note the case and see note on *Helvëtíts*, l. 1

*Inimicö* is used as a noun.

*locës*: dative with an adjective (70).

*patentibus*: not protected by natural boundaries.

*maximëque frümëntäriüs*: adjectives in *-äriüs* can be compared o

by *magis* and *maximë*.

167. *munütiönö*: indirect object of *praeficit*.

168. *Labënum*: the most trusted and most prominent of Caes-

assistants. Later on, during the Civil War, he became Caesar’s bit

est enemy.

*légätum*: a Roman governor was accompanied by one trus

assistant or more, appointed by the Senate on his recommendati

These assistants served at his pleasure, either with or without fixed *ä-

mand, and represented him in his absence. Distinguish the word

this meaning from *légätus* = *envoy*.

169. *Italiäm*: Hither Gaul, which by this time began to be re-

oned as part of Italy.

*contendit*: cp. with *mätürat*, l. 112.

170. *Aquilléam*: on the northern coast of the Adriatic, defend

Italy against attacks from the northeast.
172. *per Alpēs*: these roads were used only by traders. Armies commonly followed the west coast of Italy along the sea.

173. *Ibi*: i.e. *in Alpībus*.

Graioceil et Catūrigēs: “the victors of Ocelum” and “the chiefs of battle”; thus the names reveal the warlike character of these tribes.

175. Complūribus, etc.: arrange thus: *hīs pulīs* (ablative absolute) *complūribus proelīs* (ablative of means).

ab Ocelō: see 78, i, a.

176. prōvincaei: possessive genitive; translate by *in*.

182. Chapter ii. trādūxerant, pervēnerant: contrast the tense with *populābantur*, l. 183, and express the difference in the translation.

183. Aedulī: for position see note on *Caesart*, l. iii.

cum . . . possent: see note on l. 149.

184. suaque: the neuter plural of the adjective is used as a noun; their belongings.

185. rogātum: accusative of the supine used after a verb of motion to express purpose (170, a). *Auxilium* is its object.

Ita sē, etc.: indirect discourse, depending on the idea of speaking implied in *rogātum*.


186. meritōs esse: *such had been their zeal for*.

ut . . . dēbuerint: result clause. Notice the sequence. In result clauses a perfect subjunctive is often substituted for an imperfect, to mark the result as final or decisive (122, 6).

187. vāstāri: complementary to *dēbuerint*. Notice the tense.

Since in English *ought, must* show no difference between past and present tense, past action must be expressed by the complementary infinitive: *he ought to come, he ought to have come*. In Latin these verbs have a complete conjugation and carry the burden of expressing the time. Hence the complementary infinitive is always in the present tense: *ventre dēbet, ventre dēbuit*.

188. expugnāri: distinguish between *pugnāre, oppugnāre, expugnāre*.

Ambarī: “the settlers around the Arar.”

189. necessāriī, etc.: hendiadys, *near kinsmen*.

190. dēpopulātīs: the perfect passive participle of deponents is often used with passive force.
mōn facile: adverb. Turn into a phrase with infinitive: they trouble in keeping.
ab: contrast the use of the preposition here with that of ūiner l. 159.
192. trāns: on the north bank of the river. Caesar gives m reasons, because he really had overstepped the limits of his assignn by leaving his province.
fügā: ablative of means, though it impresses us as manner. Tr: late by in.
193. sibi: possessive dative (68).
194. solum: notice the quantity of the o and distinguish f sōlus, -a, -um.
reliquī: genitive of the whole with nihil (55).
195. sibi: supply esse. For case see 67.
dum: with subjunctive, until (127, c).

Page 50. 196. Santonōs: what is the nominative? See Sa num, l. 162. In using foreign proper names the Romans someti varied the declension.
198. Chapter 12. est: force of the position of the verb?
Arar: “the slow river,” later called Saucona, whence the mōc Saōne.
199. lēnitāte: ablative of description.
200. fluent: subjunctive of indirect question. This clause is subject of iūdicāri, complementary infinitive to the subjunctive result, possit.
Id: object of trānsībant. Intransitives frequently become transi by composition.
201. ratibus, etc.: see note on l. 143.
trānsībant: use progressive conjugation.
202. explōrātōres: regular troops used for reconnoitering, chi cavalry recruited from among the Gauls.
trēs partēs: three fourths.
partēs, flūmen: both objects of trādūxisse, of which Helvētiōs is subject. For case see 73, 2.
203. quārtam . . . partem: one fourth.
204. Ararim: cp. with Arar, l. 198, and Ararī, l. 221. Also note on l. 196.
ḍē tertīā vigiliā: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided i four equal watches.
205. *cum* legionibus: see note on l. 28.
207. *impeditōs*: translate by *while*.
208. *mandārunt* = *mandāverunt*.
   *in* . . . *abdidērunt*: *they (fled into and) hid in*, etc.
211. *Hic*, etc.: Caesar tries to justify his butchery by representing it
   as a providential revenge for the disgraceful defeat of the Romans in
   107 B.C.
   *cum* . . . *exisset*: *cum* clause of circumstance.
212. *memoriā*: ablative of time when.
213. *cāsū*: ablative of cause.
214. *quae pars*: the noun, really belonging with *ea* (l. 215) as antecedent
   of *quae*, is attracted into the relative clause and this precedes
   the demonstrative antecedent. This is a very effective arrangement.
   216. *princeps* . . . *persolvit*: *paid first = was the first to pay.*
   Remember that *poena* = *penalty*, which the culprit pays and the person
   wronged takes, and you will have no trouble in understanding the
   various idioms connected with *poena*. See Vocabulary.
217. *eius*: i.e. *Caesaris*.
218. *socer*: L. Calpurnius Piso, consul of this year (see l. 110).
   The man killed was the great-grandfather of Caesar's fourth wife, so
   that Caesar's grievance would appear to be very far-fetched. But it is
   interesting to note the survival of the feeling of blood vengeance; cp.
   the feuds in our southern mountain districts.
220. **CHAPTER 13.** *reliquās*, etc.: for position see note on *Caesarit*,
   l. 111.
221. *cōsequī*: distinguish from *sequī*, *persequī*.
   *pontem* . . . *cūrat*: *he had a bridge built*. See 166, 2 b.
223. *commōti*: cp. with *permōtī*, l. 43.
   *cum*: causal, with *intellegērent* as predicate.
   *id quod*: explained by the clause *ut* . . . *trānsrērent*. Translate by
   a phrase.
   *diēbus*: ablative of time within which (97).
224. *illum*: contrast with *ipsī*, l. 223. Latin has at its command a
   large number of demonstratives representing the third person, while
   English has only *he, she, it*. In translating substitute names.
   *ūnō*: but the Roman army numbered only about 42,000 men com-
   pared with approximately 240,000 of the enemy.
225. *cūius lēgātiōnis*: see note on l. 119.
226. Divicō: “devoted to the Lord.”
bellō Cassiānō: see note on l. 123. The adjective (-ānus longing to) represents a clause: cuius bellī Cassius dux fuerat.
Page 51. 227. ēgit: agere cum = plead.
Si pācem, etc.: the following lines are the first example of conti
indirect discourse and should be studied carefully in order to gras
principles of this frequent construction. The direct form of the si
was as follows: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs fact
eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi ēōs Caesar cōstū
atque esse voluerit; sīn bellō nōs persequi ē persevērābīs, reminīsc
veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et prīstīnae virtūtis Helvētiī
Quod imprōvisō ēnum pāgum ādōrītus es, cum īī qui flūmen trānsīe
sūis auxilium ferre nōn poterant, nōtī ob eam rem aut tuae magn
virtūtī tribuere aut nōs dēspicerē. Nōs īta ā patribus maiōribi
nōstrīs didicīmus, ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īn
nitāmur. Quārē nōtī committere ut is locus ēbī cōnstitērimu
calamitāte populi Rōmānī et internecīōne exercitūs tūt nōmen ca
aut memorīam prōdat.

The clearest possible understanding of Latin indirect discou
always reached by such a recasting of the report into its original
especially as far as the proper reference of the pronouns is concei
populus Rōmānus, Helvētiīs, etc.: the use of the names instea
pronouns not only contributes to the clearness of the expression
also preserves the formal and legal character of the proposed cont
229. cōnstituīset: from con- and statūō = to set up, place.
230. persequeī: supply Helvētiīs.
231. reminīscerētur: for original imperative. This is an indep
ent subjunctive.
incommodi: for case see 59. It is a mild word for defeat, in b
ing with the peaceful character of the proposal. Later on, when D
wishes to impress Caesar with the risk he is running (l. 239) he
the strong words calamitāte, internecīōne.
232. Quōd: as to the fact that. See 150. a.
233. cum: temporal, with original indicative.
234. nē . . . tribueret, dēspiceret: for a prohibition (154). Ti
late he should not, etc.
235. magnopere: here = multum, nimium.
236. ā patribus: properly an ablative of agent, because discō, I le
= doceor. I am taught.
ut . . . contenderent: object clause of result with didicisse, explaining ita.
237. dolō: ablative of means with nitor; to support one's self by = to rely on.
238. ut . . . caperet, prōderet (l. 240): object clause of purpose with committeret.
constitissent: for future perfect indicative. Divico refers to the place of the coming battle, not that of the present conference.
Page 52. 240. nōmen caperet: because many places have been named after some event happening there. Cp. Dead Man's Gulch.
memoriam: supply calamitātis.
Eō sibi, etc.: The original form of this speech was as follows: Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eas rēs, quās vōs lēgāti Helvētīi commemorāvītis, memorā teneō, atque eō gravius fereō, quō minus merītō populi Rōmānī accidērunt: quī si alicuius inūriāe sibi cōnscius fuisse, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commōnīssum à sē intellēxit quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāvit. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviāci volō, num etiam recentium inūriārūm, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvītis, quod āeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvītis, memoriam dépōnere possum? Quod vestrā victorīā tam insolenter gloriāmint, quodque tam diū vōs impūnē inūriās intulisse admirāmint, eōdem pertinēnt. Cōnsuēvērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, his secundōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitiātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī ea, quae pollicēmint, factūrōs intellegam, et sī āeduīs dē inūriīs, quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulīstis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam.
Eō: ablative of degree of difference or of cause. See note on hōc, l. 30.
dubitātiōnis: genitive of the whole with minus. See note on reliquit, l. 194.
242. commemorāssent: carefully distinguish from reminisci.
243. eō . . . quō: see note on l. 241.
244. merītō: does merit here fit the sense? What word does it?
qui: i.e. populus Rōmānus.
245. inūriāe: genitive with an adjective (58).
sibi cōnscius: knowing with one's self = conscious.

fuisset: condition contrary to fact, using the subjunctive als-direct discourse (140, a).

fuisse: its subject is cavère. Translate it would have been.

246. eō: ablative of means.

dēceptum: supply esse populum Rōmānum.

quoē: that. The clause explains eō.

commissum: supply esse. The indirect question quāre timēret i subject. Literally, (it) why it should fear had not been done; from it did not see in the past any reason for fear.

247. timendum: supply esse. With putāret this is the sec predicate of quod. Literally, it thought that to it fearing ought not to be; freely, it thought it ought not to be needlessly afraid.

248. Quod si: but if.

contumēliae: see 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius, l. 21: which victōriā, l. 252, also refers.

vellet: supply Caesar.

249. iniūriārum: objective genitive with memoriam.

quoē . . . vexāssent: these clauses explain iniūriārum. For facts cp. Ch. 11.

250. per vim = vt.

251. posse: infinitive, because the question num, etc., is equiva to a negative statement.

252. Quod: as to the fact that. These quod clauses are the subj of pertinēre.

victōriā: ablative of cause. To whom do suā and sē refer?

tam insolenter: modifies glōriārentur, but tam diū modifies intul.

253. impūnē: force of im-? Compare with English, and with in- in intulīsse. How about iniūria?

254. Cōnsuēsse, etc.: translate in this order: cōnsuēsse deōs mortālēs secundiōrēs rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitiāem his concē.

quōs . . . velint, quō . . . doleant. Cōnsuēsse = cōnsuēvisse; perfect of inceptive verbs (in -scō) commonly has present meani Concedere (l. 257) is complementary infinitive to it.

quō: see note on l. 138.

255. ex: source, but with causal force; for, over.

commütātiōne: force of com-?

quōs: its antecedent is his.

257. Cum . . . sint: concessive, as tamen shows (135).
258. uti . . . intellegat: purpose. 
Quae pollicentur factūros: simplify to keep their promise. Eōs must be supplied as subject of factūros.

259. Aseduis: indirect object of satisfaciant.

263. uti . . . cōnsuērint: result clause. For tense see note on ut . . . dēbuerint, l. 186.

rei: objective genitive with testem.

268. Chapter 15. quem . . . habēbat: Caesar's whole cavalry was recruited from among the Gauls and, later on, from the Germans also. For the force of coāctum habēbat see note on l. 156.

269. qui videant: relative clause of purpose. For number see note on ut . . . extrent, l. 28.

270. Qui: see note on quā dē causā, l. 11. It refers to equitātum.

Novissimum agmen: see Vocabulary, agmen. Distinguish exercitus, agmen, aciēs.

Page 53. 271. aliēnō locō: belonging to another = intīquo; opposite of suō. For omission of preposition see note on l. 101.

272. et: and indeed.

273. proelīō: ablative of cause.

275. agmine proelīō: ablative of means. With the rear guard they excited our men by means of a skirmish. Translate proelīō esse by challenge to a fight.

276. ā proelīō: for use of preposition see 79, a.

277. satis habēbat: satis is the predicate accusative of habēbat, which has the infinitive prohibēre for its direct object. Thought keep-

away sufficient = was satisfied to keep away.

rapinae, etc.: ablatives of separation.

279. hostium: when a compound phrase is modified by a genitive or a prepositional phrase, the latter is commonly placed between the two parts of the compound phrase, similarly to the arrangement of prepositions discussed in the note on l. 11.
280. primum: supply agmen.
quinis: the distributive numeral, because the distance was kept
day.
281. milibus: ablative of comparison (84). The accusative of
tent might have been used (84, 2).
interesset: subjunctive of result.
especially rogō, flagītō, are used with two accusatives (73, 6); but r
of these verbs express the "person asked" by a prepositional phras.
283. essent: subjunctive of indirect discourse implied in flagit
publicē: not publicly.
flagitāre: predicate of Caesar. An infinitive (historical) with
ject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indica
(165).
frigora: not cold climate, which would be frīgus, but cold weat
cold season. The clause quod . . . posita est, therefore, was
written by Caesar, but is a geographical comment of some reader.
284. sub septentrīōnibus: under this constellation, viz., in the nc
285. posita: see note on divīsa, l. 1.
frumenta: crops, while threshed grain is denoted by the sing
(l. 287).
286. nē pābuli quidem: the words emphasized by nē quidem
regularly inclosed by them.
287. flūmine, nāvibus: ablatives of means, though we use exp
sions of place in translating; up the river (on account of the force
SUBvexerat) in boats.
288. minus: see note on minimē, l. 8.
iter . . . āverterant: had turned their route away from = had turn
aside from; namely, to the west, to reach the valley of the Liger (Loi
289. ā quībus: and from them.
Diem, etc.: supply Caesarem as object of dūcere. Diem is acct
ive of extent of time. Dūcere, dīcere are historical infinitives, w\ncōnferri, comportāri, adesse are infinitives of indirect discourse a
dicere, with frumentum understood.
291. diūitus: too long (106, 1).
frumentum: object of mētīrī, which is subject of oportēret.
292. eōrum: i.e. Aeduōrum.
294. Diviciācō, Liscō: ablatives, appositive to prīncipibus.
qui: i.e. Liscus.
295. quem: supply magistratum. Notice the difference in meaning; here official, above office.

296. 

297. cum . . . possit: concessive clause.

298. possit: supply frumentum.

299. sublevetur: subjunctive of the indirect discourse implied in accusat.

300. quod sit: object of queritur, in the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse.

301. queritur: distinguish from quaerō.

Page 54. 302. Chapter 17. Tum dēnum: notice the skill with which Caesar, by his detailed and circumstantial description of the desperate situation, leads up to the sudden revelation of treachery among his own allies. The vividness is still more emphasized by the use of the present prōpōnit (l. 303) and the principal, instead of historical, sequence of tenses in the following report.

303. quod . . . tacuerat: object clause of prōpōnit. Quod itself is object of tacuerat.

304. plūrimum valeat: valeō = I am strong, have value, am worth. Compare plurimum possē.

305. nē . . . cōnferant: translate from collecting. For construction after verbs of hindering see 147.

307. quod: relative.

308. præstāre: subject, perferre (l. 309). The words præstāre, ēreptōn (l. 311) are quoted by Liscus from the sēditōsa orātiō of the rebels.

309. dūbitāre: supply sē.

310. quin: see 149.

311. Helvetiōs: the emphatic position shows that, in the opinion of the rebels, the Helvetians were the last bulwark of Gallic freedom.

superāverint: perfect subjunctive for future perfect indicative.
310. ûnâ: adverb.
Aeduîs: see 66, b.
311. sint ëreptûrí: the periphrastic conjugation (122) bring
more clearly the future time, which otherwise would be express
present or imperfect subjunctive.
Ab ësdem: here the speech of Liscus himself is resumed.
quæque = et ea quae: a relative clause in indirect discourse, n-
indirect question.
312. ã së: i.e. Liscô. But hös refers to ësdem.
313. quin etiam: nay, more.
quod: as to the fact that.
necessâriam: critical.
coactus: only upon compulsion. This participle contains the
idea.
314. id: i.e. quod ënsûntiârit.
315. fécerit: indirect question, object of intellegere.
potuerit: we might have had the pluperfect subjunctive after the
fect infinitive tacuisse, but the writer prefers to maintain the prin-
sequence of the chapter.
317. Chapter 18. Dumnonigem: see l. 150, et seq.
318. pluribus: ablative absolute with praesentibus, participl
praesum. For force of comparative see 106, l.
319. iactâri: bandied about.
concilium: distinguish from cônslium.
322. esse: supply ea.
Ipsum: the man referred to.
323. magnâ, etc.: study the word order to see how the Latir
velops a composite idea.
325. portôria: customs duties, upon entry, transit, export; 1
gâlia, other taxes. There was no national customs union in (Cp. the early history of duties in the United States.
326. pretiô: ablative of price (88).
redêmpta habère: see note on l. 156. In antiquity, taxes
collected by the so-called "farming" system. An individual or a
pany paid to the state a lump sum in advance for the taxes of a
and then collected the taxes for his or its own benefit.
327. licînte: bidding (at auction).
nêmô: notice the emphatic position.
328. largiendum: not necessarily bribes. Among the Gauls and Germans, the more lavish the gifts which he bestowed among his followers, the more highly a prince or great noble was esteemed by them. A goodly treasure, therefore, was always a political asset.

330. sūmptū: ablative of means. Translate by at.
neque = et non.
331. domi: see 99.
largiter: irregularly formed adverb from largus = multum.
332. causā: always placed after its modifying genitive. It looks forward to something not yet accomplished.
mātrem: Dumnorix as head of his household held power over all the male members of his family.
Biturigibus: “kings of the world.” For construction see note on Sēquanois, l. 95.
hominī: dative with the compound collocāsse. Had placed with =
καὶ married her to.
333. illic: modifies nōbilissimō.
ex Helvētīs = Helvētiam: she was the daughter of Orgetorix. See
Page 55. 334. sorōrem ex mātrem: i.e. they had the same mother but not the same father.
335. nūptum: for construction see note on rogātum, l. 185. The word can be used only of women.
civitātēs: contrast case with that of in Biturigibus (l. 332). There the stress was upon homint collocāsse, here it is upon the place to which the woman was sent. These were political marriages such as we see today among European royalty.
collocāsse = collocāvisse.
Favēre: supply eum as subject.
336. Helvētīs: see 64.
affinitātem: distinguish this relationship by marriage from propinquit
and necessārit, blood relations.
ōdisse: for meaning of tense see Vocabulary.
337. suō nōmine: ablative of cause. Nōmen is a business term, the name of the debtor which appears on top of the ledger page, hence = count; for private reasons.
adventīl: ablative either of cause or of time when. It is not always possible to decide definitely which of two or more possible ideas the writer has in mind.
338. eius: i.e. Dumnorigis.
339. Si quid accidat: the subjunctive represents an original future indicative.
quid: this older form of the indefinite pronoun is always used after st, nisi, nē, num.
340. in spem . . . venire: came into hope = conceived hope. Not quite equivalent to spērāre.
341. imperīō: ablative of time when. Translate by under.
342. quam habebat: present. The position marks the clause as equivalent to an adjective.
343. Reperiēbat: the imperfect (of repeated statement) shows that many of the chiefs said so.
quod: as to the fact that.
344. paucis ante diēbus: the adverb ante has comparative force and is used with an ablative of degree of difference. It is generally placed between adjective and noun.
345. factum: supply esse with initium as subject.
346. auxiliō: dative of service (69).
Caesarī: dative of reference (69, a).
349. Chapter 19. certissimae rēs: explained by the appositive quod clauses which follow. These have the subjunctive instead of indicative because they are given as existing in Caesar's mind.
351. dandōs cūrāset: see note on l. 221.
352. iniussū: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Together with suō and cīvitātis, it corresponds to the ablative absolute inscientibus ipstis.

suō: i.e. Caesaris: a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun.
354. accusāretur: notice the change of tense. The other acts were of the past, but the charge had just been made and was still pending.
satis: here a noun, subject of esse, with causae as genitive of the whole (55).
355. quārē . . . iubēret: indirect question, appositive to satis causae.
animādverteret: distinguish animādvertere in from animādvertere with the accusative.
356. animādvertere: for voice see note on rescindī, l. 117.
rēbus: indirect object of repugnābat.
357. quod . . . cognōverat: the clause is appositive to unum.
358. sē; i.e. Caesarem.
359. cōgnōverat: for force of tense see note on cōnsuēsse, l. 254.
361. cōmārētur: subjunctive, because this was Caesar's intention (128).
362. cotidiānis: those employed every day, regular. Caesar, of course, spoke no Celtic, and Diviciacus only imperfect Latin at best.

C. Valerium Trucllum: a Gaul to whom Roman citizenship had been given. He had, therefore, a Roman praenōmen and nōmen gentile, but a Gallic cōgnōmen. For Roman names see 175. The phrase per, etc., modifies colloquitur, l. 365.

364. cui: dative of indirect object, because fidem habēbat = cōn-

fidebāt.

omnium rērum: objective genitive with fidem. Translate the whole phrase: in whom he placed the greatest trust in everything.

Page 56. 365. commonefacit: stronger than monet. It has the indirect question quae . . . sint for its object.

ipsō: i.e. Diviciācō.

366. sint dicta, dīserit: subjunctives of indirect question (151).

367. sē: i.e. Caesarem.

368. ut . . . iubeat: object clauses of purpose after petit, hortātur.

369. animi: possessive genitive with animī.

animi: objective genitive with offēnsiōne.

ipse: i.e. Caesar; see l. 355.


371. nē . . . statueret: purpose clause after obsecrāre, representing a wish.

nē quid: since negative purpose clauses must be introduced by nē, the Romans always said lest anything; etc., instead of that nothing.

quid: see note on l. 339.

gravius: too (106, 1).

372. Scire, etc.: indirect discourse after obsecrāre, which contains the idea of saying.

illa: the charges of Liscus and Caesar.

nec quemquam = et nēminem: et and a negative always combine into nec or neque.

ēō: his knowledge, referring to scire, which is neuter.

373. dolōria: with plūs (55).

ipse: i.e. Diviciācus. For the sake of clearness the names should, where necessary, be substituted for the pronouns.

CAESAR — RIESS AND JANES — 9
338. eius: i.e. Dumnorigis.
339. Sī quid accidat: the subjunctive represents an original future indicative.
quid: this older form of the indefinite pronoun is always used after st, nisi, nē, num.
340. in spem . . . venire: came into hope = conceived hope. Not quite equivalent to spērāre.
341. imperiō: ablative of time when. Translate by under.
342. quam habeat: présent. The position marks the clause as equivalent to an adjective.
343. Reperiēbat: the imperfect (of repeated statement) shows that many of the chiefs said so.
quod: as to the fact that.
344. paucis ante diēbus: the adverb ante has comparative force and is used with an ablative of degree of difference. It is generally placed between adjective and noun.
345. factum: supply esse with initium as subject.
346. auxiliō: dative of service (69).
Caesarī: dative of reference (69, a).
349. Chapter 19. certissimae ré: explained by the appositive quod clauses which follow. These have the subjunctive instead of indicative because they are given as existing in Caesar’s mind.
351. dándōs cūrāset: see note on l. 221.
352. iniusū: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Together with suō and civitātis, it corresponds to the ablative absolute inscientibus īpsīs.
suō: i.e. Caesarīs: a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun.
354. accusārētur: notice the change of tense. The other acts were of the past, but the charge had just been made and was still pending.
satis: here a noun, subject of esse, with causae as genitive of the whole (55).
355. quārē . . . iubēret: indirect question, appositive to satis causae.
animaōdverteret: distinguish animadvertere in from animadvertere with the accusative.
356. animadvertere: for voice see note on rescindt, l. 117.
rēbus: indirect object of repugnābat.
357. quod . . . cōgnōverat: the clause is appositive to ūnum.
358. sē; i.e. Caesarem.
359. ognoverat: for force of tense see note on consuēsse, l. 254.
360. nē . . . offendere: for nē with verbs of fearing see 146.
361. ognāretur: subjunctive, because this was Caesar's intention (128).
362. cotidianus: those employed every day, regular. Caesar, of
363. course, spoke no Celtic, and Diviciacus only imperfect Latin at best.

C. Valerium Trucullum: a Gaul to whom Roman citizenship had
been given. He had, therefore, a Roman praenōmen and nōmen gentile,
a Gallic cognōmen. For Roman names see 175. The phrase per,
modifies colloquitur, l. 365.
364. cui: dative of indirect object, because fidem habēbat = cōn-
365. fidebat.
366. omnium rērum: objective genitive with fide. Translate the whole
phrase: in whom he placed the greatest trust in everything.
Page 56. 365. commonefacit: stronger than monet. It has the
367. direct question quae . . . sint for its object.
368. iē: i.e. Diviciācō.
369. sint dicta, dixerit: subjunctives of indirect question (151).
370. sē: i.e. Caesarem.
371. nē . . . statueret: purpose clause after obsecrāre, representing
wish.
372. Scīre, etc.: indirect discourse after obsecrāre, which contains
the idea of saying.
373. dolōria: with plūs (55).

CAESAR — RIESS AND JANES — 9
374. plūrimum: with posset.
domi: i.e. apud Aeduŏs.
ille: i.e. Dumnorix.
375. sē: i.e. Diviciācus. But Dumnorix is subject of crévisset.
ad . . . grātiām: gerundive construction of purpose (169, 3).
suam: with both grātiām and ērnicium, referring to the speaker.
ūterētur: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.
Translate quibus, however, by yet these.
378. frāternō = frātris: objective genitive.
vulgī: subjective genitive. Gender of vulgus?
Quōd si: now, if.
379. ā Caesare: ablative of source, almost equivalent to an ablative
of agent because accidisset = factum esset.
accidisset: representing original future perfect.
cum: circumstantial, while.
eum locum amicitiae: literally, such a place of friendship = such high
place in his friendship.
381. factum: supply esse.
futūrum uti . . . āverterentur: this circumlocution is frequent in
place of the future passive infinitive.
382. cum: is this preposition or conjunction? Look for the mood
of the verb.
verbis: ablative of means, but translate as manner.
384. cōnsōlātus: equivalent to a circumstantial cum clause.
faciat: subjunctive in indirect discourse, representing an original
imperative. It might have been connected with rogat by ut and would
then have been called an object clause of purpose.
tanti: see 57, c.
eius: i.e. Diviciāci.
sē: i.e. Caesarem.
385. uti . . . condōnet: result clause. Literally, that he presents as a
gift to his prayers the wrong; freely, that he would overlook the wrong
on account of . . .
rei pūblicae: objective genitive.
387. reprehendat, intellegat, querātur: indirect questions, objects
of ostendit, prōpōnit, l. 388.
389. ut . . . vitet: object clause of purpose with monet.
390. praeterita: participle used as noun, past. For construction
see note on l. 385.
custōdēs pōnit: Caesar was not foolish enough to rely on Dum-
norix's repentance. In the end, he put him to death for treason (V, 7).
sagat, loquātur: indirect questions, objects of scire.
392. possit: purpose.
393. CHAPTER 21. Caesar resumes the narrative broken off in
Ch. 16. Recall the situation.
394. sub: be careful about translating this word.
mitia: accusative of extent where one expects the ablative of
measure.

Page 57. 395. quālis ... ascēnsum: indirect questions, objects
of cōgnōscerent.
in circuitū: by a roundabout route. Caesar planned to attack the
Helvetians from the rear and front at the same time.
396. qui cōgnōscerent: relative clause of purpose. Its (omitted)
antecedent is the object of mēsit.
Renuntiatum est: with facilem (ascēnsum) esse as subject.
397. Dē tertiā vigiliā: at what hour?
prō praetōre: praetor was the old title of the commanding general.
A ligātus prō praetōre was a deputy, with the rank of commander in
case of the absence of the actual general.
398. ilis: with cum, while ducibus is appositive to it.
cōgnōscerant: here actual pluperfect of cōgnōscō; had learned, had
reconciled.
399. cōnsiliī: predicate possessive genitive (52, a).
400. dē quārtā vigiliā: how much later? As the Roman army
marched about three miles an hour, the circuitus (l. 395) was about
nine miles longer than the straight road.
401. rei militāris: genitive with an adjective (58).
402. habēbātur: see note on dūxērunt, l. 49.
L. Sullae: in the Mithradatic War, 88–84 B.C.
M. Crassi: in the Slave War, 73–71 B.C. Considius was thus an
officer of very large experience and seemed the most reliable person to
Caesar, who so far had had little experience as general on a large scale.
403. CHAPTER 22. cum ... tenērētur: the subjunctive proves this
clause to be circumstantial. How far does it extend?
summus môns: see summum iugum montis, l. 399. For meaning
see 105.
404. passibus: ablative of comparison (84).
neque . . . aut . . aut: and . . neither . . nor. See note on nec quemquam, l. 372.

408. comperit: perfect.

409. equō admissō: ablative absolute denoting manner; the horse being urged = at full gallop.

accurrīt, dīcit: historical presents. And so subdūcit, instruit in ll. 412, 413. Notice the lack of connectives (asyndeton) which strengthens the impression of hurry produced by the present tenses.

412. collēm: the Romans, wherever possible, chose for a battlefield the slope of a hill. The position on higher ground increased the weight of the attack and facilitated the defense.

subdūcit: sub = close to.

collēm: for arrangement of a Roman battle line see Introduction, 41.

413. ut . . praec espectum: the intransitive verb praecipere cannot form a personal passive (64, 9).

nē . . committeret: dependent on praec spectum erat, and representing a prohibition.

414. ipsius: i.e. Caesaris.

415. visae essent: indirect discourse, representing original future perfect indicative.

ut . . fieret: explains the purpose of this plan.

416. monte occupātō: translate as if montem occupāverat et.

exspectābat, abstīnēbat: notice the tense of continued action. Use the progressive form in English.

417. Multō . . diē: ablative absolute denoting time; when the day was much = late in the day.

419. timōre perterritum: thoroughly (per) frightened by fear = panic-stricken.

quod nōn vidisset: relative clause, object of renūntiāvisse.

420. visō = eō quod vidisset.

421. intervāllō: antecedent of quō. Attracted into the relative clause it is equivalent to eō intervāllō (ablative of measure) quō consequerat sequi.

milia: see note on l. 394.

423. Chapter 23. Postridiē: though an adverb, this word retains enough of its original force (ablative of time) to be used with a genitive.

424. cum . . oportēret: really when, but with subjunctive because it gives this as a thought of Caesar’s. Translate until, etc.

mētīri: see note on l. 291.
425. Bibracte: "Beavertown," to-day Beuvray. Note the ablative

t-, though an i-stem. For use of preposition see 78, a.

longē: see note on I. 25.

Page 58. 426. milibus: see note on 1. 281.

rei frumentăriāe: dative of indirect object with prōspiciendum (sibi
cē sē).

428. Bibracte: see 75, 1.

429. decurliōnis: the cavalry was divided into decuriae, correspond-
ing to the centuriae of the infantry. The legion originally had a
valry complement of ten per cent.


car: see note on 1. 419.

431. existimārent, cōnferent (l. 434): subjunctive, because the
reason is not a fact, but a guess of Caesar's.

432. superiōribus, etc.: ablative absolute, concessive.

commississent: subjunctive, because this is assumed to be the belief
of the Helvetians; so-called implied indirect discourse.

433. rē frumentāriā: ablative of separation.

interclūdī posse: supply Rōmānōs.

434. conversō: turned around completely. Notice the force of con-
435. a novissimō aminē: ablative of point of view (80); in the rear.

438. Chapter 24. mediō: half way up the hill. See 105.

439. triplicem: see Introduction, 41.

Veterānārum: this was Caesar's regular habit. The untried recruits
were kept from panic by being employed in sappers' work. The four
legions were VII-X, the others XI, XII.

442. complēret: result.

impedimenta sārcināsque: the baggage train and the burdens of the
individual soldiers. See Introduction, 27, 28.

443. ab īis: the two legions.

444. cōnsītiterate: from cōnsīsto.

446. aciē: ablative of manner.
448. successērunt: notice carefully the meaning of the compounds of cēdere, which originally meant go.


omnium: the staff officers.

450. equis: he wanted to show his soldiers that he and his officers were willing to share the common fate. This was Caesar’s first pitched battle, and the confidence of his troops would largely depend on his behavior.

ut . . . tolleret: purpose.

451. cohortātus: the address of encouragement was regularly given before commencing battle.

ē locō: with missīs. The elevation increased the effect of the throw.

453. gladiis: ablative of means.


ad pugnam: purpose.

455. quod . . . poterant (l. 458): substantive clause of cause, subject of erat impedimentō. The phrase poterant pugnāre finds its explanation in the circumstantial cum clause, cum . . . inflexisset, which in its turn is explained by the ablatives absolute.

plūribus = complūribus: the iron part of the pilum was very long. See Introduction, 26.

456. inflexisset: only the point of the pilum was steel, the shank being soft iron.

Page 59. 457. sinistrā: ablative absolute, causal.

458. multi ut = ut multī: result clause, praepoptērent.

iactātō: wrenched, ablative absolute, circumstantial.

459. manū: ablative of separation.

nūdō: unprotected. Either ablative of manner, or ablative absolute denoting manner.

460. pedem referre: distinguish the expressions of defeat: pedem referre = put back foot after foot, yield slowly, with face to the enemy; sē recipere = retreat in formation; terga vertere = turn one’s back, flee; fugae sē mandāre = run wild, be in a disorderly rout.

mōns: a hill to the west.

461. spatīō: ablative of measure.

462. Captō, etc.: ablatives absolute denoting circumstance. Notice
the distinction of tense: captō, the Helvetians had reached the hill; succēdentibus, the Romans were following up.

464. milibus: ablative of means.
465. novissimis praeśidīō: see note on l. 454.
466. ex itinere: that is, without forming in battle line.
467. ab latere apertō: the unprotected right side.
468. circumvenire: with coeōrunt, l. 470.
469. conversa signa . . . intulērunt: briefly for signa convertērunt et signa intulērunt. These are the military terms for face about, charge.
470. bipertitō: ablative of manner. They formed two fronts by making the rear line face about toward the Boii.
471. ut . . . resisteret: purpose.
472. victis ac submōtis: participles used as nouns, in dative of indirect object. They emphasize the bravery of the Helvetians who, even after defeat, attacked again.
473. venientēs: i.e. Bōiōs.
475. pugnātum est: an impersonal passive is used in Latin to express the doer of an action by an indefinite subject, like one, you, people, they. Translate by the active voice with such a subject.
476. alteri . . . alteri: for translation see 113. The words here refer to the two parts of the Helvetian army.
477. proelīō: ablative of time during which, where we would use an expression of extent. See below, l. 493.
478. cum . . . sit: concessive.
ab hōrā: both night and day were divided into twelve hours, from sunset to sunrise and from dawn to sunset. Thus the hours would vary in length according to the season. For convenience's sake, however, we reckon from 6 to 6. The seventh hour began at noon. Late in June, therefore, in the latitude of northern France, the battle lasted till about 9 P.M.
479. aversum: turned away, i.e. the back of an enemy.
480. multam noctem: see note on multō diē, l. 417.
481. ex locā: from the top of the carts.
482. venientēs: circumstantial, while coming up.
Coniciēbant: contrast this form and the following imperfects with obzēcerant.
483. raedās: a Gallic word, "traveler." And so matarās, "thrower," a kind of tomahawk; trāgulās, "rope spear," a javelin with a thong
for recovery fastened to it. The phrase *inter...raedásque* belongs to *nōnnūlt.*

*subiciēbant*: notice force of *sub-, from below.*

Page 60. 492. *ē fillis*: see 55, *a.*

*captus est*: agreeing with the nearer of the two subjects (114, 2).

493. *CXXX*: 368,000 people started (Ch. 29) and about 66,000 had perished in the battle of the Arar (Ch. 12). This would make the number lost about 175,000. It is likely, however, that many thousands, especially of the noncombatants, had succumbed to the hardships of the last two months.

*tōtā nocte*: ablative of time, where we should expect the accusative of extent (97, 1).

494. *partem*: accusative of extent. Evidently it refers only to the first night.


*quārtō*: that is, on the third day, since the Romans counted both the starting point and the day of arrival.

496. *propter, etc.*: the two prepositional phrases modify *morātī.*


*nē...iuvārent*: an original prohibition (*nē iūveritis*), quoted from the letters.

499. *nēve*: a negative purpose clause is regularly continued with *nēve* instead of *et nē.*

*iūvissent*: subjunctive of indirect discourse for original future perfect indicative.

500. *locō*: the phrase is taken from the use of the *abacus,* on which the Romans did their calculating. It is still used by Chinamen and as a child’s toy. *Consider them of the same line = treat them like.*

*Helvētiōs*: supply *habēret.*

*intermissō*: compare the meaning here with that of the same word in l. 495.

503. Chapter 27. *Quī cum = et cum ht*: in translating this sentence it is best to turn all parts of the compound *cum clause* (*to iussis-set*) into independent sentences. Otherwise the sentence *will appear* top-heavy, the main clause being the one verb *pāruērunt.*

505. *eōs*: i.e. *Helvētiōs.*

*quō = in quō.*

506. *pāruērunt*: distinguish carefully from *parāre.*
507. pervénit: for tense see 126.
508. perfúgissent: subjunctive, because quoted as part of Caesar’s
demand.
509. circiter: with milia sex.
510. perterritī: so-called “construction according to sense,” since
milia hominum = hominēs.
nē . . . afficerentur: clause depending on timōre perterritī which
is equivalent to timentēs (146).
511. suppliciō, etc.: supplicium means capital punishment, and
hence with afficiō the meaning is put to death.
513. existimārent: subjunctive, because the reason is given as a
guess of the author (130).
Primā nocte: see 105.
516. Chapter 28. Quod ubi = id autem ubi.
quōrum: the antecedent, hīs (l. 517), should be translated before
quōrum.
517. uti . . . reducērent: object clause after imperāvit.
sībi: i.e. Caesarī; dative of reference.
518. vellent: subjunctive for original future indicative.
reductōs: used as noun.
in . . . habuit = in . . . locō: see note on l. 500. It is a veiled
allusion (euphemism) to the fact that he massacred them.
Page 61. 522. frūgibus āmissīq: see l. 84, etc.
quō: ablative of means.
523. tolerārent; relative clauses with negative antecedents take the
subjunctive (125, a).
cōpiam facerent: make a supply = furnish.
524. ipsōs: i.e. Helvētiōs, contrasted with Allobrogibus.
quōs: agrees with the nearer antecedent.
restituere: contrast this construction with the ut clause after im-
perāvit.
526. nē . . . essent (l. 529): a purpose clause, but probably caused
by the idea of fear, understood.
529. Gallīae: see 70.
 Bölōs: direct object of concessit. This verb also has the clause ut
collocārent (purpose) as object, and petentibus Aedutis as indirect
object. Translate, however, as if Bölōs were the object of collocārent.
erant cogniti: indicative, because it is Caesar's reason. The subject is Bōt, understood.

atque: expressions of identity and equality are regularly connected by atque. Translate as.

Chapter 29. tabulae: the Romans wrote on wooden tablets covered with a thin layer of wax into which the letters were scratched with a metal pencil (stilus).

Graecis: the Greek alphabet, which they had taken over from Massilia.

relātae: supply sunt.

ratiō: account.

exīset . . . possent: subjunctive, because this was part of the contents of the tablets.

capitum: cp. the use of souls in our language.

Page 62. fuērunt: agreeing with milia, not with the subject summa.

C et X: 130,000 survived the battle (Ch. 26), so that besides the 6000 people of the Verbigenus canton, another 14,000 must have perished before they had finally settled again. The calm with which Caesar speaks of the terrible havoc among this brave people shows the innate cruelty of the man which, in spite of many contrary instances, broke out again and again during the Gallic War.

Chapters 30-54.—The Campaign against Ariovistus

The danger to the Province from the Helvetian emigration was now past. But another and greater danger was looming up. Fifty years before Caesar's governorship two German tribes, the Cimbers and the Teutons, had suddenly emerged from the dense forests across the Rhine. In a few years they had traversed Gaul and part of Spain, had annihilated several Roman armies in Gaul, and were threatening Italy. Only the skill, energy, and daring of the great general Marius, Caesar's uncle by marriage, had destroyed, first the Cimbers at Aquae Sextiae in the Province, and then the Teutons at Vercellae in Italy. But the fear of a repetition of this bold attack was ever present in the Roman mind. A few years before Caesar's arrival in Gaul, a German leader, Ariovistus, had, by invitation of a Gallic tribe, crossed the Rhine to aid one of the ever-warring Gallic factions. Instead of returning to his native country, he had settled in Gaul, had forcibly taken one third of
the Arverian soil, and was now preparing to settle another horde of his Germans on the second third. All this had happened in free Gaul, beyond the limits of Caesar’s province. But wise statesmen could not close their eyes to the danger of Germans seizing a country uncomfortably near the Roman province. Caesar’s victory over the Helvetians had enhanced his prestige among the Gauls. Their chiefs turned to the Roman commander for aid against the German raider. And Caesar, though Ariovistus was officially, through Caesar’s own assistance, on terms of alliance with Rome, welcomed the opportunity to strike a blow, not only for reasons of foreign policy, but also in order to establish himself in the eyes of the Roman populace as the true and legitimate successor of his great uncle.

545. CHAPTER 30. Galliae: in the narrower sense of l. 3.
546. gratulatum: see 170, a.
547. Intellegere: indirect discourse, depending on the idea of saying in gratulatum.
548. poenäs ... repetisset: see note on l. 216 and Vocabulary.
549. ex usū: ablative of accordance, to the advantage.
550. accidisse: depends on intellegere, l. 547.
551. consiliō: ablative of cause, explained by the appositive ut clause of purpose, ut (l. 552) ... habērent (l. 555).
552. florēntissimīs rēbus: ablative absolute of circumstance with oncessive force; in spite of, etc.
553. domiciliō: dative of service.
554. in consiliō: supply locūrum.
555. iūdicāssent: distinguish from the use of the same tense in relīquissent. Iūdicāssent represents an original future perfect indicative, relīquissent an original perfect indicative.
556. uti ... licēret: purpose clause, object of petiērunt. For translation see note on l. 122. Licēret is modified by sibi.
557. habēre: indirect discourse, because petiērunt implies speaking.
558. consēnsiō: ablative of accordance, but translate after obtaining.
559. conciliō: see note on domiciliō, l. 553.
560. nē quis ēnūntiāret: object of sānxērunt, representing an original prohibition. Literally, made holy by oath that nobody should; freely, bound each other by oath not to make known (their meeting).

561. mandātum esset: see note on ut . . . praeceptum, l. 413.

562. CHAPTER 31. idem = eidem.


564. uti . . . licēret: see note on l. 556.

565. Caesari: see 66, a. Translate by a genitive.

566. Nōn minus, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying contained in the suppliant attitude.

id: cognate accusative with contendere and labōrāre (72). Insert for.

567. nē . . . ēnūntiārentur, uti . . . impetrārent: purpose clauses, appositive to id.

568. ēnūntiātum esset: for original future perfect. Supply sē dixisse as subject.

Page 63. 570. Galliae: in the narrow sense. The case is possessive; translate in.

571. hārum: partitive genitive with alterius, which is objective genitive with prīncipātum, the object of tenēre.

573. contenderent: the Romans used tenses of continuing action (present, imperfect) to denote that something begun in the past still continues. Translate by pluperfect, and cum by after.

574. mercēde: ablative of means; translate by for.

575. Hōrum: i.e. Germānōrum.

577. trāductōs: supply esse.

578. millium: genitive of measure (57, a).

579. clientēs: free states, but under the suzerainty of the larger state.

580. semel atque iterum: not twice, but like our once and again—repeatedly.
580. pulsōs: participle, explaining calamitātem; by a defeat. With Aeduōs, etc., it forms the subject of accēpisse and āmīsisse.

582. proelīus: ablative of means with frāctōs, which is a participle showing the reason for coāctōs esse, l. 584.

frāctōs: modifying eōs understood, subject of coāctōs esse and antecedent of qui.

583. virtūte: ablative of means with potuissent, or of specification.

hospitīō: this was an official relation, corresponding to our treaties of amity. Translate hospitīō and amicitia together: by close relations of friendship.

584. ante: adverb.

observēs: appositive to nōbilissimōs. Translate by as.

586. sēsē . . . essent (l. 588): indirect discourse depending upon iūre iūrāndō . . . obstringere = promise.

587. recūsātūrōs quōminus . . . essent: after verbs of refusing, object clauses introduced by quōminus or nē are used. Translate by an infinitive: to be.

588. illōrum: i.e. Sēquanōrum.

589. Ģūnum: with esse, of which sē is subject. Notice the emphatic position.

590. potuerit: irregular primary sequence instead of the pluperfect, caused by the present idea in these words.

ut . . . daret: purpose clause after addūcī, in secondary sequence after the perfect subjunctive potuerit.

591. Rōmam: see 75, 1.

592. postulātum: see 170, a.

ādīus: adjective used as a noun and referring to the subject of ġerērit.

593. peius: adjective used as noun, a worse fate.

vīctōribus: noun used as an adjective.

598. mēnsibus: ablative of degree of difference with the (comparative) adverb ante.

600. locus ac sēdēs: hendiadys, room for homesteads.

Futūrum esse, etc.: for this circumlocution see note on l. 381.

601. annōs: ablative of time within which.

Page 64. 602. cōnferendum, comparandum (l. 604): was to be =

603. Gallicum: supply agrum. To bring out the proper meaning in English invert the sentence, and translate as if it were Ger-
māndrūm agrum cum Gallicō, and Germānōrum consuetūdinem cum hāc.

604. victūs: observe carefully the -i, and distinguish from victus (vinco).

605. ut semel = ut primum.

vicērit: notice the irregular sequence which is maintained to the end of the chapter.

606. quod proelium: for position see note on légatiōnis, l. 119.

Admagetobrigae: “Admagetos’ Castle,” of unknown location.

superbē et crudēliter imperāre: gave haughty and cruel orders. It is often advisable to turn a Latin verb into a whole phrase and translate its modifiers accordingly.

607. obsidēs: appositive with liberōs.

nōbilissimi cuiusque: see 112, 6.

608. exempla . . . édere: put forth examples and tormentēs = practiced all kinds of torments.

609. qua: from quis or quō, indefinite. Notice quantity, and distinguish from quā.

ad: in correspondence with, according to.

610. Hominem: contemptuous, the fellow.

611. quid: with auxilt, l. 612. Translate freely, unless some aid might be had from.

612. Gallis: see 67.

idēm: explained by ut . . . ēmigrent, etc.

616. sint: for original erunt.

dubitāre: supply sē, i.e. Diviiciācum, as subject.

617. supplicium sūmat: supplicium sūmere dē, take punishment from = inflict punishment upon. Compare pœnās repetere.

618. Caesarem: subject of posse (ll. 620, 621).

auctōritāte, etc.: ablatives of means.

620. nē . . . trādūcātur: negative purpose clause after a verb of hindering.

Rhēnum: for case see 73, a, 2.

621. ab . . . iniūriā: see note on l. 190.

625. Chapter 32. Animadvertit: the position of the verb makes it emphatic.

ūnōs: adjective used as a noun and appositive to Sēquanōs = alone.

626. tristēs: translate as if an adverb.
628. respondère: what shows that this is not an infinitive of indirect discourse? See note on flāgitāre, l. 283.
629. saepius: repeatedly.
630. neque ulla = et nulla.
631. hoc: ablative of degree of difference or of cause, explained by the quod clause, l. 633.
633. sōli: used as noun and appositive to the subject of audère and horère.
634. absertis: emphatic and with concessive force; though absent.
Page 65. 635. adesse: see 142.
636. tamen: at least.
638. quae: dative of agent with perferendi, l. 639.
qui - essent (l. 638): these relative clauses have causal force (133).
Translate since they, since their.
638. essent perferendi: with propter quod, l. 635.
640. Chapter 33. verbi: (connected) words, a speech.
641. sibi, curae: datives of reference and service, respectively.
Translate the phrase: he would look after this matter.
642. beneficior suō: the title rex atque amicus populī Rōmānī had been given to Ariovistus during Caesar's consulship.
643. factūrum: future indicative in indirect discourse after spem habēre = sperāre (157, 1).
645. hortābantur: here followed by an indirect question (quārē putāre) instead of the usual purpose clause. Translate quārē, etc., to think.
646. in prīmis: supply rēbus. This is an adverbial phrase; translate chiefly.
quod... vidēbat (l. 648), intellegēbat (l. 650): explains the words multārēs.
frātēs, etc.: another of those honorable titles bestowed by the Senate on foreign tribes as an outward mark of an alliance. For case see 76.
647. numerō: ablative of specification; omit in translation.
648. vidēbat: notice the peculiar order which emphasizes vidēbat. Translate he saw with his own eyes.
649. eōrumque: i.e. Aeduōrum.
in tantō imperiō = cum imperium tantum esset: translate in view of the greatness of the empire.

turpissimum: adjective used as noun, a great disgrace. For degree see 106, 2.

652. Germānōs cōnsuēscere ... multitudinem venire (l. 653): infinitives, subjects of periculōsum (esse), the object of vidēbat. Periculōsum is singular because the two infinitives form one idea. Translate for the Germans, etc.

654. sibi: dative, indirect object of temperātūrōs, referring to hominēs. Translate would refrain, etc.

655. quīn: sibi temperāre = abstīnēre, a verb of hindering. Negative verbs of hindering are followed by quīn (147).

cum ... occupāvissent: a temporal clause originally indicative.

656. Cimbrī, etc.: this occurred 107–101 B.C.

fēcissent: the subjunctive is due to indirect discourse. Translate as ... had done. In translating the sentence Paulātim ... contendērunt (ll. 651–657), simplify by using the English verbal noun in -ing (gerund): he thought that after seizing, as ... had done, they would not refrain from enigrating, etc.

658. praeeritum: always stamps the cum as causal.

Rhodanus: emphatic position; only the Rhone.

659. quibus rēbus: indirect object with occurrendum. The dative of agent (sibi) is omitted because Caesar wishes to make the thought indefinite. Translate and against these events protective measures must be taken.

mātūrāmē: notice the irregular form.

660. sibi ... sūmpserat: had taken for himself = acquired.

661. ut ... vidērētur: result clause. Any so or such expression before an ut clause points to a result.

ferendus nōn: unbearable.

662. Chapter 34. placuit: impersonal, with dative. The clause ut ... mitteret is the subject. Translate as if cōnstituit.

663. qui ... postulārent: relative clause of purpose with mitteret. The clause utī ... dēligēret in its turn is object of postulārent.

medium utrīusque: between them.

Page 66. 664. Velle, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying in postulārent and giving the reason for the demand.

rē pūblicā: not state but a public matter = matters of state.
665. summis ... rébus: the greatest affairs of both = topics of the greatest importance to both.

666. Sī ... fuisse: condition contrary to fact in indirect discourse (I 57, 2). The original form was sī ... mihi ... esset, ego ... vé-nissem.

opus esset: an impersonal phrase, there was need. The person feeling the need is put in the dative, the thing needed is either the subject of phrase or put in the ablative (87). Translate freely, if he wanted anything of Caesar.

667. sī quid ille sē velit: sē is direct object, quid is cognate accusative with velit (72). The irregular present subjunctive is used to distinguish this condition (originally vult) from the contrary to fact condition esset. Translate if he should want anything from him.

670. exercitum: object of contrahere.

672. mirum vidēri: infinitive in indirect discourse with the question quid ... esset as subject.

suā: emphatic position, his own part of.

673. Caesari: possessive dative with esset (68).

negōtīi: partitive genitive with quid.

675. Chapter 35. responsūs: participle used as noun, ablative absolute with relātis.

676. mandātis: notice the change of relations indicated by this word. Caesar was now sending an ultimatum.

Quoniam ... esse (l. 681): indirect discourse depending upon the idea of saying in mandātis. Study carefully the structure of this sentence before translating. Its skeleton is: quoniam ... referret, ut ...

praedēret, haec esse.

677. suō populique Rōmānī: see note on suō, l. 352.

affectus: after being treated, referring to Arivivus.

cum ... appellātus esset: gives the reason for beneficiō. Translate by having been called.

678. suō: i.e. Caesaris. See Introduction to Ch. 30, et seq., p. 138.

hanc ... grātiam: explained by the appositive clauses ut ... putāret (result). Distinguish grātiam referre = to bring back thanks, show gratitude; grātiam habēre = to have thanks, feel grateful; grātiās re = to plead thanks, express gratitude (by words).

680. invitātus: after being asked. The infinitive venire depends on gravārētur.

commūnī ré: matters of common interest.
681. sibi: dative of agent. In translating, make sibi the subject of an active expression.

haec esse: the clause quae . . . postularet is subject of this infinitive. The haec is explained by primum . . . inferret (ll. 682–687).
quae . . . postularet: simplify by turning into a noun.

682. nē . . . trāduceret, redderet, permitteret, nēve . . . lacesseret, nēve . . . inferret (l. 687): prohibitions and commands reported in indirect discourse.

683. amplius: in the future.

685. voluntāte . . . licēret: see note on l. 122.

686. illīs: i.e. Aeduis.
nēve: continuing the nē of l. 682. See note on l. 499.

687. fācisset: for the future perfect.
sibi, eō (l. 689): i.e. Caesarī, Ariovistō. Freely, there would be . . . between him on the one hand and Ariovistus on the other hand.

688. impetrāret: this represents the future indicative; supply Caesar as subject.

sē: subject of neqūctūrum, l. 694.

M. Messālā: 61 B.C.

690. cēnsuisset: the regular word for a vote of the Senate.

691. quicumque . . . obtinēret: simplify, any governor of. . . Ob- tinēret represents a future indicative.

quod: so far as.

commodō: ablative, with due regard for. What is the case of ret publicae?

693. défenderet: with utī (l. 690), representing imperative. Trans- late by should.

sē: repeats the sē from l. 689, on account of the length of the sen-
tence.

695. Chapter 36. Iūs esse: infinitive predicate of the clause utī . . . imperārent; use it as grammatical subject.

696. qui vīcisissent, quōs vīcisissent: simplify, the conquerors, the con- quered.

quem ad modum: according to which manner, i.e. as (relative).

Page 67. 697. ad: according to.

698. alterius: used here instead of altīus.

699. cōnsūesse: for force of tense see note on l. 254.

praescriberet: for present indicative.
700. quem ad modum: here interrogative (how), introducing an indirect question, object of praescriberet.
701. sibi: i.e. Ariovistō. Translate by a possessive.
702. armis: ablative of means, translate by in.
703. Magnam: emphatic position; great was the wrong which, etc.
704. suō, sibi: i.e. Caesaris, Ariovistō. The Latin dative of reference is often equivalent to the English possessive. The relative clause is causal.
705. nōn: emphatic position, certainly not.
706. neque: nor, on the other hand.
707. manērent: for future indicative. Literally, if they should remain in that which had been agreed upon (convēnit, impersonal verb = agreed, cp. conventional); freely, if they should keep the agreement.
708. nōn fēcissent: for future perfect indicative. The nōn belongs to the verb alone, which makes the meaning omit.
709. Quod: as to the fact that.
710. sibi, sē (l. 710): i.e. Ariovistō, Caesarem.
711. sēcum: i.e. cum Ariovistō, suā referring to nēminem.
712. Congreserētur: for imperative.
713. exercitātissimi: force of superlative?
714. CHAPTER 37. Haec: with mandāta, but in emphatic position.
715. For the force of mandāta see note on l. 676.
716. et: the coordinating conjunction is meant to bring home forcefully the coincidence in time with the preceding clause. Translate as.
717. questum: supine of purpose with veniēbant (170, a).
717. nūper: see l. 598.
718. essent, populārentur: subjunctives of the indirect discourse implied in questum.
719. Arioistā: possessive genitive with pācem, but translate by from.
720. Trēveri autem: supply questum veniēbant. Notice the two constructions possible with words of feeling; (a) a quod clause (l. 717); (b) indirect discourse (l. 720).
rippling: the easterly (right) bank. The plural, because several places on the bank are meant.
721. cōnārentur: progressive.
722. sibi: dative of agent with mātūrandum (esse).
ne ... posset: this purpose clause is influenced by the idea of fear suggested by vehementer commōitus. What was the reason for this feeling? See Introduction to this campaign, p. 138.
724. si ... coniūnxisset: for future perfect indicative.
725. resistī: supply ītis. The passive infinitive is impersonal. Translate lest resistance would be impossible.
726. quam ... potuit: see 106, 2.
727. Arioistum: Caesar was in the territory of the Lingones (Ch. 27) while the German king seems to have been at the confluence (Coblens) of the Moselle and the Rhine, expecting the Suebian reënforcements. The direction of the Roman march, therefore, was almost due north.
728. Chapter 38. trīdīi: genitive of measure (57, a).
viam: cognate accusative.
quod: a pronoun subject followed by a predicate noun is made to agree with this noun rather than with its antecedent.
731. Id: the taking of Vesontio. The nē clause is subject of prae-cavendum.
733. ūsusī: dative of service, translate useful.
735. idemque: supply oppidum.
nātūrā locī: for the following description compare the sketch.
736. dūcendum: for meaning cp. l. 291.
737. facultātem: distinguish its meaning from that of facultās, l. 735.
ut: as if.
740. spatium: carefully read the sentence to determine the case of this word.
741. pedum: genitive of measure. For the use of cases after amplius see 84, 2.
742. intermittit: literally, the river leaves off; freely, where the river affords no protection.
743. rādicēs: object of contingat, of which ripae is subject.
744. Hunc: object of efficit, which has arcem as predicate accusative (73, c).
746. nocturnis diurnisque: adjectives instead of the adverbal expressions by night and by day.
748. Chapter 39. Dum... morātur: for tense and meaning see 127, a.
749. ex: source, but translate in consequence of.
750. qui... praedicābant: upon this the words ingenti... esse depend, while saepe... potuisse depend upon dicēbant (l. 754).
751. magnitūdine: ablative of description, predicate with esse.
752. saepe, etc.: before attempting to translate the parenthesis, be sure to master the rest of the sentence.
753. congressōs: here of a peaceful meeting.
754. vultum: facial expression.
755. nōn mediocrīter: not a little = very much. An example of lītotes, the stating of a thing by denying its opposite.
757. tribūnīs... reliquisque: young Romans of good families used to accompany the general in the field, partly to acquire some knowledge of warfare, partly also for the sake of gaining money through lawful and unlawful methods, or simply for the sake of traveling. Caesar veils the truth of the situation by amicītiae causā, for the appointments were largely due to political influence.
758. nōn magnum = minimum.
Page 69. 759. ūsum: experience.
alīus alīā: see 113.
quam... diceret: literally, which he said to be necessary for himself
for departing; freely, which, as he said, made it imperative for him to depart.

761. ut . . . licēret: see note on l. 122.
762. ut . . . vitārent: is this result or purpose?
763. vultum fingere: mold their face = control their features.
765. tenēre = retinēre.
770. tōtīs castrīs: with tōtus, īnus, cūncūs the preposition is commonly omitted (98, 2).
771. obsignābantur: the seal was necessary to make the instrument valid in law. They made their wills, and thereby showed they were sure they would be slaughtered.

772. vōcibus ac timōre: hendiadys, expressions of fear.
776. quīque . . . praeerant: the praefecti ēquitum, experienced soldiers, not to be confused with the praefecti of l. 757.
778. Qui . . . ex his = (It) ex hīs (instead of partitive genitive) quīt. It (understood) is subject of dīcēbant, l. 783.

779. nōn: with verēri.
780. angustiās, magnitudinēm: with timēre, l. 783.
782. rem frumentāriam: by anticipation it has become the object of timēre. Translāte as if subject of posset.

ut: with timēre (146).

784. castra movērī ac sīgna ferī: the two steps in continuing a march; strike tents and pack up, pull up the standards and carry them. Compare Introduction, 49.

fore: futūros esse.

dictō: dative with audientēs = oboedientēs, obedient.
785. neque: and . . . not.

786. Chapter 40. cōnsiliō: meaning in this passage?

787. omniumque ērīnum: for the ranking of the centurions see Introduction, 30. The council of war regularly consisted of the imperātor, the lēgāti and trībūni, and occasionally the centurionēs prīmōrum ērīnum, i.e. the centurions of the first cohort of each legion. The extraordinary step here shows how serious Caesar judged the situation to be.

788. quod . . . putārent: the subjunctive is due to the idea of saying in incūsāvit.

Page 70. 789. sībī . . . cōgitandum: supply esse. This is the object of putārent, having for its subject the indirect question quam . . . dūcerentur.
790. cōnsule: see Introduction to this campaign, p. 138.
791. cūr . . . iūdicāret: a question reported in indirect discourse is put in the subjunctive. Here the direct form also used the subjunctive.
792. temerē: with diessūrum,
officiō: allegiance.
Sibi . . . persuādēri: for construction see 64, a. Distinguish persuādeō = persuade, make plausible, with ut clause, from persuādeō = convince, with accusative and infinitive.
793. cognitis . . . perspectā: ablative absolute, equivalent to temporal clauses.
796. intulisset: for the future perfect.
verērentur: see note on l. 791.
797. suā, ipsius: i.e. militum, Caesaris.
798. periculum: formed from (ex)perior. The word originally meant trial.
Patum . . . memorīā: see Introduction to this campaign, p. 138; also note on l. 656.
799. cum . . . vidēbātur: the subjunctive should have been used. But the indicative emphasizes the fact and thus stimulates the soldiers to do as well.
Cimbris . . . pulsīs: ablative absolute.
801. meritus: supply esse.
vidēbātur: here used as actual passive of videō.
factum: supply esse periculum.
802. quōs: servītī is equivalent to servōrum, hence the plural form of the pronoun.
liquid: to a certain extent.
803. quam: agreeing with the second antecedent alone.
iūdicāri: impersonal passive (115). The indirect question quant-
804. habēret: the tense follows the regular sequence, but the meaning is general. Use present tense in translating.
sē: refers to constantia.
boni: genitive of the whole with quantum.
805. quōs: refers to hōs (l. 806), which should be translated first.
805. inermēs: appositive to quōs, just as armālōs ac vīctōrēs is appositive to hōs.
807. quibuscum: the relative pronoun is to be repeated, in the accusative, before nōn, with et supplied.
809. superārint, potuerint: irregular sequence.
quī: i.e. Helvētī.
810. exercitūi: dative with an adjective (70).
proelium: of Admagetobriga, l. 606.
811. quaererent: for the future.
reperīre: has for its object Arioquistum . . . vīcisse, ll. 812–816.
812. diūturnitāte: ablative of cause with dēfatigātīs, which with Gallīs forms an ablative absolute.
813. cum . . . fēcisset: simplify by translating after keeping, etc.
castrīs, etc.: ablative of means, within, etc.
ac: explanatory; namely.
neque: without.
814. sui: objective genitive with potestātem; a chance at him.
dēspērantēs: with Gallōs, understood, object of adortum. Translate while despairing.
815. adortum: translate by an independent verb.
ratiōne et cōnsiliō: trickery and stratagens.
816. ratiōni: anticipated from hāc (ratiōne), l. 817. Translate for what trickery.
817. ipsum: i.e. Arioquistum.
818. Quī: supply eōs. Literally, those who placed their fear into the difficulty of the grain supply and into the narrowness of the road; freely, those who laid the blame for their fear upon a pretended lack of grain supplies and upon the narrowness of the road.
820. facere: acted.
cum . . . vidērentur: see note on l. 14. Translate in seeming.
821. dē . . . praecribere: to despair of the general’s doing his duty or to dare to dictate his duty to him.
Page 71. 822. sibi esse cūrāe: see note on l. 641.
823. iamque: and furthermore, by now.
824. frūmenta: see Vocabulary.
825. Quod: as to the fact that.
826. dīcantur: translate it was said that they.
nihil: not . . . at all.
scīre: supply sē.
827. quibuscumque: translate by a possessive, whose army.
828. aut: before this word supply his as dative with défuisse and con-

veniit: reference. Translate: those, whose army had been muti-

nus, had either been deserted by good luck for managing poorly or had

been found guilty of avarice by having some misdeed found out.

829. suum: i.e. Caesarius.

innocentiam: uprightness. Notice that the conclusion gives the

facts in the opposite order from the premise; innocentiam corresponds
to avárítiam, félicitátem to fortünam.

831. quod . . . fuisset: object of repraesentátorum; what he had

tended to postpone.

834. utrum . . . an: for this form of question see 151, 1. It is the

object of intellegere.

pudor atque officium: (sense of) shame and duty.

835. praetereá némô: nobody else.

seqüitur: for future indicative. Irregular sequence.

836. sölä: alone.

nón dubitét: absolute; had no doubts.

837. praetórium cohórtém: the body of troops encamped next to the
t of the general (praetórium), hence his bodyguard.

840. CHAPTER 41. mirum in modum = mirum ad modum: cp. quem

ad modum.

conversae: note the force of con-, completely.

842. illáta est: supply militibus. The singular is used because the

two nouns alacrítas and cupidítas form one idea.

princepeque = prímaque. For translation, see note on 1. 216.

843. grátiás égit: see note on 1. 678.

844. fécisset: subjunctive, because it is a quotation.

846. prímórum: i.e. of the first cohorts. See note on 1. 787.

847. uti . . . satisfacerent: purpose, instead of the original imperative.

Sé, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying in

satisfacerent. Neque umquam = et numquam.

848. dubitásse: see note on 1. 836.

summá belli: conduct of the war.

sum: predicate adjective with esse, having iūdícium for its subject.

And so imperátoris, predicate possessive genitive: the judgment was

not theirs, but the general's.

850. itinere: only now when Caesar was certain of the loyalty of
his army does he seem to have taken measures to ascertain a more
comfortable route. Compare this statement with his bold assertion in l. 823.

851. et: because *fidem habēbat = cōnsidēbat.*
ut . . . dūceret: purpose.
millium: genitive of measure.
852. quinquāgintā: for omission of *quam* see 84, 2.
lōcis: ablative of way by which, without preposition.
854. cum . . . intermitteret: causal *cum* clause, to explain how he came so near the enemy in so short a time. Bring this out by inserting *already* before *septimō.*

Page 72. 858. Chapter 42. *Quod . . . existimāret:* indirect discourse, because *lēgātōs . . . mittit* implies speaking.

*Quod:* is this pronoun or conjunction? How do you decide? In translating, turn the clause into a noun phrase: *as to his former request for . . .*

per sē: *as far as he (Ariovistus) was concerned.*
862. cum . . . pollicērētur: causal clause.

petenti: equivalent to a clause.
863. in *spem veniēbat:* *was coming into hope = was commencing to hope.*

865. fore utī: this circumlocution makes up for the missing future participle of *dēsistere.*

866. quintus: what other gender might have been used? Why?

saepe *cum:* for *cum saepe.* Latin likes to group words of similar meaning or etymology together; so here the two expressions or time.

ultrō: here of place. See Vocabulary.
867. nē . . . addūceret: representing original prohibition. For use of *quem* see 112, 2.

869. uterque: notice the number. The English must use the plural.

870. venīret: for original imperative.

aliā ratiōne: ablative of manner, *on other terms.*
871. interpositā causā: ablative of means, *by a reason put in between = by some flimsy pretext.*

872. Gallōrum: he had learned their unreliability in the Helvetian War. See l. 270 and l. 343.

873. commodissimum esse: object of *statuit.* The infinitive has for its subject the infinitive *impōnere,* l. 875. Insert it.
874. equis: ablative absolute with detractis. But equitibus is dative of reference with the same participle.
   eō = in eōs: thereon.
   legiōnāriōs: regular. The legion contained other troops besides the infantry.
876. sī . . . esset: for the future.
   quid opus factō: see note on l. 666. Quid is accusative of respect. Literally, if there was need of a deed in any way; freely, if there should be need for (any) action.
877. nōn irridicēlē: an example of litotes. See 171, 3.
878. ex militibus: for use of preposition see 55, a.
879. pollicitum: supply eum esse.
880. ad equum: the joke is untranslatable. Ad equum rescribere is (1) to enroll among the horse, (2) to enroll (during the census) among the men entitled to serve on horseback, the knights. Bear in mind that the equites were the moneyed class in Rome.
882. Chapter 43. erat: there was.
   tumulus terrēnus: an earth mound, without rocks.
883. castris: here with plural meaning.
     Page 73. 885. dēvexerat: down into the plain.
     passibus: ablative of means, as is intervāllo, l. 887.
887. ex equis: because the voice comes from the direction of the beasts; on horseback. See note on ex vinculis, l. 69.
888. ut . . . addūcerent: object of postulāvit.
     Ænōs: see 24.
889. initiō: ablative of means; translate by in.
891. quod . . . missa; these three clauses are appositive to beneficiā.
892. amplissimē; on a lavish scale. Notice the adverb.
   quam rem, etc.: referring to the quod clauses. The words quam . . . consuēsse form the object of docēbat, l. 893.
893. prō: in payment for.
   consuēsse tribuī: was accustomed to be given = was usually given.
894. illum: subject of consēcūtum, l. 896.
   cum: concessive.
   adītum: i.e. to the senate. Compare our phrase have the entrée.
   iūstam: with both adītum and causam.
895. suā: i.e. Caesāris.
896. Docēbat: the indirect questions quam . . . tenuissent (l. 900) are the object of this verb.
896. quam: how.
897. ipsēs cum: between them and. The whole passage reads, literally, how old and how just reasons for relationship came between for them with the Aeduans. Translate freely, how old and how strong were the reasons for friendship between the Romans and the Aeduans.
898. quae, quotiēns, quamque: it is impossible in English to embody more than one interrogative in a sentence. Translate: what decrees had been passed, how often this had been done, how honorable they were.
899. ut: interrogative.
900. ut . . . vellet (l. 903): result clause, explanatory of hanc cōnsuētūdinem.
901. sui: genitive of suum, used as a noun; their possessions.
902. grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.
903. auctiōrēs: participle used as an adjective, therefore comparable.
904. quod: relative or conjunction? Why?
905. id . . . ēripī: object of patī.
906. iīs: dative of reference with ēripī.
907. posset: for mood see note on l. 791.
908. Postulāvit . . . eadem: he made the same demands.
909. Nē, etc.: cp. l. 682, et seq.
910. posset: for present indicative.
911. Chapter 44. ad: with reference to.
912. paucā, multā (l. 911): cognate accusatives (72). Translate by adverbs. The omission of a connective between the two sentences brings out the contrast all the more sharply. Insert but or while.
913. magnā . . . praemiās: hendiadys; translate hope of rewards.
914. sēdēs, obsidēs (l. 915): objects of (sē) habēre, made emphatic by position.
915. quod: refers to stipendum; such as.
916. consuērint: notice the irregular sequence here and in the following lines.

Page 74. 918. ad . . oppugnandum: purpose.
920. pulsās ac superātās: hendiadys; translate thoroughly routed.
921. parātum: adjective.
922. iniquum esse: recūsāre is the subject. Insert it.
923. dē stipendiō: translate as if direct object of recūsāre.
924. suā: i.e. Gallōrum.
923. *penderint* : from *pendô*.
924. *sibi ornâmentô* : datives of reference and service, respectively
925. *petisse* : supply *eam*.
926. *remittâtur, subtrahantur* : for the future.
927. *recûsâtûrum; renounce, give up*. Compare the construction here with that in l. 922.
928. *Quod* : *as to the fact that*.
929. *sui mûniendi . . . causâ* : see 168, 1. *Sui*, genitive of reflexive pronoun, for the original object (*se*) of *mûniendi*; so *Galliae oppugnandae* for *Galliam oppugnandi* (169, 2).
930. *testimônium esse* : the clause *quod . . . défenderit* is the subject of the infinitive.
931. *bellum* : object of both *intulerit* and *défenderit*; had waged a war not offensive, but defensive.
932. *prius* : adverb. The statement is true only if limited to the immediate past, for the Romans had warred on the Allobroges as early as 121 B.C.
936. *hanc* : the part of Gaul where the armies now are.
937. *illam* : *i.e.* the Province.
938. *ipsâ* concèdi : see 64, a. *À nôbts*, as expression of agency, is to be supplied.
939. *Quod* : *as to the fact that*.
940. *rûrum* : see 58.
942. *bellô* : ablative of time; 62 B.C.
943. *ipsôs* : *i.e.* *Aedûos*.
944. *sécum* : *i.e.* *cum Ariovistô*.
945. *Débère* : *he ought to*, *i.e.* *he must*, *he had reason to*.
946. *simulâtâ . . . amicitâ* : ablative absolute. Translate by independent clause: *C. was pretending friendship, but*. Notice the emphasis laid on *simulâtâ*. 
946. *quem exercitum*: attracted antecedent, equivalent to *exercitum quem.*

sui opprimendi: see note on l. 929.

947. Qui nisi = itaque nisi ille.
décēdat, etc.: for future indicative.

948. prō amicō, prō hoste: compare in hostium locō habēre, l. 518.

949. Quod si: *now, if,* with perfect subjunctive representing future perfect.

nōbilibus, etc.: the office-holding or conservative party in Rome. They were afraid of Caesar as leader of the democracy. Undoubtedly there was a grain of truth in the assertion of Ariovistus, but the details are not known.

Page 75. 950. grātum: a pleasing thing, a favor.

951. compertum habēre: see note on l. 156. *Compertum habēre = scire.*

952. quōrum: refers to nōbilibus.

953. Quod si: *but if.* Dēcessisset represents the future perfect for which the perfect subjunctive had been used in l. 949. Notice how little attention Caesar pays to the so-called "sequence."

liberam: predicate adjective with trādidisset; undisturbed.

954. magnō: by being separated from its noun (*praemiō*) the word becomes emphatic.

956. eius: subjective genitive with labōre and periculō; on Caesar's part.

957. Chapter 45. in eam sententiam: *to this purpose, in this tenor.*

958. quārē . . . posset: indirect question, explanatory of sententiam.

959. ut . . . désereret: object of *patt.*

961. Ariovisti, etc.: predicate possessive genitive. Bellō, etc.: the proofs for the statement Galliam, etc.: 121 B.C.

962. quibus: antecedent *Arvernōs;* indirect object of ignōvisset. The relative clause is in contrast to the infinitive statement. Translate but these.

963. neque . . . neque: supply eōs, eis.

964. si . . . oportēret: for oportet. antiquissimum quoque tempus: literally, each oldest time; freely, the question of priority.

966. iūstissimum: thoroughly justified, not just. iūdicum: sentiment.
967. quam . . . voluisset: causal relative clause (133), since they had wanted it (Gaul).
968. victam: equivalent to a concessive clause.
969. suis: i.e. Galliae.
970. CHAPTER 46. geruntur: why present?
971. tumulum: see 70, a.
972. nē . . . récercet: object of imperavit. Quod is the adjective form of the indefinite, quid the substantive form.
973. legiōnis: either objective genitive with periculō, or subjective genitive with proelium. The latter is preferable.
975. proelium fore: object of vidēbat.
976. committendum . . . ut . . . posset: the ut clause is the subject of committendum (esse). Literally, he thought that it must not be brought about that it could be said; freely, he thought he ought not to allow it to be said.
977. pulsis hostibus: temporal ablatival absolute.
978. élētum est: the indirect questions quā . . . dirēmisset (l. 981) are the subject.
979. Galliā: ablative of separation with interdixisset, of which Romānis is the indirect object.
980. ut: interrogative.
981. Page 76. 983. CHAPTER 47. Bīduō: ablative of degree of difference with the adverb post. The statement conflicts with prīdiē, l. 988, but a further engagement may have occurred in the meantime.
984. Velle, etc.: indirect discourse after the idea of speaking in lēga stōs misit.
985. coeptae, etc.: when a passive infinitive is joined to coeptisse, this verb is itself made passive. Neque = but not.
986. minus: see note on minimē, l. 8.
987. causa: supply esse.
988. oō magis: all the more.
989. quin: negative verbs of hindering are followed by a quin clause. Translate from throwing.

990. Legatum: object of missurum, objecturum. magnē, etc.: emphatic; insert only.

991. Commodissimum: esse understood, with mittere (l. 998) as subject. The infinitive has Valerium and Metium (l. 998) for its objects.

992. Prociillum, Cabiri: for the names see note on l. 362. Notice that the Roman part of the name is borrowed from the man (governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.) who had bestowed the citizenship. This was the regular custom.

995. quae multā: multā is predicate adjective to quā (linguā). Translate by an adverb.

996. consuetūdine: ablative of cause.

997. in eō: in his case.

esset: subjunctive, because this is Caesar’s belief.

998. hospitiō, etc.: enjoyed the hospitality of = was on terms of hospitality with. For this official, not personal, relation see note on l. 583.

999. quae diceret: indirect question, object of cognōscerent and referent. These ut clauses, in turn, are the object of mandāvit.

1002. Quid: in regard to what = why.

venirent: question reported in indirect discourse (155).

an: the second part of a double question is often used by itself, usually to express indignation; (was it for some other purpose) or for.
The underlying idea is surely only for.

1003. Conantēs: object of prohibuīt, and equivalent to a temporal clause.


1006. tradūxit: Caesar has often been blamed for not stopping this maneuver which was intended to, and did for a time, cut his line of communication. But Caesar had not yet tried out his soldiers after their panic and could not risk a decisive engagement. Then, too, the configuration of the territory does not seem to have been favorable for a flank attack, which was rare in ancient warfare. Study the map.

1008. supportārētur: subjunctive by attraction (160).

1011. habuit: see note on l. 156.

ut . . . deeset: purpose clause. The negative nōn instead of nē is used because nōn deeset forms one idea = adeset.
vellet; originally present indicative, but the subjunctive is used because the condition forms an integral part of Caesar's purpose (160). Caesar keenly felt the difficulty of his position, but found his match, it seems, in the cunning and generalship of Ariovistus.

Page 77. 1013. diēbus: ablative of time within which.
castris: see note on l. 813.
equestri: for the lack of a connective and the necessary translation see note on l. 910.
1014. hoc: the following. It is the subject, while genus is predicate.
numerus: ablative of specification.
cōpiā: supply, number.
singuli: supply equitēs; they had chosen, each his own companion.
his: refers to peditēs (l. 1016), and so do eōs (l. 1018) and (l. 1019).
verbēantur: imperfect of habitual action (117, 1); insert used to.
1019. si quid erat dūrius: if anything was too hard = if there wasious trouble.
qu: i.e. eques. Notice the adjective form of the indefinite pro-

1020. graviōre: see 106, 1.
1021. quō: indefinite adverb of place.
1022. hōrum: i.e. peditum.
equōrum: with both iubis and cursum, a case of double de-

1024. CHAPTER 49. eum: i.e. Ariovistum, subject of tenēre.
ne ... prohibērētur: purpose clause with dēlēgit (l. 1027) and vēnit1028).
quō in locō: see note on l. 94.
1027. castris: dative with an adjective (70). This was a bold stroke, the execution of which Caesar took a grave risk, but the success of which turned the tables on his opponent.
1031. Æō: adverb; namely, to the site of the new camp.
expedita: agreeing in form with milia, in sense with hominum. They left their baggage behind, to be ready for fighting. Translate in right order.
1033. mūnītiōne: the work of fortifying, not the fortification.
Nihilō: ablative of degree of difference.

CAESAR — RIESS AND JANES — II
*utrisque*: this word, regularly singular, must be plural here, because *castra* has no singular.

1039. *paulum*: in its original force as accusative of extent.

Page 78. 1045. *pugnātum est*: see note on l. 476.
1046. *multis ... vulneribus*: literally, *many wounds having been inflicted and received as well*; freely, *with great loss on both sides.*
1049. *quod ... esset*: explains *hanc ... causam.*
1050. *ut ... déclārērent*: result clause, explaining *ea cōnsuētūdō.*
1051. *utrum ... necne*: double indirect question, object of *déclārērent*. Notice that double indirect questions must be introduced by *utrum* (151, 1).
*ex ūsū*: see note on l. 549. *Proelium committi* is the subject.
*necne*: the second part of a double question may be abridged (or *not*). Direct questions use *annōn*, indirect *necne* (151, 1).
*eās ita dicere*: indirect discourse, the answer of the captives. The *eās* refers to *mātrēs*, l. 1050.

1052. *Nōn esse*: indirect discourse after *dicere.*
*esse fās*: has *Germanōs superāre* for its subject.
1053. *contendēns*: for the future perfect. Thus a superstition decided the fate of a great war.

1055. Chapter 51. *quod ... est*: object of *reliquit.*
*ālāriōs*: derived from *āla*, wing, probably so called because in the regular Roman battle line they were placed at the wings.

1056. *prō*: *in front of.*
1057. *minus ... valēbat*: see note on *plūrimon valeat*, l. 304.
*prō*: *in proportion to.*

1062. *Harūdēs*, etc.: appositive to *copiās*. Before this Caesar had mentioned only two German tribes, the *Suēbi* and the *Harūdēs*. He now mentions five others, several of which can be identified: *Marcomannē* (the "borderers"), later in modern Bohemia, *Tribōct* in the Alsace, *Vangionēs* in the Palatinate, *Nemetēs* in the same district, *Sedusit* between the Neckar and the Main.

1064. *Eō*: i.e. *in raedās.*
1065. *proficiscerentēs*: with *militēs.*
1066. passis: from pandō.
sē: the women.
1068. Chapter 52. singulis . . . singulōs: one over each.
1069. quaestōrem: he had only one quaestor. See Introduction, 36.
testēs: predicate accusative.

suæ quisque: a reflexive and quisque occurring in the same clause are regularly placed next to each other.
1070. à dextrō cornū: ablative of point of view (80).

eam partem: that is, the left wing of the Germans. Compare l. 1079.
1072. Ita: with ācriter. Similarly in l. 1073 itaque = et ita, with repente and celeriter.

signō datō: this was a trumpet blast.

Page 79. 1074. pila . . . coniciendi: pila is object of coniciendi.

What other construction would have been more usual?

Rēiectis: thrown behind, not back. Turn into a coördinate clause.

1076. impetūs: plural, since the sword charge consisted of a series of duels.

1077. Reperti sunt: emphatic position, to contrast with the threatening attitude of the Germans. Insert yet.

complūres nostri: literally, ours in numbers = a number of our men.

1078. insilirent, revellerent, vulnerārent: so-called characteristic subjunctives. A relative clause after certain antecedents has the subjunctive (125). They jumped on the shield roof which protected the square from above.

1079. Cum: concessive.

ā sinistrō cornū: see note on l. 1070. This time the words refer to the Germans.

1082. adulēscens: to distinguish him from his father, the Triumvir.

1083. quod . . . erat: gives the reason for animadvertissent. The cavalry was not employed during the battle. The quick decision of the young man saved the day for the Romans.

1084. tertiam: this had been kept in reserve.

1086. Chapter 53. atque: and finally.

omnēs: emphatic; not only the left wing but the whole army.

1087. terga vertērunt: see note on l. 460.

prius: join with quam.

1088. quinque: the distance is doubtful. From the battlefield to the Rhine it would be about 15 miles. Perhaps Caesar mistook the M, a tributary of the Rhine, for the great river.
1089. viribus: ablative. Confindō takes the ablative of the thing and the dative of the person.

1094. āna: one would expect altera, to correspond with altera in l. 1095.


düxera: supply in mātrinōnium. Contrast with the meaning of düxerat in l. 1094.

1098. cum . . . traherētur: circumstantial; while being dragged.

trīnis: nouns which have no singular regularly take distributives instead of cardinals.

1099. equitātū: see 85.

1100. Quae . . . rēs: a humane trait, showing one of Caesar's most lovable qualities, his warm regard for personal friends. The feeling, here, was doubtlessly enhanced by political considerations. He could ill afford to have it said that he had sacrificed the life of a noble Gaul when he had been unwilling to risk one of the Roman officers (l. 990).

1102. hominēm . . . restitūtum: object of vidēbat, l. 1104.

honestissimum: not honest.

familīarem: emphasizes the personal relation, as hospitem emphasizes the official relation.

1104. neque . . . quicquam = et nihil.

1106. cōnsultum: supply esse; impersonal passive.

utrum . . . an: double indirect question, subject of cōnsultum.

Page 80. 1107. ignī: see note on l. 70.

1110. Chapter 54. quī . . . vēnerant: cp. l. 720.

1112. quī: supply īt as antecedent.

Rhēnum: see 70, a.

1114. maximīs: the wars were great, both on account of the large number of the enemy, and on account of their bravery. Also they were of great political importance, in so far as they secured Gaul and Italy for a long time to come against any attempts of invasion.

mātiarius: about September 25.

1115. hiberna: supply castra.

1117. conventūs: the governor was not only military commander, but also chief justice. He traveled circuit for this purpose.
BOOK II

CHAPTERS 1-35. — THE WAR AGAINST THE BELGians

citeriore Galliæ: between the Alps and the Apennines = northern Italy. This and Illyricum, on the east of the Adriatic, formed part of Caesar’s province.
suprà: see Bk. I, l. 1117.
2. dēmōnstrāvimus: the editorial “we.” Caesar never uses the first person singular in speaking of himself, but either the third singular, when he appears as commander, or the first plural, when he speaks as the author.
crēbrī: not many, but repeated.
afferēbantur: imperfect, to show repeated action.
3. litterāisque: ablative of means (85) with certior fiēbat. Notice that litterae means a letter and also letters.

Labiēni: the most trusted and most capable of his lēgātē or assistants, who had been in command of the troops while in winter quarters in Transalpine Gaul.
certior fiēbat: the subject is Caesar, with which certior agrees.
omnēs, etc.: construction of indirect discourse (153) after the idea of telling in certior fiēbat.

Belgās: between the Seine and the North Sea. See Bk. I, l. 5.
4. quam: the real antecedent is Belgās; but when a pronoun subject is followed by a noun predicate, it agrees with the gender and number of this noun.
dixerāmus: see Bk. I, l. 1.
5. consīrāre: the Belgians were a free nation and could not properly be said to conspire. But this is the Roman point of view, that Rome is the destined mistress of the world.
inter sē dare: inter with the reflexive pronoun is regularly used to express the idea of one another. Give to one another = exchange.

6. Conīrāndi: gerund (169, a) in objective genitive (54) construction, dependent on causās. Objective and subjective genitives may be tested by changing the governing noun into an active verb of which the genitive will become either subject or object.
hās: predicate of esse; causās is the subject.
6. *verērentur*: subjunctive, because dependent clauses in indirect discourse are always in this mood (156).

7. *nē . . . adducērētur*: verbs of fearing are used with a subjunctive clause, introduced by *nē* affirmative and *ut* negative (146).

   *omnī . . . Galliā*: ablative absolute expressing circumstance. An ablative absolute should be translated by either a clause or a phrase, rarely by the English nominative absolute.

   *pācātā*: a mild expression, veiling the fact of conquest.

   *Galliā*: the central part of Transalpine Gaul, between the Rhone and the Seine. See Bk. I, l. 4.

   *ēōs*: the Belgians; *śē* would have been ambiguous.

   *nōster*: i.e. *Rōmānus*.

8. *nōnnūlīs*: *not none = some* (litotes, 171, 3).

9. *partim qui . . . partim qui* (l. 11): the antecedent of these relatives (*ab ītā, to be supplied*) is appositive to *Gallīs*.

   *ut . . . nōluerant*: *ut* with the indicative means (1) as, (2) *when*, (3) *because*. This verb and those following are in the indicative because they are an explanation added by Caesar and not part of the letters.

   *Germānōs*: subject of *versāri*, which is complementary (object) infinitive with *nōluerant*. The Germans, under Ariovistus, had gained control of a large part of free Gaul before Caesar’s appearance. They had just been driven out by the Romans. See Bk. I, Ch. 30–53.

10. *atque*: introducing a stronger fact; *and even*.

11. *molestē ferēbant*: see Vocabulary under *ferō*.

12. *mōbilitātē*: ablative of cause (83) with *studēbant*, of which *novōs imperītis* is the indirect object (64). *Were eager for new governments = desired a change of government.*

   *ab nōnnūlīs*: supply *sollicitārentur*.

13. *ā potentioribus*: ablative of agent with *occupābantur*, l. 15.

   *atque iīs*: supply *ab*.

14. *condūcēndōs*: *hire*. Not a purpose construction, but the gerundive instead of an original gerund with a direct object (168).

15. *rēgna*: plural because each man wanted his own little rule.

   *occupābantur*: *seize*, not *occupy*. Avoid the translation of a Latin word by its English derivative, which generally has a different meaning.

   *qui*: referring to *potentiōribus; and these*.

   *rem*: namely, royal power. Always adapt the translation of *rēs* to the context.
imperīō nostrō: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Translate by under.

17. Chapter 2. commōtus: notice the force of com-, completely, deeply.

duās: he had already six (numbered VII–XII); these were XIII and XIV.

18. initā aestāte: ablative absolute expressing time when. Literally, summer having been entered upon = early in the summer.

19. in ... Galliam: connect with quī dēdūceret, a relative clause of purpose (123, 4) with Pedium as antecedent.

20. cum primum: ordinarily used with the indicative. Here the circumstances that made Caesar wait are emphasized.

cōpia: subject of esse, the complementary infinitive with incipseret.

21. Dat negōtium = imperat: it is historical present (116, a), after which either a primary or a secondary sequence (122, Exc. a) may be employed.

Senonibus: “fighters.” This tribe lived between the upper Loire and the Seine. The name survives in that of the city of Sens.

22. reliquisque: see 105.

Belgis: dative with an adjective (70).

uti . . . faciant: purpose clause in apposition with negōtium.

23. gerantur: subjunctive, because the clause forms an integral part of the ut clause (160).

sēque: i.e. Caesarem.

24. certīorem faciant: see note on certior ftēbat, l. 3.

cōnstanter omnēs: not redundant. Cōnstanter means that there were no contradictions in the reports, omnēs that all the tribes reported.

25. manūs, exercitum: each district raised its small contingent and these were concentrated into one army.

26. dubitandum: supply esse.

quin: after a negative verb of doubting, a subjunctive clause introduced by quin is used. It was not a question of hurry but one of doubt as to whether Caesar should take the illegal step of waging war outside of his province. When he had done this the preceding year, he could claim the attack of the Helvetians and the appeal of the Aeduvans in his defense. No such reason existed in this case.

Page 82. 27. movet: see note on dat negōtium, l. 21.

dīēbusque: ablative of time within which (97).
29. **Chapter 3.** Eō: adverb. The clause *cum . . . vēnisset* is circumstantial.

dē imprōvisō: prepositional phrase expressing manner.
opiniōne: ablative of comparison (84). Translate *than was expected.*
Galliae: dative with an adjective (70).
ex Belgis: reckoning from, etc., instead of a genitive of the whole with proximi.
31. lēgātōs: appositive to Iccium et Andebrogium ("Greatland"); and so also prīmōs.
32. qui dīcērent: relative clause of purpose. From here to the end of the chapter we have the first long example of indirect discourse in this book. The student will best understand this peculiar Roman expression if he tries to recast the report into its direct form. So here: nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rō-mānī *permittimus*, neque cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus, parātīque sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānique, quī cis Rhēnum in-
colunt, sēsē cum his coniūnxerunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium fūror, ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et īdem iēgibus ātuntur, īnum imperium īnumque magistrātum nōbiscum habent, dēterrēre potuerimus, quīn cum iīs cōnsentiant.
sē: object of *permittere*. Another sē, which would be the subject of the infinitive, has been omitted to avoid repetition.

sē . . . permittere: legal term for surrendering.
35. coniūrāsse = coniūrāvīsse.
parātōsque esse: not a perfect infinitive.

dare, iuvāre (l. 37): complementary infinitives with *parātōs esse.*
36. imperāta: participle used as noun.
oppidiōs: ablative of means, but translate by *in*. See note on *castrīs,* Bk. I, l. 813.
38. cis: from the Gallic point of view, on the left bank.
incolant: irregular sequence, instead of imperfect. Caesar does not follow the law of sequence very consistently.
sēsē: object of *coniūnxisse.*
39. tantumque: predicate adjective.
40. ut . . . potuerint (l. 43): result clause with perfect subjunctive instead of imperfect.
nē . . . quidem: notice that this phrase surrounds the word or words emphasized.

Susessiōnēs: how will you decide the case of this word? The Susessiōnēs lived in the neighborhood of the modern Soissons.

frātriēs: appositive to Susessiōnēs.

41. iūre, légibus: differ like constitution and laws.

42. ipsis: i.e. Rēmīs.

43. quīn . . . cōnsentèrent: after negative verbs of hindering (dē-terrē) a subjunctive quīn clause is used. Translate from, etc.

īs: i.e. reliquis Belgīs.

44. Chapter 4. ab īs: with quaerere the person asked is expressed with ā or ē.

quae . . . possent: object clause after quaerēret. Indirect questions take the subjunctive.

45. quid . . . possent: quid is cognate accusative (72) with possent; what they were able = how powerful they were. Compare multum posse.

reperīēbat: imperfect, because he found it out piecemeal.

46. Plērōque: see 105.

ortōs ā: remoter descent is expressed by a preposition.

Rhēnumque: accusative with the trā- in trāductōs.

47. propter, etc.: with trāductōs.


ea loca: notice the irregular plural of locus.

49. sōlōque: predicate adjective used as a noun, the only ones.

memoriā: see 97; between 107 and 101 B.C. Compare below.

omni, etc.: ablative absolute expressing circumstance.

50. Teutōnōs, etc.: these had invaded Gaul and were making their way into Italy when Marius defeated them in 102 and 101. The “Teutonic terror” was proverbial in Rome, and Caesar skillfully uses it to show the strength of this new enemy.

51. ingredī: complementary infinitive with prohibēre (147,a); from invading. The sequence of prohibuerint is irregular.

quā . . . uti: the uti clause is the subject of the infinitive. Literally, from this thing that they . . . came about; freely, the result of this deed was that . . .

rērum: objective genitive. Contrast with patrum, l. 49.

52. sibi: dative of reference (66). Sibi sūmēre, to take for one’s self = to claim.
53. omnia: object of habère.
54. habère explorāta: not explōrāvisse, because the result lasts into the time of the speaker.
55. propinquitātibus: ablative of means.
55. coniunctī: participle with causal force. Translate on account of their connections by . . .
56. quantam . . . pollicitus sit: indirect question, object of cognōverint.
57. quantam quisque: quisque commonly follows immediately upon an interrogative, reflexive, or relative pronoun.

Page 83. 56. conciliō: distinguish from consiliō.
57. Plūriumum . . . valēre = plūrium posse.
58. virtūte: ablative of specification (95).
59. armāta: for armātōrum, in agreement with milia: and so élēcta.
60. suōs: i.e. Rēmōrum.
61. finēs, agrōs: objects of possidēre.
62. Diviciācum: distinguish from the Aeduan of the same name.
63. Galliae: genitive of the whole (55).
65. cum . . . tum: almost the same as et . . . et.
67. partis: objective genitive with imperium, while regiōnum is genitive of the whole with partis.

66. obtinuerit: irregular sequence for obtinuisset.
67. rēgem: predicate noun, subject Galbam (“the fat man”).
68. voluntāte: ablative of accordancē (93).
69. habēre: with Susētionēs, understood, as subject.
70. maximē ferī: superlative of ferus, which is not compared by endings.

habeantur: habēō and dūcō with infinitive = consider. The tense here is irregular; so also absīnt.

71. Atrebātēs, etc.: supply pollicērī. Atrebātēs = “owners, landholders”; Ambiānōs = “rivermen,” around Amiens.
75. appellantur: the indicative shows that this is a remark of Cae-sar’s.

arbitrāri: sē, referring to the Remi, is to be understood as subject, while pollicērī must be understood as predicate of the other names.

ad: with numbers = about.
77. Chapter 5. cohortātus, prōsecūtus: in translating participial constructions, including ablatives absolute, it is often advisable to turn them into independent sentences. So here: encouraged, addressed.

liberāliter: translate as if an adjective modifying drātiōne.

78. senātum: with the force of its etymology (senex), body of Elders.

79. obsidēs: appositive to liberōs.

addūci: cp. this voice with that of conventūre (1. 78). Iubeō takes the active infinitive when the person commanded is mentioned, otherwise the passive.

Quae omnia: referring to the orders given. A relative at the beginning of a sentence is best translated by a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction.

80. ad diem: to the day = punctually.

Aedūum: added to distinguish this man from the Diviciacus mentioned in l. 64.

Diviciācum: object of both cohortātus and docet.

81. quantopere . . . intersit: indirect question, object of docet.

verbs of teaching take two objects, of the person and of the thing (3, b). With the impersonal verb interest the person concerned is in the genitive; the degree of interest is expressed by an ablative of degree of difference (89). Quantopere = how much.

82. manūs . . . distinēri: this infinitive phrase is the subject of intersit.

83. nē . . . sit: adverb clause of purpose.

cōndigendum sit: gerundive construction expressing necessity (43. 2).

deative of agent (67), sibi, is omitted because Caesar wishes to make the subject general.

84. Id: i.e. manūs distinēri; subject of posse. Notice the difference between the two objects of docet; indirect question (quantopere), intensive (posse).

si . . . intrōdūxerint, coeperint: subjunctive perfect, indirect discourse for future perfect indicative. Caesar tries to create a diversion to divide the forces of the enemy.

86. Postquam . . . cōgnōvit: the regular construction with this conjunction (126); translate by pluperfect.

87. cōpiās; subject of venire which depends on cōgnōvit.

coāctās: equivalent to a clause, after gathering.

Page 84. 88. ab . . . explōrātōribus: with cōgnōvit.
89. flümen, exercitum (l. 90): objects of tráduçere (73, 2). The Axona is to-day called Aisne.
90. extrémis: reckoning from the south.
tráduçere: complementary with mätüravít, which is followed by an infinitive, never by an expression of place.
91. ibi: north of the Aisne.
et . . . et . . . et: translate only the last et. In an enumeration the Romans connected either all members or none.
92. ripis: plural, because it was necessary to cross the river and then climb the steep bank opposite.
post . . . erant: his lines of communication. What literally?
93. tütä: predicate adjective (102).
commeätzus: subject of possent, but anticipated for effect.
ab Rëmis: not agency.
94. ut . . . possent: result clause, object of efficiæbat.
95. In: over.
96. alterá: i.e. the left bank.
98. in altitudinem: accusative of limit (75).
pedum: genitive of measure (57, a). As there was generally a fixed ratio of 3:2 between width and depth of a trench, only one dimension need be given.
100. Chapter 6. nömine: ablative of specification (95).
Bibrax: “Beavertown,” a name frequent in Gaul, showing that at that time the animal was often found in the country; to-day Mt. Beuvray near Rheims.
101. milia: accusative of extent of space (74). Notice that milia is a noun followed by a genitive (thousands of paces). In the singular it is an adjective, mille passus. The passus was a double step of 5 feet. Mille passus = 1 Roman mile, 4850 English feet.
ex itinere: literally, from the march, that is, without making camp or preparing for a siege.
impetū: ablative of manner (91).
102. sustentätum est: impersonal passive, used by the Romans to express an indefinite subject (115). Translate by they, people, one, or you, and an active verb.
103. eadem atque: adjective modifying oppugnatiō. Expressions of identity are followed by atque, and = as. Translate freely by a parenthetical expression: and likewise.
oppugnatiō: translate manner of, etc.
104. Ubi: with coepi sunt and nuidatus est.
circumiecta multitudine: ablative absolute.
105. moenibus: dative with circumiecta.
coepti sunt: with a passive infinitive coepi is itself put into the
passive. Translate freely, they have begun to throw.
106. defensoribus: ablative of separation (79).
testudine: see Introduction, 42.
107. Quod: namely, the actions mentioned. When a relative refers
to an infinitive or a clause it is in the neuter.
108. cum . . . conicerent: causal clause. The verb is plural be-
cause a crowd consists of many men (114, 1).
causa: gerund in objective genitive after potestas.
nulli: possessive dative (68). Notice the emphatic position.
110. oppugnandi: see note on consistendi, l. 109.
111. nobilitate: ablative of description (94). What other case
might have been used? See 57.
ex ipsis: numerals are often used with a prepositional phrase
instead of the genitive of the whole (55, a).
Legati: appositive to quin.
113. submittitur, posse: indirect discourse after the idea of telling
in nuntios mittit.
115. Chapter 7. idem: ablative with usus (86). It is antece-
dent of quin, and ducibus is an appositive to it.
116. nuntii: appositive to quin.
Numidiae, etc.: the mention of these unimportant parts of Caesar's
army strikingly shows the hopelessness of the Gallic resistance against
a man who had at his command the inexhaustible resources of the
Roman world. From Africa, Greece, and Spain men had been drafted
to serve in northern Europe.
Cretas: Greek form, instead of Cretes.
117. subsidio oppidaniis: see 69, a.
Page 85. 118. adventae: ablative of cause (83).
Remis: dative of reference (66) with accessit. In rendering the
sentence, make it the subject, studium the object, and translate accessit
by gained.
119. hostibus, etc.: see note on Remis, and treat the sentence in
the same way, translating discessit by lost.
Potiundi: gerundive instead of gerund with an object (168),
Potiundi oppido. Properly only transitive verbs can be so treated,
but the construction is extended to some verbs not followed by the accusative.

120. *Itaque*, etc.: notice the way in which these statements are subordinated to one another by being expressed in participial phrases. Turn each one into an independent sentence.

122. *quō = ad quae.*

123. *copiās*: ablative of accompaniment. The preposition is omitted in certain military terms (90, 1).

*a milibus*: a difficult expression. It seems that Caesar had intended to write: *castra milibus passuum* (ablative of degree of difference) *minus a* (*nostris castris*), but changed the expression in a manner similar to that by which *dieē tertiō ante Kalendās* has become *ante diēm tertium Kalendās*. Translate: *at a distance of less than two miles from.*

124. *quaes castra*: *castra*, the antecedent of *quaes*, has been attracted into the relative clause (111, 4).

*fūmō*, etc.: not a hendiadys (171, 1); by the smoke in daytime and by the glare of fire at night.

125. *milibus*: ablative either of degree (89) or of comparison (84).

in *lātitūdinem*: see note on *in altitūdinem*, l. 98. Evidently the Gallic camp was very carelessly constructed, if compared with a Roman camp. Excavations have shown that Caesar's army here occupied a space 2129 by 2137 feet. It numbered about 60,000 men. The enemy, about 300,000 strong (ll. 70–76), should then have occupied a space about 12,000 feet square, that is, about two and one half miles.

127. CHAPTER 8. *prīmō*: *at first*. Distinguish from *primum = first, for the first time.*

128. *virtūtis*: objective genitive (54); *reputation for valor.*

proelīō: ablative of separation with *supersedēre*, which is the object of *statuit.*

129. *quid . . . audērent*: indirect questions, objects of *periclitābātur.*

*quid*: see note on *plūrium possent*, Bk. I, l. 62.

*hostīs*: collective singular.

131. *Ubi, etc.:* the “skeleton” of this sentence is formed thus: *Ubi . . . intellēxit, ab utrōque* (l. 137) . . . *obdūxit . . . collocāvit* (l. 140). This is interrupted by the description of the territory, *locō . . . redibat* (ll. 131–137).

*locō*: ablative absolute of circumstance with *opportūnō* and *idōneō* as predicate adjectives.
Page 86. 132. *ad*, etc.: with *opportūnō* and *idōneō*, which take either *ad* with the accusative or the dative of purpose. *nātūrā*: ablative of cause. Translate by an adverb.

133. *quod*, etc.: explains *opportūnō*.

134. *ēditus*: participle used as an adjective, agreeing with *collis*.

135. *tantum*: supply *locī*; accusative of extent (74).

136. *adversus*: adjective modifying *collis*; turned (toward the enemy), in front.

137. *quantum*: object of *tenēre*. It corresponds to *tantum*. Translate by *as* and omit the genitive of the whole, *locī*.

138. *ex*, etc.: ablative of point of view.

139. *lateris dēiectūs*: slopes of the side = steep sides.

140. *rehabat*: compare this with *ēditus*, l. 134. The point of view differs; above, looking from plain to top, here, looking from top to plain.

141. *trānsversam*: at right angles to the camp. See Map.

142. *obdūxīt*: fronting the army of the enemy; force of *ob-*?

143. *passuum*: genitive of measure (57, a).

144. *extrēmās*: see 105.

145. *tormenta*: artillery, that is, engines of war worked by twisted ropes (*fortis fānēs*). See Introduction, 54.

146. *instrūxisset*: a subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, showing the reason in Caesar's mind. Otherwise a future perfect would have been used.

147. *poterant*: indicative, because it is a parenthetical clause.


149. *dūabus, etc.*: Caesar's regular policy. He fought with seasoned troops only.

150. *quō = aliquō*: after *sī, nisi, nē, and num* forms with *ali-* are not used. For case see 87.

151. *opus esset*: impersonal, *there was need*. *Opus* in this phrase is indeclinable.

152. *subsidiō*: dative of purpose (69).

153. *reliquās*: not *rest of*.

147. Chapter 9. Palüs: this is formed by a little stream, the Miette.

erat: denotes existence.

148. Hanc: object of trānsirent in the si clause, but placed before the conjunction for the sake of emphasis.

si . . . trānsirent: after verbs of trying, waiting, etc., an indirect question introduced by si is used; to see if, etc. The imperfect subjunctive represents an original future.

exspectābant: imperfect of continued action.

149. autem: postpositive. This word, like enim and quoque, is not found at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

si . . . fieret: see note on sī trānsirent, l. 148. It depends on the adjective parātī, which has the force of waiting.

150. ut . . . aggregerentur: purpose clause depending on parātī.

impeditīs: participle, with force of a clause; while in difficulties (on account of picking their way through the bog).

151. contendēbatūr: impersonal passive. In translating make the words proeliiō equestri the subject.

152. faciunt: historical present.

secundīoere: with proeliiō, ablative absolute, with the (missing) present participle of esse understood.

153. nostrīs: dative of reference (66) with secundīoere.

155. quod esse: the infinitive is the subject of dēmonstrātum est. Quod is made to introduce the relative clause of which dēmonstrātum est is the predicate. Translate by turning the predicate into an as clause, making the infinitive the predicate of the relative, thus: which, as has been pointed out, was.

157. cōnsiliō: ablatival of cause.

ut . . . prohibērent (l. 161): the ut clause of purpose with the four verbs expugnārent, interseciderent, populārentur, prohibērent, explains cōnsiliō.

si possent: subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, as part of the plan of the Belgians; originally future. So si . . . potuissent, l. 159, originally future perfect.

cui: dative with praecerat. This is indicative because it is an explanatory remark of Caesar's. So quī . . . erant, l. 160.

159. minus: parum, minus, minimē, often have the force of nōn.

160. quī: antecedent agrōs.
ūsui: dative of purpose, accompanied by a dative of reference, nóbís (69, a).

commēntū: ablative of separation.

162. Chapter 10. certior factus: see note on l. 3.

163. levis armāturae: descriptive genitive (57). Translate by an adjective modifying Numidás.

sagittāriōsque: the -que marks the last two kinds of troops as forming one body, otherwise no connective would have been used in the enumeration.

164. ponte: ablative of means with trādūcit, to which the object flūmen should be supplied.

Page 87. 165. pugnātum est: impersonal passive (115). Translate they, with an active tense.

166. aggressi: circumstantial participle. Translate by an independent verb.

occidērunt: note the quantity of the t and distinguish from occidere.

In composition a becomes i, but ae becomes t.

per: not through. The prepositional phrase modifies trānsire, complementary to cōnāntēs. This refers to reliquoās, the object of repulērunt. Translate cōnāntēs by a circumstantial clause of which a pronoun referring to reliquoās should become the subject.

168. repulērunt: notice the spelling and compare with the perfect of the simple verb pellō.

trānsierunt: had (actually) crossed.

169. equitātū: ablative of means with circumventōs.

interfēcērunt: nostri, l. 165, is the subject.

Hostēs, etc.: in translating this involved sentence it will be best to change the construction and to divide it into a number of small independent statements. Keep in mind that hostēs is subject of cōnstituērunt, l. 173, and is to be understood as subject of the verbs intellēxērunt and vidērunt, which belong to the clause beginning with ubi. This clause, however, extends to coepit.

170. dē ... trāneundō: prepositional phrases depending on spēm. An objective genitive (54) might have been used instead; translate accordingly.

spēm: subject of sēfellisse, which has sē for its object and is in direct discourse after intellēxērunt.

171. neque = et nōn.

Nostrōs: subject of prōgredi, dependent on vidērunt.
172. *pugnandi*: genitive of the gerund with *causā*, expressing purpose (169, 1 b). Note that in this construction *causā* always follows the genitive.

*ipsōs*: object of *déficere*, complementary to *coepit* with *rēs* as subject.

174. *optimum esse*: predicate adjective. *Reverti* and *conventre* (l. 176) are the subjects, the whole being the object of *cōnstituērunt* (l. 173).

*domum*: accusative of limit of motion (75, 1).

*quemque*: subject of *reverti*.

175. *quōrum*: antecedent *eōs*, l. 176.

*intrōdūxissent*: subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing a future perfect.

176. *ad . . . dēfendendōs*: gerundive of purpose, depending on *conventire*.

*ut . . . üterentur* (l. 178): these are purpose clauses, depending on the sense of the whole clause *cōnstituērunt . . . conventire*. Insert with the intention.

178. *cōpiās*: usually the plural of *cōpia* means *troops*. What does it mean here?

*sententiam*: decision.

179. *quod . . . cōgnōverant*: substantive clause, explaining *haec ratiō*.

180. *finibus*: dative with *appropinquāre*, which takes the dative the same as the adjective *propinquus*.

181. *Hīs*: dative, indirect object of *persuādērī*, the subject of *poterat*. Intransitive verbs cannot form a personal passive, but can be used only in the third singular with the original dative preserved (64, 4). In translating make the dative the subject of a personal construction.

*ut . . . ferrent*: clause of purpose used as subject of *persuāderit*. In the active the verb is followed by an object clause, which becomes the subject clause of the passive.

182. *neque . . . auxilium ferrent*: without aiding. If the writer had wanted to say *and not*, he would have used *nēve*.

183. Chapter II. *vigiliā*: ablative of time when. The night was divided into four watches, from sunset to sunrise. At this season the sun set about 9 P.M.

184. *castris*: ablative of separation.

*mūlō, etc.*: probably ablative absolute expressing manner. *Nūlō = sine ulla.*
185. cum . . . properaret: causal clause, modifying fecérunt.
186. ut . . . vidēretur: object clause of result with fecérunt.
con similis: force of con-? What degree of the adjective would have the same force?
187. fugae: see 70.
Caesar: subject of perspéxerat and continuit. Break up the sentence into small statements.
188. per: not ab, to show that they were acting under Caesar's orders.
veritus: the perfect participle of deponent verbs often has the force of a present.
quod . . . perspéxerat: causal, modifies veritus.
quā . . . discēderent: indirect question, object of perspéxerat.
189. exercitum: the Roman army proper, the legions. The cavalry consisted of Gallic auxiliaries. See Bk. I, l. 346.
190. castris: ablative of means; translate by in.
Primâ lūce: ablative of time, modifies the ablative absolute expressing cause, confirmātā ré.
191. quī . . . morāretur: relative purpose clause.
novissimum agmen: see 105.
194. subsequi: notice the force of sub-, closely.
196. fugientium: circumstantial participle with eōrum; while, etc.
197. Cum . . . sustainērent: circumstantial clause, but almost equivalent to a concession. Translate by while.
ab extrēmō agmine: ablative of point of view (80).
ad quōs: it must be inserted as antecedent.
ventum erat: impersonal passive, used here to avoid confusion about the subjects.
Page 88. 199. priōres: almost equivalent to primum agmen.
vidērentur, continuērentur: subjunctive, because the reason is not real but only existing in their minds.
neque . . . neque: and . . . neither . . . nor.
200. exauditō . . . āordinibus: two ablatives absolute which modify each other. The first gives the reason for the second, which expresses the circumstances under which the pōnēbant takes place. Make the first a prepositional phrase, upon hearing, the second an independent verb.
201. omnēs: referring back to priōres.
202. tantam . . . quantum: an involved thought. Literally, they
killed as great a number as the extent of the day was long; freely, . . . as daylight allowed.

204. sub, etc.: there is no connective (asynodeton). Insert but.

205. erat imperātum: supply its; the impersonal passive construction of intransitive verbs (64, a).

206. Chapter 12. Postridiē eius dīēis: literally, on the next day of this day = on the next day.

priusquam . . . recipere: subjunctive, because Caesar's intention is indicated. Translate could recover.

207. quī . . . erant. See ll. 40 and 61.

208. Rēmis: dative with an adjective (70).

magnō itinere: a long march (in one day) = a forced march.

209. Noviodūnum: "Newtown," to-day Soissons. It is appositive to oppidum.

ex itinere: see note on l. 101.

210. quōd . . . audīēbat: causal clause, explaining ex itinere.

ab dēfēnsōribus: see 79, a.

212. paucis dēfēndentibus: ablative absolute with concessive force.

Translate by although.

expugnāre: observe the difference between this word and oppugnāre.

213. vīneās: see Introduction, 52.

quaeque = et (ea) quae.

ad oppugnandum: a gerund. The regular dative of reference accompanying the dative of purpose āsūt would have been ambiguous.

214. ex fugā: grammatically dependent on convēnit, but in sense equivalent to fugientium. Translate accordingly.

216. aggere, turribus: see Introduction, 52.

217. magnītūdine, celeritāte (l. 218): casual with permōti.

218. ante: adverb.

219. mittunt, impetrant (l. 220): historical presents.

220. potentibus Rēmis: causal ablative absolute.

ut cōnservārentur: object of both potentibus and impetrant. In translating supply a pronoun object with impetrant.

221. Chapter 13. obsidibus: appositive to prīmis, filūs.

prīmis = princīpibus.

222. Galbae: see l. 66. Thus the Belgian confederacy was deprived of its commander in chief.

223. in dēditōnem . . . accipit: literally, receives into surrender; freely, accepts the surrender of.
224. Bellovacōs: see note on l. 57.

Quī cum = ἥτιον cum: a relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence instead of a demonstrative to connect it with the preceding sentence.

225. Bratuspantium: for case see note on l. 209.

atque: repeat cum.

227. nātū: ablative of specification (95); greater in respect to birth = elders.

228. sēsē, etc.: indirect discourse after vōce significāre = dicere. Caesar, of course, did not understand their language, but judged from their tone of voice.

in eius fidem, etc.: come into his protection and power = surrender unconditionally.

Page 89. 231. accessisset, pōneret: note the difference in tense.

pūerī: includes both boys and girls.

232. passīs manibus: ablative absolute expressing manner. Passīs is from pandō.

mōre: ablative of accordance (93), modifies passīs.

235. CHAPTER 14. facit verba = dicit. The rest of the chapter in its original form ran somewhat as follows: Bellovacī . . . füerunt; impulsi . . . quī dicēbant . . . défēcérunt et . . . intulérunt. Quī . . . füerunt, quod intellegēbant . . . profugérunt. Petunt . . . Bel-

lovacī . . . Aedui, ut tuā . . . utāris. Quod si feceris, . . . ampli-
ficābis; . . . incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuēvimus. Notice how very little really had to be changed to make the speech direct.

236. in fidē . . . fuisse: had been in the protection and friendship = had been friends and allies.

237. impulsōs . . . intulisse (l. 240): the words impulsōs (Bello-

vacōs) . . . défēcisse et . . . intulisse depend on verba facit; the words Aeduōs . . . perferre depend on dicerent. Notice the tense of perferre compared with that of défēcisse. The principēs said they are

durating. Diviciacus said they have revolted.

240. Quī: supply the antecedent eōs as subject of profugisse.

cōnsilīi: objective genitive (54) with principēs, which differs in meaning from principibus in l. 237.

241. quod intellegērent: causal clause, referring to profugisse.

quantum: indirect question, object of intellegērent.

242. Petere: emphatic position. Translate it was the prayer . . .
Page 92. 321. cēdentēs: object of insequi. The participle is used as a noun. Translate by a relative clause.
322. primae: here has the force of an adverb.
323. dimēnsō: participle of dimētior, with passive force.
325. quod tempus = id tempus quod.
committendi proelii: gerundive construction in the objective genitive with tempus. Translate by for.
326. convēnerat: from the impersonal verb convenit, it is agreed upon.
   ut: notice the mood of the predicates.
   aciem ōrdinēque: hendiadys, the ranks of their battle line.
327. ipsi: omit in translating.
329. His: i.e. equitibus.
330. ut . . . vidērentur: result clause.
ad: in front of.
331. vidērentur: see note on l. 307.
332. adversō colle: ablative absolute, implying contrast; even up—hill.
in opere: supply munierunt.
334. Chapter 20. The breathless haste made necessary by this surprise is well expressed by the short, jerky sentences, without any connectives. It is worth while to observe how in the description of this battle Caesar always manages to appear just at the critical moment. See beginning of Chs. 21, 25, 26.
Caesarī: dative of agent, to be understood with all the gerundives which follow.
ūnō: one (and the same).
vēxillum: a red flag hoisted over the general’s quarters. See Introduction, 40.
335. cum . . . oportēret: circumstantial clause.
336. concurri: impersonal passive infinitive, subject of oportēret.
quī: its (omitted) antecedent et is subject of arcessendi.
337. aggeris: that is, the material for the rampart.
338. cohortandī: which was regularly done before commencing battle. Note that the gerundive of deponent verbs is passive meaning.
signum: for attack.
340. impēdiēbat: singular, because the two nominatives form idea. The time was short because the enemy rushed so rapidly.
difficultàtibus: dative of reference with the dative of purpose subsidiò (69, a). Translate by in.

duae rés: explained by one pair of nouns in apposition (scientia, etc.) and by an explanatory substantive clause (quod . . . vetuerat, l. 344 et seq.).

341. quod . . . poterant (l. 344): a causal clause, explaining scientia atque úsus.

342. probé: ablative of means.

343. quid . . . oportéret: indirect question (151), object of praescíbere and retained object of docéri.

344. ipsí sibi: see note on ipsí, l. 327.

345. légátós: velátre takes a direct object. What is the usual construction with verbs of forbidding? See 147.

346. Hi = légát.t.

347. nihil: not at all.

348. per sé: on their own responsibility.

349. Chapter 21. rébus imperátìs: as imperáre takes the thing ordered as its direct object, the passive ablative absolute is a perfectly regular construction.

350. quam partem = ad eam partem quam.

351. decimam: on the left wing. Do you think it was mere accident that Caesar came first to his favorite regiment?

352. quam: than (to say).

353. neu = nève: purpose clauses and prohibitions are regularly continued by nève = et nè (while neque = et nòn). Neu and -que here correspond to the neque . . . et of a statement (on the one hand not . . . but on the other hand).

354. quod . . . aberant: giving the reason for signum dedit.

355. nòn . . . possé: no farther than whither a missile could be thrown = within range.
355. posset: relative clauses after negative antecedents are in the subjunctive.

356. Atque: and indeed, giving the proof for the statement that the enemy was close by.
alteram: the right wing.

357. pugnantibus: dative with occurrit; he found them fighting.
Temporis, hostium: the position marks these words as emphatic.

358. parātus: adjective.

359. ut . . . dēfuerit (l. 361): result clause. The tense is in irregular sequence, which is often found in result clauses when the result is stated as decisive or final.
insignia, etc.: the officers were distinguished by certain trappings, while they, as well as many soldiers, possessed medals given for bravery. These things were put on before the battle. The helmets were not worn on the march, but carried either over the arm or with the baggage (sarcinae) on a stick. The shields were ornamented with brass and were carried in leather covers to save unnecessary polishing. See Introduction, 25, 27, 51.

360. scūtis: dative of separation (66, b).

361. Quam: with in partem.

362. cāsū: ablativ of cause; translate by, etc.
quaeque = et quae.

prima: translate with cōnspēxit as if it were an adverb. The standards of the maniples are meant.

365. Chapter 22. Instrūctō . . . poterant (l. 372): break this sentence up into several parts. (1) Instrūctō . . . postulābat, (2) cum diversae . . . impedirētur, (3) neque . . . poterant. In the Latin context the relation of the clauses is as follows: (1) ablative absolute of time; (2) causal clause, giving the consequences arising from (1) and the reason for (3). In translating choose coördinating conjunctions in accordance with this hint.
dēiectus: a noun followed by the genitive collis.

366. necessitās: needs of the moment.
ratiō atque ārdō: theory and practice.

367. diversae: turned from each other.
aliae alīa: one here, one there (113). Aliae is appositive to legiōnēs.

saepibus . . . interiectīs: ablative absolute expressing means.
In translating the participle turn it into a relative clause going with ut . . . dēmōnstrāvimus. For the facts cp. Ch. 17.
370. certa subsidia: reserves in certain places.
   quid . . . opus esset: indirect question, subject of prōvidērī.
   quid: if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun, this may
   be made the subject of the phrase opus est.
372. administrāri: not carried out, but given.
373. iniquitāte: literally, unevenness; translate diversity.
   fortūnae: genitive, with ēventūs.
374. Chapter 23. Legiōnis: singular, because Caesar thinks at first
   only of that legion to which he comes first. His preference for the
   tenth legion is shown by the fact that in Ch. 21 he did not even men-
   tion the ninth.
   militēs: subject of compulērunt, interfēcērunt.
375. cursū . . . cōnfectōs: modifies Atrebātēs.
   cursū ac lassitiūdine: hendiadys (171, 1); weary from running.
376. exanimātōs: winded.
   his: i.e. Atrebātibus.
377. ea pars: i.e. exercitūs Rōmānī.
378. compulērunt: notice the force of the prefix, completely.
   cōnāntēs: accusative.
379. impeditam: appositional. Translate by while.
   trānsire: complementary infinitive, with dubitāre meaning hesi-
   tate.
380. inīquum: because now the Romans fought uphill.
381. hostēs: accusative.
382. diversae: as in l. 367, and hence separately.
383. quibuscum: cum is used as an enclitic with personal,
   relative, and interrogative pronouns.
384. ex locō superiōre: the Romans were on the upper part of the
   river bank.
385. proeliābantur: progressive.
386. nūdātis: supply dēfēnsōribus, an ablative of separation.
   cum . . . cōnstitisset: circumstantial (129). For number see note
   on l. 374.
387. intervāllō: ablative of measure.
388. cōnfertissimō agmine: ablative of manner.
   duce Boduognātō: ablative absolute: Boduognatus being leader, under
   Boduognatus’s leadership.
389. summam imperii: see note on summam belli, l. 67.
390. *ab apertō latere*: see note on *ā fronte*, l. 385. The right side was shieldless.

391. *summum. . . locum*: the camp, as usual, was on the slope of the hill, hence the rear was higher than the front.


393. *qui. . . fuerant*: see l. 316.

394. *quōs*: referring to *equītēs, peditēs*.

395. *pulsōs*: supply *esse*.

396. *cum. . . recipiērent*: circumstantial; *while retreating*.

397. *adversīs*: *face to face*. The cavalry had run away and was now rallied near the camp, and met the enemy entering it.

398. *decumānā portā*: see the plan of a Roman camp, Introduction, 48.

399. *ac summō iugō*: the baggage train had only partly entered the camp.

400. *victōrēs*: appositive to *nostōrōs*.

401. *cum respēxissent*: circumstantial; *upon looking back. . . are seeing*.

402. *eōrum*: with *clāmor*. Translate by *from*.

403. *oriēbātur*: singular, because *clāmor fremitusque* forms one idea. The shouting of the men and the noise of the beasts and wagons blend into one confused uproar.

404. *aliique, etc.*, see note on l. 367.

405. *ferēbantur*: *were carried = rushed*.

406. *Trēverī*: in the valley of the Moselle. The name survives in the name of the city of Trèves. The word is here used as an adjective.

407. *virtūtis*: objective genitive, with *opiniō; reputation for bra very*.

408. *auxiliī causā*: with *missī*.

409. *cum*: conjunction, with *vīdissent*. In itself it might be a preposition, but the subjunctive *vīdissent* (l. 408) demands a conjunction to introduce it. It is circumstantial; for translation see note on l. 394.

410. *circumventās tenērī*: the perfect participle with *habēre and tenēre* denotes that the action has been completed, but that its effect continues. Translate *held almost completely outflanked*.

411. *cālōnēs, etc.*, the lack of connectives is regular in enumeration: where either all parts are connected or none. Here it is certainly meant to paint the excited confusion of the battlefield.
408. déspérâtis, etc.: our circumstances having been despaired of = despairing of our success. In the active, déspérâre takes dé, but the ablative absolute is used as if it were a transitive verb.

409. Römânōs: indirect discourse after renuntiāverunt.

410. castris: with ātītōs.

412. Chapter 25. Caesar, etc.: this sentence, the longest found in Caesar, must be broken up as follows: (1) to profectus; (2) to vidit; (3) to āmissō, treating all ablatives absolute as independent sentences; (4) to occisis; (5) to posset, as a parenthesis; (6) to vitāre; (7) to vidit, which should be omitted in translating; (8) to posset; (9) to vēnerat; (10) to prōcessit; (11) to appellātis; (12) to cohortātus; (13) to end of sentence. Keep in mind that beginning with ubi (l. 413) everything depends upon vidit (l. 415), which is repeated in l. 424 to refresh the reader's memory.

Caesar: subject of prōcessit (l. 426), and iussit (l. 428). See note on l. 334.

414. collātis: crowded.

sibi ipsōs: see note on l. 327.

Page 95. 418. prīnipilō: see Introduction, 30.

419. Baculō: probably a nickname ("Mr. Cane") given to the man by the soldiers because he used his sign of office too freely.

gravibusque: an adjective modifying the same noun as multus is connected with multus by et or -que. Omit the conjunction.

421. ab novissimis: ablative of point of view.

désertō locō: ablative absolute.

proelīō: ablative of separation.

422. ā fronte: ablative of point of view.

424. in angustō: in a tight place.

vidit: omit.

425. ab novissimis: see note on l. 421.

multī: dative of separation (66, b).

428. signa Inferre: by doing this the formation would be made open and the soldiers would have elbowroom.

quō: see 123, 3.

429. Culus: i.e. Caesars.

430. multībus: dative with illātā.

cum . . . cuperet: causal clause.

431. in extrēmis suis rēbus: in his own desperate circumstances = at the greatest personal risk.

cum . . . vidisset: circumstantial; upon noticing.

434. tribūnōs: see Introduction, 32.

435. ut . . . inferrent: purpose clauses, representing an original command.

conversa sīgna . . . inferrent: sīgna is object of inferrent. By turning the standards, the front would naturally be changed; hence, should wheel and attack.

436. aliis aliī: see note on l. 367.

437. nē . . . circumvenirentur: see 146.

āversī: turned away = from the rear. The legions were now standing back to back.

440. proelīō nūntiātō: ablative absolute expressing cause or time.

441. cursū incitātō: ablative absolute expressing manner.

442. cōnsicībiēvantur: the imperfect here denotes the beginning of the action.

Labīēnus: see l. 373, where the commander, however, was not mentioned.

443. quae . . . gererentur: indirect question, object of cōnsicībiētus.

445. Quī: referring in thought to the individual soldiers, and therefore in “construction according to sense” not agreeing with legiōnem.

quō . . . esset: in what critical situation.

quŌ . . . versārētūr (l. 447): indirect questions, objects of cōgnō-
vissent.

Page 96. 447. versārētūr: agreeing only with the last and most important subject. In this way the personal relation of the tenth legion to Caesar is emphasized.

nihil . . . fēcērunt: made nothing (of) left for them in regard to speed = left nothing undone as far as speed went.

450. Chapter 27. ut . . . redintegrārent, occurrerent, praeferrent: result.

etiam qui: supply et.

prōcubuissent: subjunctive by attraction (160).

451. scūtīs: ablative with iniōxi.

452. inermēs: agreeing with cālōnēs.

453. ut . . . dēlērent: purpose clause referring to praeferrent.

454. in: the preposition is usually omitted in this phrase.

militibus: indirect object with praeferrent.
455. in extrēmā spē salūtis: at the end of their hope for safety = at the last ditch, without any hope.
456. praestitērunt: notice that this verb is here transitive, with vīrūtem as object. See Vocabulary.
   ut . . . pugnāreō: how do you decide whether this is purpose or result?
   cum . . . cecidissent: circumstantial.
457. iacentibus: dative with insistēreō.
458. his: i.e. proximēs.
459. qui superēssent: supply et; subjunctive by attraction (160).
   ut: adverb, as.
460. concerērent, remitterērent: supply the ut from l. 456.
   ut . . . dēbereō: result clause depending on, and drawing the conclusion from, all the preceding facts.
   nōn nēquīquam: with ausōs esse.
461. virtūtis: descriptive genitive.
   īndicāreō dēbereō: infinitive of an impersonal passive; one ought to judge.
462. trānsire, ascendere, subire: complementary to ausōs esse.
463. quae: referring to the infinitives and therefore neuter. It is object of redēgerat, with facēlia as predicate accusative (73, c).
   ex: instead of.
466. Chapter 28. redāctō: agreeing with nōmine, but referring also to gente.
   quōs . . . dixerāmus: when, as here, a relative clause contains a verb of saying on which the rest of the clause depends, the verb of saying should be made parenthetical, and the infinitive should be translated as a finite verb. For the facts, see l. 272.
468. cum . . . arbitrāreō: causal clause.
   victōribus, victīs: datives of reference. Literally, nothing hindered for the victors, nothing safe for the conquered; freely, no barrier for the conquerors, no safety for the defeated.
469. impeditum, tūtum: supply esse.
472. ad trēs, etc.: the statement was decidedly exaggerated. Five years later they again put 6,000 men in the field against the Romans.
473. vīx: with guingentōs.
474. ut . . . vidēreō: purpose. This clemency was probably not merely due to policy, but influenced by Caesar's sincere respect for the bravery of the Nervii. See ll. 460-464.
476. finitimis: indirect object of *imperāvit*, the direct object of which is the *ut* clause. Notice the difference in construction of the two verbs of commanding, *iubeō* and *imperō*.


cum . . . *venirent*: circumstantial; *while*.

479. *cōpiis*: ablative of accompaniment, without a preposition.

ex *itinere*: that is, immediately.

482. cum . . . *habēret*: concessive.

ex . . . *partibus, ex parte*: ablative of point of view.

in *circuitū*: a prepositional phrase, used almost like an adjective; all around.

486. *tum*: now. In a narrative the words of time are used as if from the point of the speaker. When Caesar wrote, it was *then*.


*Ipse*: i.e. *Aduatuc*.

488. *Cimbris*: ablative of origin (81, 1).


489. *iis impedimentis*: ablative absolute with *dēpositis*, l. 491.

490. *agere ac portāre*: two verbs, one referring to cattle and slaves, the other to things. Translate by the one verb *transport*.

*citā*: on the Gallic side.

491. *cūstōdiae, praeсидiō*: datives of purpose.

492. *eōrum*: i.e. *Cimbrōrum*.

493. cum . . . *dēfenderent*: circumstantial clause, explaining *ex-agitātī*.

*aliās . . . aliās*: adverbs.

494. *illātum dēfenderent*: supply *bellum*. Literally, *warded off (a war) made on (them)*; freely, *waged now offensive, now defensive wars*.

496. Chapter 30. *Ac*: and indeed.

*adventū*: ablative of time.

497. *parvulisque proeliis*: very small fights = skirmishes.

498. *pādum*: must be understood both with *XII* and with *XV milium*, since the rampart certainly was not 15 miles long. It is not repeated after *milium*, because it would produce a disagreeable similarity of sound.

499. *circummūnitī*: by Caesar.

*oppidō*: ablative of means. Translate by *in*.

502. ā tantō spatiō = tantō spatiō (ablative of degree of difference)
ā (sē): see note on l. 123.

503. institueretur: the subjunctive is used because this is part of their sneers.

Quibusnam, etc.: this is a question in indirect discourse, of which confiderent, l. 507, is the predicate (for confiditis). Do not confuse with an indirect question, which must be introduced by a verb.

504. hominēs: in apposition to the subject of confiderent.

tantulæ: the ending -ulus makes diminutives (see parvulīs, l. 497); so little great = so small.

505. prae: in comparison with, on account of. In translating the parenthesis make Gallis the subject, turn contemptui into a verbal predicate, and make brevitās the object.

506. in mūrō: verbs of placing often have an ablative of place where, instead of an accusative of place to which. The Aduatuci probably had seen a tower on wheels, and wondered how the Romans could lift it up and place it at the wall.

Page 98. 508. Chapter 31. movēri et appropinquāre: turrim must be supplied as subject.

509. speciē: from root spec-, see.

510. qui, etc.: the predicate is dixerunt, l. 514. This verb governs the words sē ... permittère (l. 513), while locuit, l. 510, governs the words Nōn ... possent (l. 510-513). In these, again, the words mānōs ... gerere depend on existimāre.

511. qui ... possent (l. 513): relative clause with causal force (r. 33).

513. sē ... omnia: object of permittere. A second sē as subject of permittere is omitted to avoid repetition. The phrase means sur-

514. Čnum: object of the following infinitives, with subject sē under-

sted.

prō: in accordance with.

suā: i.e. Caesaris. Translate his usual.

515. statuisset: subjunctive in indirect discourse, for the future perfect.

516. nē ... despoliāret: explains ĉnum.

sē: i.e. Aduatucōs.

armis: ablative of separation.

517. Sibi: with inimīcōs.
517. virtūti: see 64.
518. posseunt: for the future.
519. Sibi: dative of reference with praestāre (from the impersonal praestat, it is better). The infinitives pati, interfici are the subjects of praestāre.

dēducerentur: for the future or for present subjunctive.
520. quamvis: from the pronoun quītōs.
fortūnam: meaning?
ā: introducing an ablative of agent, because patī = be treated.

Translate at the hands of:
quām: adverb with a comparative, since praestāre = melius esse.
his: antecedent of quōs.
521. per: expressing manner.
522. Chapter 32. cōnṣuētūdine . . . merītō: ablatives of cause.
523. eōrum: with merītō.
524. ariēs: see Introduction, 52.
attigisset, dēdidissent: for the future perfect.
525. nisi: except.
527. nē . . . inferrent: object clause with imperātūrum.
528. quae imperārentur: object of facere. For the passive construction see note on l. 349. Instead of the present infinitive we should have expected the future.
531. summam . . . altitūdinem: the highest height = the top.
534. patefactīs: those compounds of faciō which are not made with prepositions retain the use of fīō as passive.
536. Chapter 33. nē . . . acciperent: purpose. Caesar's regard for the safety of the surrendered serves to show their treachery in the worst light.
quām: since a negative purpose clause must be introduced by nē, a compound negative used in it must be resolved into its parts; nobody = that not anybody, etc.
537. ante: adverb.
initū: ablative absolute with cōnsiliō.
intellēctum est: impersonal passive. Supply later.
Page 99. 539. dēnique: at least.
540. partim, partim: see Vocabulary.
cum: the preposition expresses possession.
541. scūtīs, vīminibus: ablatives absolute, but equivalent in meaning to cum armīs.
542. pellibus: ablative of means.
543. quaē: adverb of place.
- 546. ignibus: fire signals were often employed. Monuments show a torch stuck out from a fort.
547. concursum, pugnātum: impersonal.
548. in extrēmā, etc.: see note on l. 455.
ut ... pugnāri dēbuit: do not allow the ita (l. 547) to mislead you into assuming a result clause. What makes this impossible?
549. turribus: none had been mentioned, but towers always, and at regular intervals, strengthened the vāllum.
550. iaceoent: subjunctive in a characteristic relative clause, after in definite antecedent.
- dēbuit: in translating make virtūs the subject and turn pugnāri into the active. Remember that ought is a defective verb and that the time of dēbuit must be shown in the translation.
- cum ... cōnsistēret: causal clause.
551. ad hominum milibus: the preposition is used adverbially. This probably arose from an original hominum milibus ad. See note on a tantō spatiō, l. 502.
- 552. cum ... dēfenderet: causal clause.
- nēmō: note the emphatic position. iam with a negative may be translated longer.
554. sectionem: see Vocabulary.
555. capitum = hominum: cp. the use of souls in English.
556. milium: predicate genitive of measure.
557. CHAPTER 34. à P. Crasso: ablative of agent with certior factus, 1. 560. For Crassus see note on adulēscens, Bk. I, l. 1082.
558. Venetōs: "kinsmen." Also Venellōs, diminutive of Veneti; Coriosolitēs, "the watchers of the army"; Esuvīōs, "sons of Esus," the Gallic war god; Redonēs, "charioteers." The names survive in the modern Vennes, Corseult, Rennes.
559. quae: agreeing with civitātēs, but referring to the names mentioned. A pronoun subject is regularly made to agree with its predicate noun.
561. in diēōnem: see Vocabulary.
563. Chapter 35. pācātā: what literally?
565. incolent: subjunctive by attraction (160).
566. quae ... pollicīrentur: purpose clause.
-ē: what is the gender? Why?
SINGULAR

D. animō  puerō  agrō  virō  rēgnō
Ac. animōrum  puerōrum  agrōrum  virōrum  rēgnōrum
V. anime  puer  ager  vir  rēgnō
Ab. animō  puerō  agrō  virō  rēgnō

PLURAL

N. animī  puerī  agrī  virī  rēgna
G. animōrum  puerōrum  agrōrum  virōrum  rēgnōrum
D. animīs  puerīs  agrīs  virīs  rēgnīs
Ac. animōs  puerōs  agrōs  virōs  rēgna
V. animī  puerī  agrī  virī  rēgna
Ab. animīs  puerīs  agrīs  virīs  rēgnīs

a. The locative sing. ends in -ī; as, Corinthī, at Corinth: the locative-plu. in -īs; as, Delphīs, at Delphi.

b. Nouns in -īus may have the gen. sing. in -ī instead of -īs and the vocative ends in -ī instead of -īe. Nouns in -īum may have the gen. sing. in -ī. The accent remains as though the longer form were used; as, imperī.

c. Rule for Gender: Nouns in -īum are neuter; others are masculine. Exceptions: Locus, m., place, has its plu. loca, n., places. Vulgus, crowd, is generally neuter.

THIRD DECLENSION

3. The stem ends in a consonant or in -l. The nominative ending is -s or nothing.

I. Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>consuli, m.,</th>
<th>nōmen, n.,</th>
<th>genus, n.,</th>
<th>eques, m.,</th>
<th>caput, n.,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consul</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>race</td>
<td>horseman</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SINGULAR

N. consuli  nōmen  genus  eques  caput
G. consullis  nōminis  generis  equitis  capitisa
D. consullī  nōminī  generī  equitī  capitī
Ac. consulem  nōmen  genus  equitem  caput
V. consuli  nōmen  genus  eques  caput
Ab. consule  nōmine  genere  equite  capite
**GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY**

### PLURAL

| N. | cōnsulēs | nōmina | genera | equitēs | capita |
| G. | cōnsulum | nōminum | generum | equitum | capitum |
| D. | cōnsulibus | nōminibus | generibus | equitibus | capitibus |
| Ac. | cōnsulēs | nōmina | genera | equitēs | capita |
| V. | cōnsulēs | nōmina | genera | equitēs | capita |
| Ab. | cōnsulibus | nōminibus | generibus | equitibus | capitibus |

### II. -ī and Mixed Stems

1. Here belong: **1. Nouns ending in -is or -ēs**, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.
2. Most nouns ending in -ns or -rs (for -nts, -rūs).
3. Monosyllabics ending in -s or -x, when these letters follow a consonant.
4. Neuters ending in -e, -al, -ar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hostis, m., f.,</th>
<th>cliēns, m., f.,</th>
<th>urbs, f.,</th>
<th>vectigal, n.,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enemy</td>
<td>dependent</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>tax</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SINGULAR

| N. | hostis | cliēns | urbs | vectigal |
| G. | hostis | clientis | urbis | vectigālis |
| D. | hosti | clienti | urbī | vectigāli |
| Ac. | hostem | clientem | urbem | vectigal |
| V. | hostis | cliēns | urbs | vectigal |
| Ab. | hoste | cliente | urbe | vectigāli |

#### PLURAL

| N. | hostēs | clientēs | urbēs | vectigālia |
| G. | hostium | clientium | urbium | vectigālium |
| D. | hostibus | clientibus | urbibus | vectigālibus |
| Ac. | hostēs or -īs | clientēs or -īs | urbēs or -īs | vectigālia |
| V. | hostēs | clientēs | urbēs | vectigālia |
| Ab. | hostibus | clientibus | urbibus | vectigālibus |

#### a.
The locative sing. of third declension nouns ends in -i or -e; as, *Carthāgine, at Carthage*: the locative plu. in -ibus; as, *Trallibus, at Tralles.*
III. Irregular Nouns

5. vis, f., force    senex, m., old man

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. vis</td>
<td>virēs</td>
<td>senex</td>
<td>senēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. vis</td>
<td>virium</td>
<td>senis</td>
<td>senum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. vi</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>senī</td>
<td>senibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. vim</td>
<td>virēs or -īs</td>
<td>senem</td>
<td>senēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. vis</td>
<td>virēs</td>
<td>senex</td>
<td>senēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vi</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>senē</td>
<td>senibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Rule for Gender: 1. Nouns in -ō (except -dō, -gō, -iō), -or, -ōs, -er, -es are masculine.
   2. Nouns in -dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -ēs, -ēs, -ys, -x, and those in -s when following a consonant are feminine.
   3. Nouns in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, and -us are neuter.

FOURTH DECLENSION

7. The stem ends in -u; the nominative ends in -us or -ū.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. exercitus</td>
<td>exercitūs</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. exercitūs</td>
<td>exercitūm</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. exercitūi</td>
<td>exercitibus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. exercitūm</td>
<td>exercitūs</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. exercitus</td>
<td>exercitūs</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. exercitū</td>
<td>exercitibus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The dative and ablative plu. of a few nouns end in -ubus.

8. Domus has some forms of the second declension, as below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. domūs</td>
<td>domuum or domōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. domū or domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. domum</td>
<td>domūs or domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. domō or domū</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Locative, domī
Grammatical Summary

a. Rule for Gender: Nouns ending in -us are masculine; those in -ā, neuter; but domus, manus, īdūs are feminine.

Fifth Declension

9. The stem ends in -ē; the nominative ends in -ēs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. diēt</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. diēt</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. diēm</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Rēs and diēs are the only nouns of this declension that are fully declined in the plural. Spēs and acīēs have only the nom. and acc. plu.

b. Rule for Gender: Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is always masculine in the plural and generally so in the singular.

Adjectives

10. First-And-Second Declension

lātus, wide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. lātus</td>
<td>Masc. lātēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. lātā</td>
<td>Fem. lātāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neut. lātum</td>
<td>Neut. lātūm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Miser, wretched

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. miser</td>
<td>Masc. miserōr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. misera</td>
<td>Fem. miserāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neut. miserum</td>
<td>Neut. miserārum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -lus

Nine first-and-second declension adjectives have -lus (usually -lus in alter) in the genitive singular and -i in the dative, otherwise they are regular except that alius has -ud for -um in the neuter. These nine adjectives are: —

alius, another üllus, any uter, which (of two) sōlus, only
alter, the other (of two) nüllus, no neuter, neither tōtus, whole
ünus, one

üllus, any alius, another

III. THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes as regards the number of different terminations in the nominative singular. Adjectives in the comparative degree and the word vetus have consonant stems, others have -i stems.
I. Grammatical Summary

a. One Termination.

vetus, old

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. vēteris</td>
<td>vēteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. vēterī</td>
<td>vēterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. vēterem</td>
<td>vētus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. vētus</td>
<td>vētus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vētere</td>
<td>vētēre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Two Terminations.

fortior, braver

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortiorīs</td>
<td>fortiorīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortiorī</td>
<td>fortiorī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. fortiorēm</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. fortiorē</td>
<td>fortiorē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like fortior are declined all comparatives; but plus, more, is irregular and defective.

plus, more

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. —— plus</td>
<td>plūrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. —— plūris</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ——</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. —— plus</td>
<td>plūrēs or -īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. —— plūre</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complūrēs is declined like the plural of plus except that it may have either complūra or complūria in the neuter.
II. -i Stems

13. a. One Termination.

**potēns, powerful**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. potēns</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. potentis</td>
<td>potentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. potenti</td>
<td>potenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. potentēm</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. potēns</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. potente or -ī</td>
<td>potente or -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Like potēns are declined all present participles and most adjectives of one termination.

b. Two Terminations.

**nōbilis, well-known**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. nōbilis</td>
<td>nōbile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nōbilis</td>
<td>nōbilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nōbili</td>
<td>nōbili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. nōbilem</td>
<td>nōbile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. nōbilis</td>
<td>nōbile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. nōbili</td>
<td>nōbili</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Like nōbilis are declined all adjectives in -is, -e.

c. Three Terminations.

**celer, swift**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. celer</td>
<td>celeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. celeris</td>
<td>celeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. celerī</td>
<td>celeri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. celerem</td>
<td>celerem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. celer</td>
<td>celeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. celerī</td>
<td>celeri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācre</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācre</td>
<td>ācrēs or -is</td>
<td>ācrēs or -is</td>
<td>ācria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācre</td>
<td>ācre</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Like ācer are declined equester, equestrian, pedester, pedestrian, and names of months in -ber.

**COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

14. a. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the base (the genitive singular minus the ending) -ior for the comparative and -issimus for the superlative; as, nōbilis, nōbiliar, nōbiliassimus.

b. Adjectives in -er form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding -īmus to the masculine nominative of the positive; as, ācer, ācriter, ācerrimus.

c. Six adjectives in -lis form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding -limus to the base; as, facilis, facilior, facillimus. The six adjectives are: facilis, easy; similis, like; humilis, low; difficilis, difficult; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, slender.

Other adjectives in -lis are compared regularly.

**15. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

- bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.
- malus, peior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.
- magnus, maior, maximus, great, greater, greatest.
- parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.
- multus, plūs, plurimus, much, more, most.

**16.** Of the following the positive forms are rare:

- (externus), exterior, extrēmus (or extimus), outer, outmost.
- (Inferus), Inferior, infimus (or imus), lower, lowest.
- (posterus), posterior, postrēmus (or postumus), latter, last.
- (superus), superior, suprēmus (or summus), higher, highest.
17. Of the following the positive is lacking:

citerior, citimus, hither, hithermost:
interior, intimus, inner, imost.
prior, primus, former, first.
propior, proximus, nearer, next.
ulterior, ultimus, farther, farthest.

18. COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

Adjectives ending in -us following a vowel (and some others) form their comparatives by the use of magis, more, and their superlatives by the use of maximē, most; as, frumentārius, magis frumentārius, maximē frumentārius.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

19. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives as follows:

1. Positive. a. Most adjectives of the first-and-second declension form a corresponding adverb by adding -ē to their bases, e.g.,

adjective, lātus; adverb, lātē.

b. Most adjectives of the third declension having two or three endings in the nominative singular form a corresponding adverb by adding -iter to their bases, e.g.,

adjective, fortis, -ē; adverb, fortiter.

c. Most adjectives of the third declension having one ending in the nominative singular form a corresponding adverb by adding -ter to their bases; a final t of the base is dropped, e.g.,

adjective, potēns, potentis; adverb, potenter.

2. Comparative. The comparative of an adverb is always the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding adjective, e.g.,

adjective, lātior; adverb, lātius.

3. Superlative. The superlative of an adverb is always the base the superlative of the adjective + ē, e.g.,

adjective, lātissimus; adverb, lātissimē.
IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

20. bene, melius, optimē, well, better, best.
    male, peius, pessimē, ill, worse, worst.
    diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, long (of time), longer, longest.
    facile, facillius, facillimē, easily, more easily, most easily.
    (magnopere), magis, maximē, greatly, more, most.
    multum, plūs, plūrimum, much, more, most.
    nūper, ——, nūperrimē, recently, most recently.
    parum, minus, minimē, too little, less, least.
    prope, propius, proximē, near, nearer, next.
    saepe, saepius, saepissimē, often, more often, most often.

21. Cardinals :

   I. ūnus, -a, -um
   II. duo, -ae, -o
   III. trēs, tria
   IV. quattuor
   V. quinque
   VI. sex
   VII. septem
   VIII. octō
   IX. novem
   X. decem
   XI. ūndecim
   XII. duodecim
   XIII. tredecim
   XIV. quattuordecim
   XV. quindecim
   XVI. sēdecim
   XVII. septendecim
   XVIII. duodēvigintī
   XIX. ūndēvigintī
   XX. vigintī
   XXI. ūnus et vigintī (vigintī ūnus)

XXVIII. duodētrigintā
XXIX. ūndētrigintā
XXX. trigintā
XL. quadrāgintā
L. quinquāgintā
LX. sexāgintā
LXX. septuāgintā
LXXX. octōgintā
XC. nōnāgintā
C. centum
CI. centum (et) ūnus
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a
CCC. trecentī
CCCC. quadringentī
D. quingentī
DC. sescentī
DCC. septingentī
DCCCC. octingentī
DCCCCC. nōngentī
M. mille
MM. duo mīlia

NUMERALS

Numbers made up of two or more orders are expressed as follows:

1. When tens and units are combined, either the units and et precede

CAESAR — RIESS AND JANES — 14
the tens, as, ūnus et viginti, one and twenty; or the tens precede the units without et, as, viginti ūnus, twenty-one.

2. In other combinations of two numbers, the larger precedes the smaller, with or without et, as, centum (et) decem, one hundred and ten.

3. In combinations of three or more numbers, the order is the same as in English, without et, as, tria mília ducenti trigintā quattuor, three thousand two hundred and thirty-four.

Declension of duo and trēs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>duō</td>
<td>duaë</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>duōs, duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs, trīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. For declension of ūnus, see § 11. The cardinals quattuor to centum, inclusive, are indeclinable; ducentī to nōgentī are declined like the plural of lātus (§ 10); mīlle is an indeclinable adjective in the singular, while in the plural it is a neuter noun declined like the neuter of trēs, and is generally spelled with one l.

23. Ordinals: meaning first, second, etc.

prīmus, -a, -um octāvus quīntus decimus
secundus or alter nōnus sextus decimus
tertius decimus septimus decimus
quārtus ündecimus duodēvīcēsimus
quintus duodecimus ündēvīcēsimus
sextus tertius decimus vīcēsimus
septimus quártus decimus vīcēsimus prīmus

24. Distributives: meaning one each, two each, etc.

singuli, -a, -ae quaternī septēnī
bīnī quīnī octōnī
ternī or trīnī sēnī novēnī
dēnī

25. Adverbs. —

1. semel, once 3. ter, three times 5. quīnquiēns, five times
2. bis, twice 4. quater, four times 6. sexiēns, six times
# PRONOUNS

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3d Pers. (Reflex.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ego</td>
<td>tū</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. meī</td>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>sui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi</td>
<td>tibi</td>
<td>sibi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mē</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>sē, sēsē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. —</td>
<td>tū</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. mē</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>sē, sēsē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL

| N. nōs  | vōs  | — |
| G. nostrum | vestrum | sui |
| D. nōbis | vōbis | sibi |
| Ac. nōs  | vōs  | sē, sēsē |
| V. —     | vōs  | — |
| Ab. nōbis | vōbis | sē, sēsē |

### Notes
- The pronoun of the third person is lacking; for it is used is, ea, id (or another demonstrative); or, when reflexive, sui.
- The preposition cum with personal pronouns is used as an enclitic, as, vōbiscum, *with you.*

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

### 1st Pers. meus, -a, -um, *my*
- noster, -tra, -trum, *our*

### 2d Pers. tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one)
- vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one)

### 3d Pers. suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)
- suus, -a, -um, *their* (when referring to the subject)

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hic, this</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

#### 28. is, this, that ; he, she, it

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is ea id</td>
<td>ei, iī eae ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eius eius eius</td>
<td>eōrum eārum eōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eī ei ei</td>
<td>eīs, iīs eīs, iīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum eam id</td>
<td>eōs eās ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eō eā eō</td>
<td>eīs, iīs eīs, iīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 29. idem, the same

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. idem eadem idem</td>
<td>{eīdem eadem eīdem, iīdem, iīdem}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eiusdem eiusdem eiusdem</td>
<td>eōrundem eārundem eōrundem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīdem eīdem eīdem</td>
<td>{eīsdem eīsdem eīsdem, iīsdem iīsdem iīsdem}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eundem eandem idem</td>
<td>eōsdem eāsdem eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eōdem eādem eōdem</td>
<td>{eīsdem eīsdem eīsdem, iīsdem iīsdem iīsdem}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 30. ille, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ille illa illud</td>
<td>illī illae illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. illius illius illius</td>
<td>illōrum illārum illōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. illī illī illī</td>
<td>illīs illīs illīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. illum illam illud</td>
<td>illōs illās illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. illō illā illō</td>
<td>illīs illīs illīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 31. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse ipsa ipsum</td>
<td>ipsī ipsae ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsīus ipsīus ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsōrum ipsārum ipsōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsī ipsī ipsī</td>
<td>ipsīs ipsīs ipsīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum ipsam ipsum</td>
<td>ipsōs ipsās ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ipsō ipsā ipsō</td>
<td>ipsīs ipsīs ipsīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

qui, who

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quô</td>
<td>quå</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

33. a. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

quis, who?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. and Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. quis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quô</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural forms are like those of the relative pronoun.

8. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

The interrogative adjective, qui (what?), is declined like the relative pronoun.

34. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

aliquis, some one, any one

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. aliiquis, aliiqui (adj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alicius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. aliquem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. aliquô</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. aliqui</td>
<td>aliquae</td>
<td>aliquae</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. aliquorum</td>
<td>aliquárum</td>
<td>aliquárum</td>
<td>aliquórum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. aliquós</td>
<td>aliquáš</td>
<td>aliquáš</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35. *quidam, a certain*

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. quidam, a certain one</th>
<th>quaedam</th>
<th>quiddam, quoddam (adj.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. cuiusdam</td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quandam</td>
<td>quandam</td>
<td>quiddam, quoddam (adj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quodam</td>
<td>quodam</td>
<td>quodam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

| N. quidam | quaedam | quaedam |
| G. quarundam | quarundam | qóurundam |
| D. quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |
| Ac. quósdam | quásdam | quaedam |
| Ab. quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

*a. quisque and quisquam use the same case endings as does aliquis.*

### VERBS

#### 36. All regular verbs have three stems: present, perfect, and supin

Upon these three stems are based all the forms of the verb, as follow:

1. On the present stem: —

   - Active: present, imperfect, and future indicative
   - and imperfect subjunctive
   - passive: both tenses of the imperative
   - present infinitive
   - Active: present participle, gerund
   - Passive: gerundive

2. On the perfect stem: —

   - Active: perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative
     - perfect and pluperfect subjunctive
     - perfect infinitive
3. On the supine stem: —

*Active and passive: future infinitive*

- **Active**
  - Future participle
  - Supine
  - Perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative
- **Passive**
  - Perfect infinitive
  - Perfect participle

37.

**FIRST CONJUGATION**

**spectō, look at**

**Principal Parts:** spectō spectāre spectāvi spectātum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectō</td>
<td>spectēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectās</td>
<td>spectēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectāt</td>
<td>spectēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectāmus</td>
<td>spectēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectātīs</td>
<td>spectētīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectānt</td>
<td>spectent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

| spectābam | spectārem | spectābar | spectārer |
| spectābās | spectārēs | spectābāris, -re | spectārēris, -re |
| spectābat | spectāret | spectābātur | spectārētur |
| spectābāmus | spectārēmus | spectābāmur | spectārēmur |
| spectābātis | spectārētis | spectābāmini | spectārēmini |
| spectābant | spectārent | spectābantur | spectārentur |

**Future**

| spectābō | spectābor |
| spectābis | spectāberis, -re |
| spectābit | spectābitur |
| spectābimus | spectābimur |
| spectābitīs | spectābimini |
| spectābunt | spectābuntur |
### GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monui</td>
<td>monuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisti</td>
<td>monueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuimus</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistis</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| monuerunt, -e 
-ere | monuerint |

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monitus sum</td>
<td>monitus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus es</td>
<td>monitus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus est</td>
<td>monitus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniti sumus</td>
<td>moniti simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniti estis</td>
<td>moniti sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniti sunt</td>
<td>moniti sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moniussem</td>
<td>monitus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniusēs</td>
<td>monitus erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniusset</td>
<td>monitus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniuissēmus</td>
<td>moniti erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniusētis</td>
<td>moniti erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moniusissent</td>
<td>moniti erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monitus erō</td>
<td>moniti erima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus eris</td>
<td>moniti eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erit</td>
<td>moniti erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>monē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>monētō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monētō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

| **Pres.**  | monēre |
| **Perf.**  | monuissē |
| **Fut.**   | monitūrus esse | monitum irī |
### GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

#### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>monēns</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>monitus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>monitūrus</td>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>monendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>monendi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>monendō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>monendūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>monendō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUNDIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>monendus, -a, -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### SUPINE

| monitū |

### THIRD CONJUGATION

**regō, rule**

**Principal Parts:** regō regere rēxi rēctum

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regam</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>regor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regās</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>regeris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regat</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>regitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regimus</td>
<td>regāmus</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>regimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitis</td>
<td>regātis</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>regiminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regunt</td>
<td>regant</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>reguntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

| regēbam   | regerem     | Present    | regēbar     |
| regēbās   | regerēs     | Present    | regēbāris, -re|
| regēbat   | regeret     | Present    | regēbātur   |
| regēbāmus | regerēmus   | Present    | regēbāmur   |
| regēbātis | regerētis   | Present    | regēbāmini  |
| regēbant  | regerent    | Present    | regēbantur  |

#### Future

<p>| regam     | regar       |             |
| regēs     | regēris, -re|
| reget     | regētur     |
| regēmus   | regēmur     |
| regētis   | regēmini   |
| regent    | regentur    |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxi</td>
<td>rēxerim</td>
<td>rēctus sum</td>
<td>rēctus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxistī</td>
<td>rēxeris</td>
<td>rēctus es</td>
<td>rēctus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxit</td>
<td>rēxerit</td>
<td>rēctus est</td>
<td>rēctus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēximus</td>
<td>rēxerimus</td>
<td>rēctī sumus</td>
<td>rēctī simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxistis</td>
<td>rēixerītis</td>
<td>rēctī estis</td>
<td>rēctī sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxērunt, -ēre</td>
<td>rēixerint</td>
<td>rēctī sunt</td>
<td>rēctī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxeram</td>
<td>rēxissem</td>
<td>rēctus eram</td>
<td>rēctus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerās</td>
<td>rēxisseās</td>
<td>rēctus erās</td>
<td>rēctus essēas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerat</td>
<td>rēxisset</td>
<td>rēctus erat</td>
<td>rēctus essest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerāmus</td>
<td>rēxisseāmus</td>
<td>rēctī erāmus</td>
<td>rēctī essēamu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerātis</td>
<td>rēxisseātis</td>
<td>rēctī erātis</td>
<td>rēctī essēatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerant</td>
<td>rēxisseant</td>
<td>rēctī erant</td>
<td>rēctī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxerē</td>
<td>rēctus erē</td>
<td>rēctus esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerēs</td>
<td>rēctus erēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerēt</td>
<td>rēctus erēt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerēmus</td>
<td>rēctī erēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerētis</td>
<td>rēctī erētis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerēnt</td>
<td>rēctī erēnt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>rege</td>
<td>regite</td>
<td>regere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>regitō</td>
<td>regitōte</td>
<td>regitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>regere</td>
<td>regī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>rēxisse</td>
<td>rēctus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>rēctūrus esse</td>
<td>rēctum iri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

#### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>regēns</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>rēctus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>rēctūrus</td>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>regendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>regendi</th>
<th>GERUNDIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>regendō</td>
<td>SUPINE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>regendum</td>
<td>Acc. rēctum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>regendō</td>
<td>Abl. rēctū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Third Conjugation, in -īō

capiō, take

**Principal Parts:**

- **Active:** capiō capere cēpi captum
- **Passive:**

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capior</td>
<td>capiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capiās</td>
<td>caperis, -re</td>
<td>capiāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiāt</td>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>capiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
<td>capimur</td>
<td>capiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capiātis</td>
<td>capimini</td>
<td>capiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiant</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>caperem</td>
<td>capiēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>caperēs</td>
<td>capiēbāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>caperet</td>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>caperēmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>caperētis</td>
<td>capiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>caperent</td>
<td>capiēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiēris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēt</td>
<td>capiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>capiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>capiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēnt</td>
<td>capiēntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Grammatical Summary

### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpiō</td>
<td>cēperīm</td>
<td>captus sum</td>
<td>captus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpišēi</td>
<td>cēperīs</td>
<td>captus es</td>
<td>captus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpiūs</td>
<td>cēperīt</td>
<td>captus est</td>
<td>captus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpīmus</td>
<td>cēperīmūs</td>
<td>captī sumūs</td>
<td>captī simūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpišīs</td>
<td>cēperītīs</td>
<td>captī estīs</td>
<td>captī sitīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpīrunt, ëre</td>
<td>cēperīnt</td>
<td>captī sunt</td>
<td>captī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

| cēperam          | cēpissem         | captus eram      | captus essem     |
| cēperās          | cēpisessēs       | captus erās      | captus essēs     |
| cēperat          | cēpisset         | captus erat      | captus esset     |
| cēperāmus        | cēpissemūs       | captī erāmus     | captī essēmus    |
| cēperātīs        | cēpissettīs      | captī erātīs     | captī essētīs    |
| cēperant         | cēpissett        | captī erant      | captī essent     |

### Future Perfect

| cēperō           | captus erō       |
| cēperīs          | captus eris      |
| cēperīt          | captus erit      |
| cēperīmūs        | captī erīmus     |
| cēperītīs        | captī erītīs     |
| cēperīnt         | captī erunt      |

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>cape</td>
<td>capite</td>
<td>capere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>capitōte</td>
<td>capitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

| Pres.     | capere | capīr |
| Perf.     | cēpīsēs | captus esse |
| Fut.      | captūrus esse | captum īri |
**PARTICIPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>capitēns</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>captus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>captūrus</td>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>capiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>capiendī</th>
<th>GERUNDIVE</th>
<th>capiendus, -a, -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>capiendō</td>
<td>SUPINE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>capiendum</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>captum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>capiendō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>captū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FOURTH CONJUGATION**

*audīō, hear*

**PRINCIPAL PARTS:**

- audīō
- audīre
- audīvī
- audītum

**ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīō</td>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audiās</td>
<td>audirīs, -re</td>
<td>audiāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiat</td>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīmus</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
<td>audimur</td>
<td>audiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītis</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
<td>audīmini</td>
<td>audiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiunt</td>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>audiuntur</td>
<td>audiāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

| audīēbam | audirem    | audiēbar   | audirer |
| audiēbās | audiērēs   | audiēbāris, -re | audiērēris, -re |
| audiēbat | audiēret   | audiēbātur  | audiēretur |
| audiēbāmus | audiērēmus | audiēbāmur  | audiērēmur |
| audiēbatīs | audiērētis | audiēbāmini | audiērēmini |
| audiēbatant | audiērent | audiēbāntur | audiērentur |

**Future**

<p>| audiam | audiar |
| audīs  | audiēris, -re |
| audit  | audiētur |
| audiēmus | audiēmur |
| audiētis | audiēmini |
| audiēnt | audiēntur |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Indicative</th>
<th>Active Subjunctive</th>
<th>Passive Indicative</th>
<th>Passive Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audīverīm</td>
<td>audītus sum</td>
<td>audītus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
<td>audīverīs</td>
<td>audītus es</td>
<td>audītus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
<td>audīverīt</td>
<td>audītus est</td>
<td>audītus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvimus</td>
<td>audīverīmus</td>
<td>audītī sumus</td>
<td>audītī simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistis</td>
<td>audīverītis</td>
<td>audītī estis</td>
<td>audītī sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvērunt, -ēre</td>
<td>audīverīnt</td>
<td>audītī sunt</td>
<td>audītī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

| audīveram        | audīvissem        | audītus eram      | audītus essem     |
| audīverās        | audīvisēs         | audītus erās      | audītus essēs     |
| audīverat        | audīvisset        | audītus erat      | audītus esset     |
| audīverāmus      | audīvisēmus       | audītī erāmus     | audītī essēmus    |
| audīverātis      | audīvisētis       | audītī erātis     | audītī essētis    |
| audīverant       | audīvisent        | audītī erant      | audītī essent     |

**Future Perfect**

| audīverō         | audītus erō       |
| audīveris        | audītus eris      |
| audīverit        | audītus erit      |
| audīverīmus      | audītī erimus     |
| audīverītis      | audītī eritis     |
| audīverīnt       | audītī erunt      |

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. audī</td>
<td>audīte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. audītō</td>
<td>audītōte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

| Pres. audīre | audīrī |
| Perf. audīvīsse | audītus esse |
| Fut. auditūrūs esse | auditum īrī |

**Participle**

| Pres. audiēns | Perf. audītūs |
| Fut. auditūrūs | Fut. audiendūs |
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

GERUND

Gen. audiendī
Dat. audiendō
Acc. audiendum
Abl. audiendō

GERUNDIVE

audiendus, -a, -um
SUPINE
auditum
auditū

42. A. DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent Verbs are those which are passive in form but active in meaning. But deponents (1) have some active forms, namely, future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund and supine; and (2) always have a passive meaning in the future passive participle and sometimes in the perfect participle.

CONJUGATION OF DEPONENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj.</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, try</td>
<td>vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear</td>
<td>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow</td>
<td>potior, potīrī, potitus sum, get possession of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnor</td>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>potior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāris, -re</td>
<td>verēris, -re</td>
<td>sequeris, -re</td>
<td>potīris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus</td>
<td>verētur</td>
<td>sequitur</td>
<td>potitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāmur</td>
<td>verēmur</td>
<td>sequimur</td>
<td>potimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāmini</td>
<td>verēmini</td>
<td>sequimini</td>
<td>potimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāntur</td>
<td>verentur</td>
<td>sequuntur</td>
<td>potiuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnābar</td>
<td>verēbar</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>potiēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābor</td>
<td>verēbor</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>potiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus sum</td>
<td>veritus sum</td>
<td>secūtus sum</td>
<td>potitus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus eram</td>
<td>veritus eram</td>
<td>secūtus eram</td>
<td>potitus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus essem</td>
<td>veritus essem</td>
<td>secūtus essem</td>
<td>potitus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōner</td>
<td>verear</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>potiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnārer</td>
<td>verērer</td>
<td>sequerer</td>
<td>poterer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus sim</td>
<td>veritus sim</td>
<td>secūtus sim</td>
<td>potitus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus essem</td>
<td>veritus essem</td>
<td>secūtus essem</td>
<td>potitus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAESAR — RIESS AND JANES — 15
### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>cónāre</td>
<td>verēre</td>
<td>sequere</td>
<td>potire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>cónātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
<td>sequitor</td>
<td>potitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>cónāri</td>
<td>verēri</td>
<td>sequi</td>
<td>potiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>cónātus esse</td>
<td>veritus esse</td>
<td>secūtus esse</td>
<td>potitus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>cónātūrus</td>
<td>veritūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>potitūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLE

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>cónāns</td>
<td>verēns</td>
<td>sequēns</td>
<td>potiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>cónātūrus</td>
<td>veritūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>potitūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>cónātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>potitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pass.</td>
<td>cónandus</td>
<td>verendum</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>potiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnandī, etc.</td>
<td>verendi, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUNDIVE

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnandus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>potiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUPINE

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cónātum</td>
<td>veritum</td>
<td>secūtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cónātū</td>
<td>veritū</td>
<td>secūtū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

A few verbs are deponent only in those forms that are based on the perfect stem.

They are: —

- audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
- gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice
- soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
- fidō, fidere, fisus sum, trust

### 43. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

1. The First Periphrastic Conjugation is formed from the future active participle and the verb sum; as, spectātūrus sum, I am going to look at.
2. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation is formed from the future passive participle and the verb sum; as, spectandus sum, I am to be looked at, must be looked at.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST PERIPHRASTIC</th>
<th>SECOND PERIPHRASTIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>spectätūrus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>spectätūrus erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus fui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus fueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus fuerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SUBJUNCTIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>spectätūrus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus fuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INFINITIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>spectätūrus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>spectätūrus fuisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IRREGULAR VERBS

Conjugation of sum, possum, eō, fiō

PRINCIPAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum, esse, fui, be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possum, posse, potui, be able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō, ire, ī, itum, go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made, happen (pass. of faciō).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. possum is a compound of pot- and sum. fiō is the passive of faciō. Note that i is long before all vowels except e in -er-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
<th>3rd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>eram</td>
<td>poteram</td>
<td>ibam</td>
<td>fiëbam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>erō</td>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>ibō</td>
<td>fiam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fui</td>
<td>potuī</td>
<td>iī (iīi)</td>
<td>factus sum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>fueram</td>
<td>potueram</td>
<td>ieram</td>
<td>factus eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>fuerō</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
<td>ierō</td>
<td>factus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
<th>3rd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>possim</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>fiam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>possem</td>
<td>iem</td>
<td>fierem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
<td>ierim</td>
<td>factus sim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>fuissem</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
<td>iissem (iissem)</td>
<td>factus essem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>fi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>estō</td>
<td>iō</td>
<td>fi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>ire</td>
<td>fieri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fueisse</td>
<td>potuisse</td>
<td>iisse (iisse)</td>
<td>factus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut</td>
<td>futūrus esse</td>
<td></td>
<td>itūrus esse</td>
<td>factum iri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Act.</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>iēns (Gen. euntis)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Act.</td>
<td>futūrus</td>
<td></td>
<td>itūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. Pass.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>factus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pass.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>faciendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eundī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUNDIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eundum</td>
<td>faciendus</td>
<td>-a, -um</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing.</th>
<th>2nd sing.</th>
<th>1st pl.</th>
<th>2nd pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>itum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>itū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY**

**45.**

**Conjugation of volō, nōlō, mālō**

**Principal Parts**

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{volō, velle, volui, be willing} \\
\text{nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling} \\
\text{mālō, mālle, mālui, prefer}
\end{array}
\]

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Volō</th>
<th>Nōlō</th>
<th>Mālō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Volēbam</th>
<th>Nōlēbam</th>
<th>Mālēbam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
<td>mālēbam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Volam</th>
<th>Nōlam</th>
<th>Mālam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam</td>
<td>nōlam</td>
<td>mālam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Volui</th>
<th>Nōlui</th>
<th>Mālui</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volui</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
<td>mālui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Volueram</th>
<th>Nōlueram</th>
<th>Mālueram</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Voluerō</th>
<th>Nōluerō</th>
<th>Māluerō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Velim</th>
<th>Nōlim</th>
<th>Mālim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>velim</td>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>mālim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Vellem</th>
<th>Nōllem</th>
<th>Māllem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>vellem</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
<td>māllem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Voluerim</th>
<th>Nōluerim</th>
<th>Māluerim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nōluerim</td>
<td>māluerim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Voluissem</th>
<th>Nōluissem</th>
<th>Māluissem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nōluissem</td>
<td>māluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Nōlī</th>
<th>Nōlīte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>nōlī</td>
<td>nōlīte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Nōlītō</th>
<th>Nōlītōte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>nōlītō</td>
<td>nōlītōte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Nōluntō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōluntō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Velle</th>
<th>Nōlle</th>
<th>Mālle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>velle</td>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td>mālle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Voluisse</th>
<th>Nōluisse</th>
<th>Māluisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
<td>nōluisse</td>
<td>māluisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Volēns</th>
<th>Nōlēns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volēns</td>
<td>nōlēns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 46. Conjugation of *ferō*, *bear*

**Principal Parts:** *ferō* | *ferre* | *tuli* | *lātum*

### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indicative</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjunctive</strong></th>
<th><strong>Indicative</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjunctive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Pres.</em></td>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>feror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferās</td>
<td>ferris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferat</td>
<td>fertur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferāmus</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferātis</td>
<td>ferimīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Imperf.</em></td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td>ferem</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fut.</em></td>
<td>tuli</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td>lātus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Perf.</em></td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
<td>lātus eram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

| **Pres.**       | fer              | ferte           | ferre           |
|                | fertō            | fertōte         | fertor          |
|                | fertō            | feruntō         | fertor          |

### Infinitive

| **Pres.**       | ferre            | ferri           |
|                | tulisse          | lātus esse      |
| *Fut.*         | lātūrus esse     | lātum īri       |

### Participle

| **Pres.**       | ferēns          | Perp.           |
|                | lātus           | Fut.            |
|                | lātūrus         | ferendus        |

### Gerund

| **Gen.**       | ferendi         |

### Supine

| **Acc.**       | lātum           |
|                | Abl. lātū       |

## 47. Defective Verbs

**Conjugation of *memini, ōdi, coepī***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Principal Parts</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>memini, meminisse, ——, I remember</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ōdi, ōdisse, ——, I hate</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>coepī, coepisse, ——, I have begun</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a. Note that memini and òdi are present in meaning. Their pluperfects and future perfects are imperfect and future in meaning.

b. For the present, imperfect, and future meanings of coepi, forms of incipio are used.

c. With a passive infinitive, coeptus sum is used in place of coepi.

INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>memini</th>
<th>òdi</th>
<th>coepi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>memineram</td>
<td>òderam</td>
<td>coeperam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>meminerō</td>
<td>òderō</td>
<td>coeperō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>meminerim</th>
<th>òderim</th>
<th>coeperim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>meminissem</td>
<td>òdissem</td>
<td>coepissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>mementō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>mementōte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>meminisse</th>
<th>òdisse</th>
<th>coepisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ösūrus esse</td>
<td>coeptūrus esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>ösus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ösūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coeptus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coeptūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

48. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Principal Parts: oportet, oportère, oportuit, it is right, it is proper
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

SYNTAX

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

49. Rule. An appositive or a predicate noun agrees in case with the word it modifies; as, persuādet Casticō Sēquanō, he persuades Cas-ticus the Sequanian (1, 52); qui Celtae appellantur, who are called Celts (1, 2).

CASES

NOMINATIVE

Nominative as Subject

50. Rule. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case; as, Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, Gaul as a whole is divided in three parts (1, 1).

GENITIVE

Genitive with Nouns

51. General Rule. A noun modifying another noun and not meaning the same thing may be put in the genitive case.

Possessive Genitive

52. Rule. The genitive may be used to denote that to which something belongs; as, finibus Belgariīm, by the territory of the Belgians (1, 17); huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this power (I, 332).
   a. This genitive may be used predicatively; as, iūdicum est imperātōris, the decision is the general's (1, 849).

Subjective Genitive

53. Rule. The subjective genitive denotes the person or thing that does something or has a feeling; as, occāsus sōlis, the setting of the sun (1, 24).

Objective Genitive

54. Rule. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling; as, rēgni cupiditās, the desire (of) for royal power (I, 27).
Genitive of the Whole

55. Rule. The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is mentioned. This genitive may depend on any noun, pronoun, adjective, or adverb which suggests part of the whole; as, hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, the Belgians are the bravest of all these (I, 6); eōrum ūna pars, one part of these (I, 15); satis causae, sufficient (of) reason (I, 354).

a. Instead of this genitive, dē or ex with the ablative is generally used with cardinal numerals and with quidam, and may be used with pauci and with superlative adjectives; as, ūnus ē fillīs captus est, one of his sons was captured (I, 492); pauci dē nostrīs, a few of our men (I, 272); proximī ex Belgīs, the nearest of the Belgians (II, 30).

Genitive of Material

56. Rule. The genitive may express the material of which a thing consists; as, multitūdinem hominum, a large number of men (I, 76).

Descriptive Genitive

57. Rule. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing; as, trium mēnsium molita cibāria, meal for three months (I, 87); hōminēs magnae virtūtis, men of great bravery (II, 260).

a. When the adjective of this construction is a numeral, the genitive is called a genitive of measure.

b. This genitive may be used predicatively; as, flūminis erat altitūdō pedum trium, the river's depth was three feet (II, 307).

c. With sum and verbs of rating, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive; as, tantī eius grātiam esse ostendit, he showed that his good will was of such (value) (I, 384).

Genitive with Adjectives

58. Rule. The genitive may be used with some adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, skill, fullness and their opposites; as, bellandī cupidus, fond of warring (I, 38).

Genitive with Verbs

59. Rule. The genitive may be used with verbs of remembering, forgetting, and reminding; as, reminiscētur vēteris incommodi, he should bear in mind the old disaster (I, 231).
60. RULE. The impersonal verb interest governs a genitive case; as, rei públicae interest, it concerns the state (II, 81).

61. RULE. The impersonal verbs miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet and taedet take the accusative of the person affected and the genitive of the cause of the feeling; as, quórum eós paenitet, of which (it repents them) they repent (IV, 5, 3).

62. RULE. The genitive may be used with potior (but see § 86); as, tótius Galliae potiri, to obtain control of all Gaul (I, 30).

**DATIVE**

**Dative of Indirect Object**

63. RULE. The indirect object denotes the person or thing that is indirectly affected by the action of the verb.

   a. Many transitive verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object; as, eí filiām dat, he gives him his daughter (I, 59).

**Dative with Special Verbs**

64. Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin and therefore must take an indirect object instead of a direct object, as shown by the following:—

   RULE. The dative is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust; also believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten and the like; as, civítātī persuásit, he persuaded the state (I, 28).

   a. The above verbs, when used passively, must be impersonal; as, mihi persuádetur, (it is persuaded to me) I am persuaded (I, 792).

   b. The dative is also used with phrases that have a meaning equivalent to the above; as, nón erunt dictó audientēs militēs, the soldiers will not (be listening to) heed the command (I, 784).

   c. Some of the (generally intransitive) verbs may take a direct object along with the indirect; as, id iís persuásit, he persuaded (this to them) them of this (I, 30).

   d. Note that délectó, delight, iubeó, command, iuvó, please, vetó, forbid, are transitive and therefore are exceptions to the rule; as, eós frumentó iuvant, they help them with grain (I, 499).
Dative with Compound Verbs

65. Some verbs when compounded with certain prepositions take on a meaning which requires a dative. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both a dative and an accusative.

**RULE.** The dative of the indirect object is used with some verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pró, sub, super,* and sometimes with *circum;* as, *omnibus praestant, they surpass all (I, 29); finitimis bellum inferre possunt, they are able to make war on the neighbors (I, 37).*

*a.* But note that *aggredior, conveniō, incendō, interclūdō, interficiō, oppugnō* and many others do not govern the dative; as, *qui cum eum convēnissent, and when they had met him (I, 503).*

Dative of Reference

66. **RULE.** The dative may denote the person with reference to whom a statement is true; as, *molitā cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent, order each one to carry meal for himself (I, 87).*

*a.* This dative is sometimes equivalent in meaning to a possessive genitive; as, *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōīcērunt, they threw themselves at Caesar’s feet (I, 565).*

*b.* This dative, when used with verbs of *taking away,* is best translated with *from* and may be called a dative of separation; as, *Aeduīs libertātem ēripient, they will take away liberty from the Aeduans (I, 310).*

Dative of Agent

67. **RULE.** The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the person who has the thing to do; as, *nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi statuit, he decided that (it must not be waited by him) he must not wait (I, 195).*

Dative of Possessor

68. **RULE.** The dative is used with forms of *sum* to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject; as, *démonstrant sibi nihil esse, they prove that (nothing is to them) they have nothing (I, 193).*

*a.* This construction emphasizes the thing possessed, while the genitive of possession (§ 52) emphasizes the person possessing.
Dative of Purpose (or Service)

69. **Rule.** The dative may be used to express the purpose for which an action is done or which a thing serves; as, *locum domiciliō deligunt, they choose a place for an abode* (I, 553).

   a. This dative is often used with a dative of reference (§ 66) denoting the person affected; as, *quem auxiliō Caesari Aeduī miserant, whom the Aeduans had sent as an aid to Caesar* (I, 346).

   b. This dative, when used with forms of *sum*, is best translated as a predicate noun or with the word *as*; as, *Gallīs impedimentō erat, it was a hindrance to the Gauls* (I, 454).

Dative with Adjectives

70. **Rule.** The dative may be used with adjectives meaning *near*; also *fit, friendly, pleasing, similar, and the like, with their opposites; as, proximi sunt Germānis, they are nearest to the Germans* (I, 10).

   a. *Propior* and *proximus*, and the adverbs *propius* and *proxime*, may govern the accusative like prepositions; as, *proximi Rhēnum, nearest the Rhine* (I, 1112).

ACCUSATIVE

Accusative of Direct Object

71. **Rule.** The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative case; as, *quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, of which the Belgians inhabit one* (I, 1).

Cognate Accusative

72. **Rule.** Some verbs may take an accusative of a noun or pronoun of related meaning; as, *cum trīduī viam processisset, when he had advanced a three days’ march* (I, 728).

Two Accusatives with Verbs

73. a. **Two Accusatives with Compound Verbs.**

   **Rule.** 1. Some intransitive verbs, when compounded with *circum* and *trāns*, become transitive and take an accusative of the direct object; as, *ea pars nōndum flūmen trānsierat, this section had not yet crossed the river* (I, 205).

   **Rule.** 2. Some transitive verbs, when so compounded, may take two accusatives, one the object of the verb and one the object of the
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

preposition; as, trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen trādūxerunt, they have led three fourths of the forces across this river (I, 202).

b. Two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing.

RULE. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing; as, Aeduōs frūmentum fāgitāre, he kept demanding grain of the Aeduvans (I, 282).

1. Verbs of asking and demanding frequently express the person by the ablative with a preposition (so always petō and quaeō); as, quaeōt ex sōlō ea, he asks these questions from him alone (I, 320).

c. Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing.

RULE. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like may take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing; as, eum vergobretum appellant Aeduī, the Aeduvans call this man "vergobret" (I, 295).

1. In the passive, the direct object becomes the subject and the predicate accusative becomes a predicate nominative; as, is vergobretus appellātur ab Aeduīs, this man is called "vergobret" by the Aeduvans.

Accusative of Extent

74. RULE. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative without a preposition; as, rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat, he had held the royal power many years (I, 53).

1. Adverbs are sometimes used to denote extent in amount; as, plurimum possunt, they are the most powerful (I, 62); minimum potest, he has very little power (I, 374).

Accusative of Limit of Motion or Place to Which

75. RULE. Limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with ad, in, or sub; as, ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam coēgit, he brought to the trial all his retinue (I, 71).

1. But names of towns and the word domus omit the preposition; as, Rōmam vēnit, he came to Rome (I, 591).

a. Ad is sometimes used with names of towns with the meaning of towards or near; as, ad Genavam pervenit, he arrives near Geneva (I, 114).

Subject Accusative

76. RULE. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative case; as, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, which it has been said the Gauls occupy (I, 15).
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

VOCATIVE

Nominaive of Address

77. Rule. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative case; as, dēsilite, commilitōnēs, jump down, comrades (IV, 25, 6).

ABLATIVE

Ablative of Place from Which

78. Rule. Place from which is expressed by the ablative, usually with ab, dē, or ex; as, ut dē finibus suis exirent, that they go out from their territory (I, 28).
1. But names of towns and the word domus omit the preposition; as, domō exīre possunt, they are able to go out from home (I, 94).
   a. Ab is sometimes used with names of towns with the meaning of from near, from the vicinity of; as, ab Ocelō pervenit, he comes from near Ocelum (I, 175).

Ablative of Separation

79. Rule. Separation may be expressed by the ablative with or without ab, dē, or ex.
   a. This construction is used with both verbs and adjectives of depriving, excluding, freeing, lacking, and the like; as, Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna dīvidit, the Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians (I, 4); cum suis finibus eós prohībent, when they keep them away from their own territory (I, 14); id oppidum vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, he heard that this town was stripped of defenders (II, 209).

Ablative of Point of View

80. Rule. The ablative with ab or ex may be used to denote the position from which something is done or is true; as, continentur ūnā ex parte, they are hemmed in on one side (I, 31).

Ablative of Source or Origin

81. Rule. Source or origin is expressed by the ablative with or without ab, dē, or ex; as, quærēt ex sōlō ea, he asks these questions from him alone (I, 320).
1. Here also may be found the ablatives that denote *parentage* and *material*; as, *orti à Germânis, sprung from the Germans* (II, 46); *nāves factae ex rōbere, ships made out of oak* (III, 13, 3).

**Ablative of Agent**

82. **Rule.** Agency with a passive verb is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*; as, *ā senātū amīcus appellātus erat, he had been called friend by the senate* (I, 54).
For the dative of agent see § 67.

**Ablative of Cause**

83. **Rule.** Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition; as, *grātīā plūrimum poterat, he was very powerful because of his popularity* (I, 152).
1. Cause is frequently expressed by *ob or propter* with the accusative; as, *ob eam rem incitāta, stirred up on account of this matter* (I, 75).

**Ablative of Comparison**

84. **Rule.** The ablative without a preposition may be used after *comparatives in place of quam with the nominative or accusative*; as, *nōn amplius quīnis milibus passuum, not more than five miles* (I, 280).
1. When *quam* is used the two nouns compared are in the same case; as, *nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam imperātor meritus est, the army deserved no less praise than the general* (I, 800).
2. *Plūs, minus, amplius, and longius are often used for plūs quam, minus quam, etc.* as, *fiūmen nōn amplius milia passuum X abest, the river is not more than ten miles distant* (II, 266).

**Ablative of Means**

85. **Rule.** Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *ūna pars continētur fiūmine, one section is bounded by a river* (I, 17).
1. Here also may be found such expressions as: *proelīis contendere, to contend in battles* (I, 13); *insidiis nīti, to rely on ambuscades* (I, 237); *frūmentum fiūmine nāvibus subvehere, to bring grain up (by) the river in (by) ships* (I, 287); *castris sē tenēre, to keep in camp* (I, 813).
Ablative with Deponent Verbs

86. Rule. The ablative is used with ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor and their compounds; as, imperiō potiri, to get control of the government (I, 30); eōdem ūsī consiliō, adopting the same plan (I, 89).
1. But potior may be used with the genitive. See § 62.

Ablative with opus and ēsus

87. Rule. Opus est and ēsus est, meaning there is need, may take the ablative; as, sī quō subsidiiō opus esset, if there should be need of any help (II, 143).

Ablative of Price

88. Rule. With verbs of buying and selling, price is denoted by the ablative without a preposition; as, parvō pretiō redempta, bought at a low price (I, 326).

Ablative of Degree of Difference

89. Rule. The ablative without a preposition is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the degree of difference; as, multō facilius, (easier by much) much easier (I, 99); paucīs ante diēbus, (before by a few days) a few days before (I, 344).

Ablative of Accompaniment

90. Rule. Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum; as, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem cōnfirmāre, to establish peace with the nearest states (I, 47).
1. In military language, the cum may be omitted if the noun is modified by a word that is not a numeral; as, Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs, Caesar followed with all his troops (II, 309).

Ablative of Manner

91. Rule. Manner is expressed by the ablative with cum or a modifier, rarely with both; as, in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, he hurried into Italy with forced marches (I, 169).
1. The preposition and modifier are regularly omitted with iniūriā and iniussū; as, iniussū suō, without his order (I, 352).
2. Sine is sometimes used; as, sine maleficiō iter facere, to make the trip without mischief (I, 120).
Grammatical Summary

Ablative of Attendant Circumstance

92. Rule. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the attendant circumstances of an act or condition; as, imperiō populi Rōmānī, under the control of the Roman people (I, 341).

Ablative of Accordance

93. Rule. The ablative without a preposition is used to express that in accordance with which a thing is done; as, mōribus suis, in accordance with their customs (I, 68).

Ablative of Description

94. Rule. The ablative with a modifier may be used to describe a person or thing; as, hominēs inimicō animō, men of unfriendly disposition (I, 126).

1. This construction may be used predicatively; as, nōndum bonō animō vidēbantur, they did not yet seem of friendly disposition (I, 105).

Compare the Descriptive Genitive, § 57.

Ablative of Specification

95. Rule. The ablative without a preposition may be used to denote that in respect to which a statement is true; as, linguā différunt, they differ in language (I, 3).

Ablative Absolute

96. Rule. A noun and a participle may be used in the ablative independently as a substitute for a clause; as, rēgnō occupātō, after the royal power had been seized (I, 65).

1. Instead of a participle, a second noun or an adjective may be used. Here the lacking present participle of sum is to be supplied and the second noun or the adjective is in a predicate relation; as, Messālā et Piso cōnsulibus, when Messala and Piso were consuls (I, 26).

Ablative of Time When or Within Which

97. Rule. The ablative without a preposition is used to express time when or within which; as, eō tempore, at that time (I, 57); patrum nostrōrum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers (I, 211).

1. The ablative is used rarely to denote duration of time; as, ēa...
tōtā nocte continenter iērunt, *they advanced continuously during that entire night* (I, 493).

**Ablative of Place in Which**

98. **Rule.** Place in which is expressed by the ablative with in or sub; as, in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt, *they carry on war in their territory* (I, 14).

1. But names of towns and the word domus omit the preposition and use the locative if there is one; as, domi, *at home* (I, 331).

2. No preposition is used with ablatives of locus and pars, when modified by an adjective; or with any noun when modified by tōtus; as, Rhodanĭus nōnnullīs locīs trānsitūr, *the Rhone is crossed in several places* (I, 101); tōtīs castrīs, *throughout the entire camp* (I, 770).

**Locative**

99. The locative case is confined to names of towns and the word domus. In the singular of the first and second declensions, the form is identical with the genitive, elsewhere with the ablative. The locative of domus is domi. Examples: Rōmae, *at Rome*; Athēnīs, *at Athens*; Corinthī, *at Corinth*; Delphi, *at Delphi*; Carthāgnī, *at Carthage*; Trallībus, *at Tralles*.

**Prepositions**

**With the Ablative**

100. The following prepositions govern the ablative only; ā, ab, cum, dē, ē, ex, prae, prō, sine.

1. Before a word beginning with h or a vowel, ab and ex are used; elsewhere ā and ē are generally found.

2. Cum is always used as an enclitic with personal and reflexive pronouns and generally with the relative and interrogative.

**With the Accusative and Ablative**

101. a. The prepositions in and sub govern either the accusative or the ablative. With the accusative they denote *place to which*, with the ablative *place in which*.

**With the Accusative**

b. All other prepositions take the accusative only.
ADJECTIVES

102. An adjective is called predicate when it is connected with its noun by a form of sum or verb of similar meaning; as, Gallia est divisa, Gaul is divided (1, 1); an adjective is called attributive when there is no such connecting verb; as, partēs trēs, three parts (1, 1).

Agreement of Adjectives

103. Rule. Adjectives, participles, and adjective pronouns agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; for examples see above.

1. When an attributive adjective modifies nouns of different gender or number, it generally agrees with the nearest; as, vir et cōnsiliī magnī et virtūtīs, a man both of great wisdom and of great courage (III, 5, 2).

Adjectives used as Nouns

104. Adjectives are frequently used as nouns. The meaning is shown by the context or by some word easily understood; as, mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, they send the best known (men) of the state (I, 118); nostrōs lacesserē coepercunt, they began to harass our (soldiers) (I, 275).

Adjectives used as Denoting a Part

105. Some adjectives, mostly superlatives, are used to denote a part. Such are: extrēmūs, infīmus (imīs), medius, primūs, reliquīs, summīs; as, summīs mōns, the highest part of the mountain (1, 405); in colle mediō, halfway up the hill (1, 438).

Meanings of Comparatives and Superlatives

106. Besides the usual English forms,

1. Comparatives may mean too, quite, rather; as, cupidīs īnsecūtī, having followed too eagerly (1, 270).

2. Superlatives may mean very or, when quam is used, the superlative idea is made as strong as possible; as, flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō, by the very wide river Rhine (1, 32); quam maximum numerum, the greatest number possible (1, 45).
4. Quidam, certain, is the most definite of the indefinites; as, habent quásdam rēs, they have certain matters (I, 558).

5. Quisquam, any one, and the adjective ullus, any, occur generally in sentences which are negative or which imply a negative; as, nec quisquam plús quam ego dolōris capit, nor does any one suffer more pain than I (I, 372).

6. Quisque, each one, is sometimes used idiomatically with a superlative; as, nōbilissimi cuiusque liberi, the children of (each most famous man) all the most famous men (I, 607).

Pronominal Adjectives

II. Alius, another, and alter, the other (of two) are frequently used as correlative; as, alius aliā causā illātā, one offering one excuse and another another (I, 759); legiōnēs aliæ aliā in parte hostibus resistēbant, some legions in one direction, others in another were resisting the enemy (II, 367); alterī...alterī, the one body of men...the other (I, 478).

VERBS

Agreement of Verb with Subject

II. Rule. A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

1. A verb may agree with the sense of the subject instead of with the form; as, ut (civitās) exirent, that the state (civīsens) go forth (I, 28).

2. A compound subject generally takes a plural verb but may take a singular verb if the subjects are considered as one; as, Gallōs ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dēvidit, the Marne and Seine (making one boundary) separates the Gauls from the Belgians (I, 4); or the verb may agree with the nearer; as, filiā atque ūnum ē filiīs captus est, his daughter and one of his sons was captured (I, 492).

3. In the compound tenses of a verb, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case; as, pater eius amicus appellātus erat, his father had been called friend (I, 53).

a. A clause or phrase is neuter; as, eam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, (that the Gauls occupy this part has been said) it has been said that the Gauls occupy this part (I, 15).
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

Verbs used Impersonally

115. Verbs may be used impersonally with or without a clause or phrase as subject; as, pugnātum est, they fought (1, 476); see also § 64, a.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

Present Tense

116. The present tense is used
1. Of a general truth; as, omnēs hominēs libertātī student, all men are anxious for liberty (III, 10, 3);
2. Of an action still going on in the present; as, dividit, he divides (simple present), he is dividing (progressive present), he does divide (emphatic present).
   a. The historical present is much used in Latin to enliven the narrative, and may be translated as a past; as, in ēō itinere persuādet Casticō, on this trip he persuaded Casticus (1, 52).

Imperfect Tense

117. The imperfect tense may denote an action
1. As habitual in the past; as, pugnābant, they used to fight, or they would fight;
2. As done or going on in the past; as, pugnābant, they fought (simple past), they were fighting (progressive past), they did fight (emphatic past).

Future Tense

118. The future tense corresponds to the English future but the active periphrastic (§ 166, 2, a) is often used to describe an action that is future to some form of sum; as, quod portātūrī erant, what they were going to carry (1, 85).

Perfect Tense

119. The perfect tense has two uses: —
1. Equivalent to the English past; as, nōbiliōsimus fuit Orgetorix, Orgetorix was the best known (1, 25);
2. Equivalent to the English present perfect; as, supra dēmōnstrāvimus, we have shown above (II, 1).
   a. A few verbs have perfects that are generally translated as pres-
ENTS; AS, nōvī, cognōvī (literally, I have found out), I know; and consuēvī (literally, I have become accustomed), I am accustomed. These verbs have corresponding changes in the pluperfect and future perfect.

b. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of memini, I remember, and ēdi, I hate, have the meanings of the present, imperfect, and future, respectively.

Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses

120. The pluperfect and the future perfect tenses correspond to the past perfect and the future perfect of English.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

121. The present and imperfect subjunctive represent incomplete action, and the perfect and pluperfect represent complete action.

1. In independent clauses, subjunctive tenses have special uses.

2. Tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses represent time which is not absolute but which is relative to the tense of the main verb. For the purposes of this relation, indicative and subjunctive tenses are divided into two classes, as follows: —

a. Primary Tenses: Indicative, present, future, perfect (English present perfect), future perfect; Subjunctive, present, perfect.

b. Secondary Tenses: Indicative, imperfect, perfect (English past), pluperfect; Subjunctive, imperfect, pluperfect.

Sequence of Tenses

122. Rule. In dependent subjunctive clauses, primaries follow primaries and secondaries follow secondaries; as, —

 Primaries:
1. rogō
2. rogābō
3. rogāvi
4. rogāverō
5. quid faciās.*
6. quid fēceris.

1. I ask
2. I shall ask
3. I have asked
4. I shall have asked

what you are doing or what you will do.*
what you did or have done.
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

Secondaries:

5. rogābam
6. rogāvi
7. rogāveram

{ quid facerēs.*
{ quid fēcisses.

5. I asked or was asking
6. I asked
7. I had asked

{ what you were doing or would do.
{ what you had done.

Exceptions:

a. The historical present may be considered either primary or secondary.
b. The perfect subjunctive is sometimes considered secondary. It is especially true in result clauses.
c. For clearness or vividness, Latin often changes the sequence.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Purpose

123. RULE. Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive in

1. Ut (uti) is commonly the introductory word for affirmative purpose; as, sementēs fēcérunt ut cōpia frumentī suppeteret, they sowed that there might be on hand a supply of food (1, 46).

2. Nē is the regular introductory word for negative purpose; onēm aciem suam circumเดดērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerē they surrounded their entire line so that there might not be left any hope (1, 1063).

3. Quō is used as the introductory word if there is a comparative purpose clause; as, castella commūnit quō facilius prohibēre pos he built redoubts that he might be able the more easily to keep (thē back (1, 137).

4. A relative pronoun is used as the introductory word if there convenient antecedent in the main clause; as, diem dicunt, quā (ut diē) omnēs conveniant, they name a day on which (day) all to assemble (1, 108).

Futurity in the subjunctive is often expressed by the active periphrastic conjugation (see § 43, 1). Thus quid factūrus sīs may be used above to express what you will do quid factūrus essēs to express what you would do.
Result

124. Rule. Result is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by ut or ut nōn; as, mōns impendēbat, ut perpāuci prohibēre possent, a mountain overhung so that very few were able to keep (them) back (1, 97).

Characteristic

125. Rule. A relative subjunctive clause may be used to characterize an antecedent which is otherwise undefined.

a. Such clauses are common after expressions that denote existence or non-existence; as, erant duo itinera quibus itineribus exīre possent, there were two roads by which (roads) they could go forth (1, 94).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Temporal Clauses with postquam, etc.

126. Rule. Temporal clauses with postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, cum primum are used with the indicative, generally the perfect; as, postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar subdüxīt, after he had noticed this, Caesar led up his troops (1, 436).

Temporal Clauses with dum, donec, and quoad

127. a. Rule. Temporal clauses introduced by dum (at a certain point of time, while) take the present indicative; as, dum ea conquiritur, ēgressi sunt, while these were being sought for, they started out (1, 508).

b. Rule. Temporal clauses introduced by dum, donec, or quoad (as long as) take the indicative of any tense; as, quoad potuit, restitit, he resisted as long as he could (IV, 12, 5).

c. Rule. Temporal clauses introduced by dum, donec, or quoad (until) take the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an act that is unforeseen; otherwise the subjunctive is used; as, exspectāvit dum militēs convēnērunt, he waited until the soldiers collected; ut spatiōm intercēdere possēt dum militēs convenirent, that a space of time might intervene until the soldiers should collect (1, 128).

Temporal Clauses with priusquam and antequam

128. Rule. Temporal clauses with priusquam or antequam take the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an act that is unfore-
seen; otherwise the subjunctive is used; as, nec prius fugere dēstī-
tērent quam ad flīmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt, and they did not cease to
flee before they came to the river Rhine (I, 1087); priusquam quicquam
cōnārētur, Diviciācum vocāri iubet, before he should try (to do) anything,
he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned (I, 361).

Temporal Clauses with cum

129. Rule. Temporal clauses introduced by cum take the indica-
tive if simply the time or the date of the action is denoted and take the
subjunctive if the circumstances are denoted.

a. The subjunctive is generally used with the imperfect and pluper-
fect tenses and the indicative with the other tenses; as, contendunt
cum suis finibus eōs prohibent, they fight when they keep them out of
their territory (I, 13); cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorī-
x mortuus est, when the state was trying to assert its rights, Orgetorix
died (I, 75).

CAUSAL CLAUSES

Causal Clauses with quod

130. Rule. Causal clauses introduced by quod take the indicative
less the reason is quoted; as, fortissimi sunt Belgae propterea quod
longissimē absent, the bravest are the Belgians because they are the
farthest away (I, 6); inductī sunt quod suam fugam occultāri posse
estimārent, they were influenced because (according to some) they
ought their flight could be hidden (I, 511).

Causal Clauses with quia or quoniam

131. Rule. Causal clauses with quia or quoniam take the indica-
tive; as, quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse
dētur, since we have arrived at this point, it seems not out of place
(I, 11, 1).

Causal Clauses with cum

132. Rule. Causal clauses introduced by cum take the subjunctive;
as, his cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, since they could not
persuade them, they sent ambassadors (I, 149).
Causal Clauses with qui

133. Rule. Causal clauses introduced by forms of qui take the subjunctive; as, dētēstātus est Ambiorīgem qui eius cōnsiliī auctor fuisse, he cursed Ambiorix who (because he) had been the author of this scheme (VI, 31, 5).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

Concessive Clauses with quamquam, etsī, tametsī

134. Rule. Concessive clauses introduced by quamquam and (in Caesar) by etsī, tametsī take the indicative; as, etsī sine ulla peri-culō proelium fore vidēbat, tamen non putābat, although he realised that a battle would be unattended by any danger, yet he did not think (1, 974).

Concessive Clauses with cum or qui

135. Rule. Concessive clauses introduced by cum or by forms of qui take the subjunctive; as, cum ad vespērum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, although the battle waged till evening, nobody could see one of the enemy retreating (1, 482).

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

136. Conditional clauses may be divided into three classes as regards tense, i.e. present, past, future; two classes as regards mood, i.e. indicative and subjunctive.

Indicative Conditions

137. 1. Present: si pugnat, superat if he fights, he conquers.
2. Past: si pugnābat, superābat if he fought, he conquered.
   si pugnāvit, superāvit

3. Future: si pugnābit, superābit if he will fight (fights)
   si pugnāverit, if he will have fought (fights)
   superābit he will conquer.
Note that:  

a. Nothing is implied as to the truth or the falsity of the above. These are sometimes called simple conditions;

b. In 3 above the English present is used where the Latin requires the future or the future perfect. This is sometimes called a future more vivid condition.

138. Rule. Indicative conditions use tenses according to sense.

Subjunctive Conditions

139. 1. Present: si pugnāret, superāret, if he were fighting, he would be conquering.

2. Past: si pugnāvisset, superāvisset, if he had fought, he would have conquered.

3. Future: si pugnet, superet, if he should fight, he would conquer.

Note that: a. In 1 and 2 above the conditions and conclusions are contrary to fact and that the imperfect denotes present time and the pluperfect denotes past time;

b. In 3, the condition and conclusion are doubtfully stated and that the present tense denotes future time. This is sometimes called a future less vivid condition.

140. a. Rule. Contrary to fact conditions use the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses to denote present time and the pluperfect subjunctive to denote past time;

1. With verbs or expressions meaning could or ought, a past tense of the indicative may be used in the conclusion.

b. Rule. Subjunctive conditions use the present tense in both clauses to denote future time.

Mixed Conditions

141. In Latin, as in English, the condition may be of one form and the conclusion of another; as, si hoc fēcit, bene est, if he has done this, it is well.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison

142. Rule. Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by ac si, ut si, quasi, quam si, tamquam si, velut si, take the subjunctive, applying the rule for sequence: as, absentis Ariovistì crūdēlitātem, velut si coram adsit, horrent, they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus absent, as if he were present in person (1, 634).
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

RELATIVE CLAUSES

143. RULE. Relative clauses regularly have their verbs in the indicative, but they may become subjunctive if they in turn depend on another subjunctive; as, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cōgnōscant, that they should find out the things that were being done among them (II, 22).

a. But for subjunctive relative clauses see: § 123, 4, purpose; § 125, characteristic; § 133, causal; § 135, concessive.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

144. Substantive clauses are those which are used like nouns, as the subjects or objects of verbs, as appositives, etc.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose

145. RULE. Verbs that mean ask, command, decide, demand, permit, persuade, urge, take object clauses with ut or nē and the subjunctive; as, civitāti persuāsit ut exīrent, he persuaded the state (citizens) to go forth (I, 28).

a. But iubeō, order, cupiō, desire, vetō, forbid, take the infinitive with subject accusative.

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing

146. RULE. Verbs of fearing take object clauses with nē (affirmative) or ut (negative) and the subjunctive; as, nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur, he feared lest by punishing him he would hurt the feelings of Diviciacus (I, 359); rem frūmentāriam, ut supportāri possēt, sē timēre dicēbant, they said they were afraid that the grain could not be brought up (I, 781).

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Hindering, etc.

147. RULE. Verbs of hindering, preventing, refusing, take object clauses with nē, quōminus or quīn (after negatives) and the subjunctive; as, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit, he saved himself from pleading his case (I, 75).

a. But prohibēō takes the infinitive.
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY 255

Substantive Clauses of Result

148. Rule. Substantive clauses of result may be used as object clauses with verbs of accomplishing, as subjects of certain impersonal verbs, or as appositives of nouns or pronouns; they take ut or ut nōn and the subjunctive; as, quae rēs commeātūs ut ad eum supportāri possent efficiēbat, and this maneuver brought it to pass that supplies could be brought to him (11, 91); his rēbus fīēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur, because of these things it happened that they wandered less widely (1, 36); iūs est belli ut qui vicērunt iīs quōs vicērunt imperent, it is the law of war that those who have conquered control those whom they have conquered (1, 695).

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Doubting

149. Rule. Substantive clauses with quīn are used with negative expressions of doubt or uncertainty; as, nōn est dubium quīn Helvētī plūrimum possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful (1, 62).

a. When dubitā means hesitate it takes a complementary infinitive.

Substantive Clauses with quod

150. Rule. Substantive clauses with quod take the indicative.

a. Quod here may be translated that, the fact that, as to the fact, so far as; as, quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī causā faciō, as to the fact that I am bringing a vast number of Germans over into Gaul, I am doing this for the purpose of strengthening myself (1, 928).

Indirect Questions

151. Rule. Substantive clauses introduced by a question word (sometimes by sī, whether) are indirect questions and take a subjunctive verb; as, in utram partem (flūmen) fluat, iūdicārī nōn potest, it cannot be decided in which direction (the river) flows (1, 200); sī perrum-pere possent cōnātī, after trying (to see) whether they could break through (1, 145).

1. Double indirect questions are introduced by utrum or -ne in the first part and by an in the second. Necne means or not.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

153. Direct discourse quotes the exact words spoken or thought. In English, indirect discourse changes the original words to conform to the verb upon which it depends; as, (Direct) He said, "I am going"; (Indirect) He said that he was going.

Moods in Indirect Discourse

In Latin, the changes in moods are made according to the following rules:

153. Rule. All declarative main verbs become infinitives with subjects accusative in indirect discourse; as, (Direct) Allobrogibus persuādēbimus, we shall persuade the Allobroges; (Indirect) Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs (esse) existimābant, they thought they would persuade the Allobroges (I, 104).

154. Rule. All imperative main verbs become subjunctive in indirect discourse. The negative is nē; as, (Direct) nōlī committere, don't allow; (Indirect) (dīxit) nē committeret, (he said) he should not allow (I, 238).

155. Rule. All real interrogative main verbs become subjunctive in indirect discourse; as, (Direct) quid verēmini? why are you afraid? (Indirect) (quaesīvit) quīd verērentur, (he asked) why they were afraid (I, 796).

1. A statement put into question form for emphasis is called a rhetorical question and employs an infinitive (see § 153); as, (Direct) num memoriam dépōnere possum, I cannot forget, can I? (Indirect) (quaesīvit) num (sē) memoriam dépōnere posse? (he asked) could he forget? (I, 251).

156. Rule. All subordinate clauses in indirect discourse have their verbs in the subjunctive; as, (Direct) sī pācem populum Rōmānum cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt Helvētiī, if the Roman people make peace with the Helvetians, the Helvetians will go into that section; (Indirect) (dīxit) sī . . . faceret, Helvētiēs . . . itūrōs esse, (he said) if the Roman people made, etc., the Helvetians would go, etc. (I, 227).

1. Subordinate clauses which are not considered as a part of the quotation are in the indicative; as, id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrīmē cōnfecerant, illum ūnō diē fécisse intellēxerunt, they realized that he, in one day, had done that which they had done with the greatest difficulty in twenty days (I, 223).
Grammatical Summary

Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse

157. Rule. The time indicated by the infinitive is present, past, or future relatively to the verb on which it depends; as, (Direct) angustós finēs habēmus, we have narrow limits; (Indirect) angustōs sé finēs habēre arbitrábantur, they thought they had narrow limits (I, 40).

1. Verbs of hoping and promising take a future indirect discourse infinitive. Posse often has a future meaning; as, tōtīus Galliæ sēsē potiri posse spērānt, they hope they will be able to get control of all Gaul (I, 66).

2. Contrary to fact conditions in indirect discourse form the conclusion in the active by the use of a future participle with finisse, and in the passive by using futūrum finisse with ut and the imperfect subjunctive; as, respondit sī quid ipse ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum finisse, he replied that if he himself needed anything from Caesar, he would have come to him (I, 666); dixit, si Caesar vēnisset, futūrum finisse ut vincėrētur, he said that if Caesar had come, (it would have happened that he would be conquered) he would have been conquered.

3. Verbs or expressions that mean ability or obligation may have a perfect infinitive in the conclusion; as, respondit nōn finisse difficile, he replied that it would not have been difficult (I, 245).

Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse

158. The regular rule of sequence applies to the use of tenses in the subjunctives of indirect discourse, but the subordinate verb is secondary if either the main verb of saying or thinking or the infinitive is a past tense. However, a primary tense may be used after a secondary for the sake of vividness; as, respondit, cum ea ita sint, sēsē pācem esse factūrum, he replied that, although these things were so, he would make peace (I, 257).

1. The rule for sequence of tenses does not hold in the conditional part of contrary to fact conditions in indirect discourse. The imperfect or pluperfect does not become primary even though it depends on a primary; as, dīcit (or dixit), si Caesar vēnisset, sē eum visūrum finisse, he says (or said) that, if Caesar had come, he would have seen him.
Subjunctive in Implied Indirect Discourse

159. Rule. The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to suggest that it is a quotation; as, Caesar frumentum quod essent policiti flāgitāre, Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he claimed) they had promised (I, 282).

Subjunctive by Attraction

160. Rule. A verb subordinate to a subjunctive clause (or infinitive) and forming an essential part of that clause is often attracted from the indicative to the subjunctive; as, utī comneātū qui supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet, that he might cut Caesar off from the supplies which were being brought up (I, 1007).

Imperative Mood

161. Commands in the second person are expressed by the imperative; as, dēsilite, jump down (IV, 25, 3).

a. A negative command (prohibition) is expressed most commonly by the use of nōli (plu. nōlite) with the present infinitive; as, nōli nōs dēspicere, don’t despise us.

Infinitive

162. The infinitive with or without a subject accusative may be used as the subject or the object of a verb.

The Infinitive without a Subject Accusative

163. 1. As Subject of a Verb.

The infinitive without a subject accusative may be used as subject of forms of sum and of impersonal verbs; as, perfacile est imperiō potiri, it is very easy to get control (I, 29); ut id sibi facere liceat, that it may be allowed (to) them to do this (I, 122).

2. As Object of a Verb (Complementary Infinitive).

The infinitive without a subject accusative may be used as the object of a verb to complete the meaning of that verb. Such verbs are: audeō, coepl, cōnor, cōnstituō, cōnseuēscō, cupiō, dēbeō, dēsīstō, dubitō, inciplō and volō, nōlō, mālō; as, cōnstituērunt ea comparāre, they decided to prepare the things (I, 44).

a. The complementary infinitive is common with possum.
The Infinitive with Subject Accusative

164. 1. As Subject of a Verb.

The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the subject of forms of sum and of impersonal verbs; as, poenam sequi oportebat, (punishment to follow was right) punishment must follow (I, 70).

2. As Object of a Verb.

a. The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the object of verbs meaning allow, command, forbid, etc. Such verbs are: cōgō, iubeō, patior, vetō; as, Orgetorigem causam dicere coēgerunt, they compelled Orgetorix to plead his case (I, 69).

b. This construction is used most commonly with verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, etc., and as such is known as indirect discourse. See §§ 153 ff.

The Infinitive with Subject Nominative (Historical Infinitive)

165. The infinitive when used as a substitute for the imperfect indicative in a main clause takes a subject nominative; as, cotidiē Caesar frumentum flāgitāre, Caesar kept demanding the grain every day (I, 282).

Participles

166. RULE. The time indicated by the participle is present, past or future relatively to the verb on which it depends and, according to the context, may denote cause, manner, concession, time, or circumstance, like a clause; as, haec flēns petiit, he asked these things (while he was) weeping (I, 382); is rēgni cupiditāte inductus consiurātiōnem fēcit, (because he had been) influenced by a desire for royal power, he formed a conspiracy (I, 26).

1. The present participle is not common in Latin. A clause with dum or cum is generally used instead; as, dum morātur, subitō timor exercitum occupāvit, while he was delaying, suddenly fear seized the army (I, 748, 754).

2. a. The future active participle is used with forms of sum to describe an action that is future to that form; as, quod portātūrī erant, what they were going to carry (I, 85). This combined form is known as the First Periphrastic Conjugation.

b. The future passive participle is used

(1) With cūrō and a few other verbs to denote purpose; as, pontem faciendum cūrat, he had a bridge built (I, 221);

(2) As a predicate adjective; as, nōn ferendus, unendurable (I, 661);
(3) With forms of sum, and then denotes obligation or necessity; as, Caesar concédendum (esse) non putābat, Caesar thought that permission ought not to be granted (I, 123). This combined form is known as the Second Periphrastic Conjugation;

(4) For gerundive constructions, see § 168 and § 169.

3. The perfect participle agreeing with a direct object of habēō emphasizes the lasting effect of the action of the participle; as, portōria redēmpτa habet, he kept the import duties (which had been) bought up (I, 325).

a. The perfect participle of a deponent verb sometimes has a passive meaning; as, dēpopulātis agrīa, now that their fields had been laid waste (I, 190).

Gerund

167. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal noun in -ing; as, bellandi cupidūs, fond of warring (I, 38). It is never found in the nominative, and in the accusative only after prepositions.

Gerundive

168. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and is, almost without exception, used where English would employ a verbal noun with a direct object. In Latin the noun is placed in the case the gerund would have had and the gerundive is made to agree; as, ad animōs effeminandōs, to weaken the character (I, 9), instead of ad animōs effeminandum; cupiditās bellī gerendī, fondness for waging war (I, 841), instead of cupiditās bellum gerendī; dē expugnandō oppidō spem, hope of taking the town (II, 170), instead of dē expugnandō oppidum spem.

1. With mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, the gerundive with a like ending is used without regard to gender or number; as, nōn sui colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, they do not leave the enemy a chance for collecting themselves (III, 6, 1).

Uses of Gerund and Gerundive

169. 1. The genitive is used

a. With nouns and adjectives; as, bellandi cupidus, fond of warring (I, 38); facultās itineris faciundi, the chance of making the march (I, 126).

b. With causā and grātiā to denote purpose; as, sui mūniendi
causā, for the sake of strengthening himself (I, 929); speculandī causā, for the sake of spying (I, 1002).

2. The dative is seldom used.

3. The accusative is used with ad to express purpose; as, diem ad dēlīberandum sūmam, I shall take time for deliberating (I, 130); ad eās rēs cōnfienciās Orgetorīx dēligitur, Orgetorix was chosen to complete these matters (I, 50).

4. The ablative is used with prepositions and to denote means or cause; as, in quaerendō reperiēbat, upon inquiring, he found out (I, 343); lapidibus subministrandīs, by furnishing stones (III, 25, 1).

Supine

170. a. The accusative supine is used with verbs that express or imply motion to denote purpose; as, lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxillium, they send ambassadors to ask for aid (I, 184).

b. The ablative supine is used with adjectives to denote specification; as, perfacile factū est, it is very easy to do (I, 60).

Grammatical and Rhetorical Figures

171. 1. Hendiadys consists of the use of two nouns with a conjunction instead of a single modified noun; as, omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, he displays all sorts of cruelties (I, 608).

2. Asyndeton consists of the omission of coördinate conjunctions; as, L. Piso, A. Gabiniō cōnsulibus, when Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius were consuls (I, 110).

3. Litotes consists of the use of two negatives to make an emphatic affirmative; as, nōn irrīdiculē, with much wit (I, 877).

METHOD OF EXPRESSING DATES

172. a. The Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls for that year; as, Messālā et Piso cōnsulibus, in the year when Messala and Piso were consuls (i.e. 61 B.C.) (I, 26).

b. Months were designated by the use of adjectives, as follows: Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtiūs, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius, Quīntīlius (Iūlius), Sextīlia (Augustus), September, Octōber, November, December.

c. Days of the month were reckoned backward from three points in the month, as follows: —

1. Kalendae, which fell upon the first of the month;
2. *Nōnæ*, which fell upon the *fifth* (except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the *seventh*);

3. *Īdūs*, which fell on the *thirteenth* (except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the *fifteenth*).

173. In reckoning days of the month, the Romans counted both ends of the series; for instance, they would have said that Wednesday was the fourth day before Saturday and the third of January was known as the third day before the Nones (which fell on the fifth). Hence the following:

Kalendis Iānuāriīs or Kal. Iān. = on Jan. 1.

dīē quārtō ante Nōnās Iānuāriās, or, more commonly, ante diem quārtum Nōnās Iānuāriās, which was generally written in abbreviated form; as, a. d. IV. Nōn. Iān. = on Jan. 2.

prīdíē Nōnās Iānuāriās or prīdíē Nōn. Iān. = on Jan. 4.


174. Formulae for translating Roman dates into English:

1. Falling after the Ides. For example:


   In general add two to the number of days in the earlier month and subtract the given number.

2. Falling after the Calends or Nones. For example:

   a. d. VII. Īd. Apr. The English date = 13 (Ides of Apr.) + 1 (for counting both ends) − 7 (the given number) = Apr. 7.

   In general add one to the date on which the Nones or Ides fall and subtract the given number.

**Roman Names**

175. A Roman generally had three names:

   praenōmen, first or given name;

   nōmen, name of the gens to which he belonged;

   cognōmen, name of the family to which he belonged.

Thus the name Gāius Iūlius Caesar denotes Gaius of the Julian gens or house and of the family of Caesar.

a. A foreigner on becoming a Roman citizen took the praenōmen and nōmen of his Roman patron and added his own name as a cognōmen; as, C. Valerius Cabūrus (I, 992).
WORD LIST

The following list is based on Lodge's Vocabulary of High School Latin. The words in italics appear in Caesar ten or more times — those in Roman type appear five to nine times.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRELIMINARY</th>
<th>appello</th>
<th>cum (prep.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gracilis</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>contineō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōngenti</td>
<td>instituō</td>
<td>bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaternī</td>
<td>inter</td>
<td>gerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnquīēs</td>
<td>sui</td>
<td>dē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septendecim</td>
<td>differō</td>
<td>causa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>ab</td>
<td>quoque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tredecim</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>reliquus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undecim</td>
<td>et</td>
<td>virtūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| BELLUM GALlicUM      | foris   | ferō        |
| Book I               | proptereā| cofidiānus |
| i. sum               | procul  | proelium    |
| omnis                | atque   | contendō    |
| dīvidō               | prōvincia| cum (conj.)|
| in                   | longus  | aut         |
| pars                 | absum   | suus        |
| trēs                 | parvus  | finis       |
| quī                  | -que    | prohibēō    |
| unus                 | ad      | obtineō     |
| incolō               | is      | dicō        |
| alius                | mercātor| initium    |
| tertius              | saepe   | captō       |
| ipse                 | animus  | ōceanus     |
| lingua               | pertineō| attingō     |
| noster               | prope   | etiam      |

263
| septentriō | finitimus | dücō |
| orior | inferō | annus |
| inferus | possum | profectiō |
| spectō | homō | deligō |
| sōl | bellō | legātiō |
| mōns | cupidus | suscipiō |
| occāsus | magnus | fīlius |
| 2. apud | prō | pater |
| nōbilis | multitūdō | multus |
| régnum | autem | senātus |
| indūcō | angustus | populus |
| nōbilitās | habeō | amicus |
| faciō | mille | occupō |
| cīvitās | passus | ante |
| persuādeō | ducentī | item |
| ut | quādrāgintā | frāter |
| cópia | latītūdō | tempus |
| exeō | octōgintā | accipiō |
| praestō | pateō | idem |
| tōtus | 3. addūcō | cōnor |
| imperium | auctōritās | fīlia |
| potior | permoveō | dō |
| facilis | cōnstitūō | ille |
| undique | proficiōscor | probō |
| locus | comparō | perficiō |
| nātūra | carrus | nōn |
| ex | quam | quīn |
| lātus | numerus | exercitus |
| altus | iter | conciliō |
| ager | frūmentum | ōrātiō |
| alter | pāx | fīdes |
| lacus | amicitia | iūs |
| rēs | cōnfirmō | iūrō |
| fīō | cōnsciō | per |
| vagor | saīs | firmus |
spērō
ēnūntiō
mōs
cōgō
sequor
oportet
ignis
dīēs
decem
cliēns
condūcō
nē
ob
incitō
arma
magistrātus
neque
suspičiō
mors
post
nihil
ubi
iam
parō
oppidum
duodecim
vīcus
quadringentī
prīvō
aedificium
incendō
portō
domus
spēs
tollō
periculum
subeō
mēnīs
quīisque
iubeō
ūtor
cōnsilium
trānseō
oppugnō
recipiō
socius
omninō
duo
vix
singulī
expediō
pācō
fluō
nōnnūllus
vadum
pōns
vel
nōndum
bonus
videō
existimō
vis
eō
patior
ripa
conveniō
quintus
ulterior
perveniō
mīles
imperō
legō
adventus
cernō (certus)
leggō (leggatus)
mittō
princeps
sine
ullus
maleficium
nullus
rogō
voluntās
licet
memoria
teneō
occidō
pellō
sub
iugum
concēdō
putō
facultās
temperō
iniūria	tamen
spatium
intercēdō
dum
respondeō
sumō
si
quis
| 39. | magnitudo | exercitatio | perturbō | tribunus | remanō | singō | centurio | timidus | audio | 40. | ordō | cur | temerē | officium | perspicio | impello | ego | inermis | armō | pterusque | palus | disperso | difficultas | simulatio | brevis | desum | avaritia | an | decimus | cohortes | indulgeō | 41. | quinquaginta | 42. | ultrō | pedes | interpōnō | dētrahō | 43. | tumulus | aequet | minus | doceō | aditus | praemium | consulō | afferō | remitto | at. | 44. | decertō | dētrimentum | suspicor | opprimō | deducō | regio | labor | 45. | sententia | dēserō | dignoscō | redigō | lapis | etsi | iniciō | 46. | adulescens | longinquus | conspicio | conclamō | catena | 47. | continuus | producō | genus | totidem | velōx | versor | durus | concurreō | circumsistō | prodeo | celeritas | cursus | adaequō | idoneus | 50. | paulum (paulō) | prōgredior | sors | 51. | species | pandō | 52. | quaestor | cornū | excipio | premō | subsidium | 53. | tegum | vertō | fugio | nanciscor | nātiō | trini |vincio | trahō | incidō | hospes | ter | statim | necō | reservō |
incolumis
54. aëstás

Book II

1. crèber
rúmer
coniúrō

2. incē
inciπīō
consītō
prōvideō

3. opīnīō
consentīō

4. expellō
explogō
dēferō

5. liberālis
prōsequor
dīligō

6. oppugnātiō
iacē
nūdō
testūdō
submittō

7. paulisper
adeō

8. frōns

9. neuter

10. levis
deficiō

appropinquō

11. strepitis

properō
subsequor
prior
cūmār

12. vacuus
vīnea
agger
turris

13. nāscor

14. diessus

15. mora
dēdō
vinum

16. adiuvō
pedester
praedor
arbōr
rāmus
praebēō

17. nōminō
contrārius
stātiō
cedō
lateō
dēcurrō

18. vacuus

19. discessus

20. tūba
administrō

dēveniō
adīgō
dīmicō
 accommodate

21. mora

22. dēnsus

23. nōnus
exanimō
compellō (3)
octāvus

24. respiciō
praeceps
fremitus

25. urgeō
vir
tardus

26. nōminō
contrārius
statīō
cedō
lateō
dēcurrō

27. prōcumbō
praefērō
insistō

28. rūpes
duplex
pondus
saxum
trabs

29. extrēmō

30. extrēmō
onus

31. quīvis

32. cēlō

33. pellis
eruptiō
vēndo

34. maritimus
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

The references are to sections in the Grammatical Summary. Words to be omitted in Latin are in parentheses, words which are explanatory are in brackets.

The editors recommend that the Exercises in Latin Prose Composition be used largely as oral rather than as written lessons. The sentences are purposely made short and are intended simply as a basis of drill in forms and syntax. Oral drill brings about this result much more effectively than written work. It is suggested that the sentences be read by the instructor and the Latin given by the pupil with book closed. To promote independence and facility, slight changes may be made in tenses of verbs, number of nouns, etc.

LESSON I

Predicate Noun and Appositive: 49.
Agreement of Verb: 114 with 1 and 2.
Tenses of Incomplete Action: 116, 117, 118.

Exercise

1. This province is a part of Gaul. 2. Gaul has not many rivers. 3. One river is the Seine; another, the Marne. 4. The Seine is a river of Gaul. 5. Two rivers, the Rhone and the Rhine, separate one side [pars]. 6. These were long and deep rivers. 7. The Belgians inhabit this part of Gaul. 8. The Gauls, a tribe of Gaul, keep out the Helvetians. 9. The Helvetians were a brave tribe. 10. The Gauls and Helvetians were brave tribes. 11. The languages and customs differed. 12. The territory of the Helvetians, a brave tribe, had many mountains. 13. Orgetorix was a chieftain of the Helvetians. 14. The Helvetians will start out and will wage many wars. 15. The citizens of this territory will go forth.
16. A large number of men will seize a part of Gaul, a fertile land. 17. Wars will be often waged. 18. (There) will be many battles. 19. Many nobles will be taken (as) hostages. 20. Orgetorix and the Helvetians will occupy this territory.

LESSON II

Predicate and Attributive Adjectives: 102, 103.
Agreement of Adjectives: 103, 114, 3 and a.
General Rule for the Genitive: 51.
Tenses of Complete Action: 119, 120.

Exercise

1. The influence of Orgetorix was great. 2. The people prepared many carts and troops. 3. Peace and friendship had already been established. 4. (It) had been decided to undertake the journey. 5. The roads were not easy. 6. (There) were wide lakes and rivers. 7. To prepare all the grain and carts was not easy. 8. But the neighboring nations and tribes were friendly. 9. Casticus, a Sequanian, and (his) father had been called friends of the Roman people. 10. And the Roman senate and people had called the Aeduans friends. 11. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, was the brother of Diviciacus. 12. Both Casticus and Diviciacus have been chosen leaders of armies. 13. (It) had been decided to accept both Aeduan and Sequanian troops. 14. Orgetorix and (his) friends will be made leaders of these troops. 15. The Helvetians found out Orgetorix's plan. 16. This plan was decided (upon). 17. All the clients and friends of Orgetorix were brought together. 18. (It) was easy to save him. 19. The magistrates collected large armies and troops. 20. All these things are known.
PROSE COMPOSITION

LESSON III

Agreement of the Relative Pronoun: 111.
Demonstrative Pronouns: 110.
Indirect Object: 63.

Exercise

1. The speech which Orgetorix had delivered influenced the Helvetians. 2. He announced to them that which had been decided (upon). 3. Those to whom arms have been given will go forth. 4. They will leave the villages and buildings which have been set-on-fire. 5. The Boii, who had many towns, and the Rauraci too, will go forth. 6. The former were neighbors; the latter (were) allies. 7. (There) are two rivers which they will cross. 8. One is wide and deep; the other has several fords. 9. The former is called the Rhine; the latter the Rhone. 10. Four hundred towns and villages will be left. 11. The former were large and well-known. 12. Grain was given to all those who will start out. 13. All these (men) to whom grain has been given will start out. 14. They choose Geneva, which is a well-known town of the Helvetians. 15. They had already prepared carts and grain which had been purchased. 16. They will cross the bridges and fords which you have seen. 17. Orgetorix, who has been chosen leader, will win the royal-power. 18. The Helvetians, whose army has been collected, will choose the easier road. 19. These Helvetians, who are a brave tribe, will seize many towns and villages of Gaul. 20. The width of that territory which is called Gaul is great.
LESSON IV

Reflexive Pronoun and Adjective: 108.
Possessive Adjectives.
Possessive Genitive: 52.

Note that

a. The reflexive possessive suus must be used when the English possessives
his, her, its, their, refer to the subject of the verb. Remember that suus is an
adjective and hence must agree with the noun it modifies and not with the
noun to which it refers; as, mātre suam vīdit, he saw his mother.
b. The genitive of is is regularly used when the English possessive does
not refer to the subject; as, mātre eius vīdit, he saw his (i.e., another’s)
mother.

Exercise

1. The Helvetians themselves will make a journey
through our province. 2. This (fact) was announced to
Caesar himself, who had already sent his army. 3. Caesar
himself started out. 4. His arrival was announced to all
the Helvetians’ chieftains. 5. The Boii had been made
allies of the Helvetians. 6. The Helvetians sent their
best-known (men) (as) ambassadors. 7. We shall make
our journey through your province without injury.
8. (There) is no other road left. 9. Caesar sent away
the ambassadors who had said these (things) to him.
10. Meanwhile his soldiers constructed a long wall and
ditch. 11. They also built redoubts which kept out the
Helvetians’ troops. 12. Dumnorix had great influence
among the Sequanians and he was a friend of the Helve-
tians. 13. Orgetorix, the Helvetian, had given him his
daughter. 14. (It) was decided to go through the Sequa-
nians’ territory. 15. Caesar replied to the ambassador who
had reported this plan to him. 16. You will try the road
through the Sequanians. 17. But I shall keep your troops
PROSE COMPOSITION

away. 18. The Aeduans themselves have asked (for) aid which I shall give to them. 19. My army will defeat your army. 20. The Helvetians' ambassador announced Caesar's reply to his (friends).

LESSON V

Extent of Time and Space: 74.
Time When and Within Which: 97.

Exercise

1. Within two days, three cantons of the Helvetians crossed the river. 2. At that time, the other men were left behind. 3. Caesar pursued these for many miles and killed them. 4. These men, within the memory of our fathers, had killed Cassius the consul. 5. The Helvetians at this time sent another embassy, of which Divico was chief. 6. For several years Divico had been a leader of the Helvetians. 7. You have done in one day that which we have completed in twenty days. 8. The Romans themselves have not defeated our brave troops. 9. Within a short time, we shall defeat the Romans. 10. To Divico Caesar pointed out the many wrongs of the Helvetians. 11. For many months you harassed the Aeduans, our friends. 12. And within a few days you have attempted a journey through our province. 13. Caesar demanded (as) hostages many sons and daughters of the leaders. 14. But the Helvetians did not give the hostages that Caesar demanded. 15. Both the Romans and the Helvetians moved camp on the next day. 16. Scouts were sent ahead in the third watch. 17. The Romans pursued the enemy for ten miles and sustained a great loss. 18. Then both armies marched fifteen days. 19. Neither
Caesar nor the Helvetians' chieftain was conquered. 20. Within a brief space of time, they will fight again.

LESSON VI

Place to Which: 75.
Place from Which: 78.
Place in Which: 98, 99.

Exercise

1. The Aeduans did not give Caesar the grain which they had promised. 2. The grain was not yet ripe in the fields. 3. The boats, in which was Caesar's supply, were on the River Saône. 4. The Helvetians had turned away from the river. 5. Caesar did not depart from them. 6. The Aeduans had not helped Caesar at this critical time. 7. Liscus, who had been summoned to Caesar, replied. 8. In our territory, (there) are some powerful leaders. 9. They will not bring the grain to the Romans. 10. These things were said to Caesar in his camp. 11. Dumnorix, who at this time was at Geneva, had been powerful for many years. 12. He was the brother of Diviciacus, whom Caesar summoned from home. 13. Caesar pointed out those (things) which had been said in the council of the Gauls. 14. You have not brought the grain from Geneva nor from the other parts of the territory. 15. My soldiers will go to the Aeduans and to-the-vicinity-of Geneva. 16. In those places they will see a great supply of grain. 17. Other soldiers will be sent to my army from-near Rome. 18. For I have many friends at home who will come to Gaul. 19. The (men) who are now here, I shall send home. 20. Your brother has returned to Geneva, but I shall not punish him.
LESSON VII

Direct Questions.
Indirect Questions: 151.
Sequence of Tenses: 121, 122.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Questions are divided into

A. Direct.
B. Indirect.

A. Direct questions may be subdivided into
(1) Those answerable by yes or no.
(2) Those not answerable by yes or no.

1. Those answerable by yes or no use
   a. The enclitic -ne attached to the emphatic word (placed first) when the
      answer is not hinted in the question; as, venietne Caesar? will
      Caesar come?
   b. The introductory word nönne when the answer yes is hinted; as,
      nönne Caesar veniet? will not Caesar come?
   c. The introductory word num when the answer no is hinted; as, num
      Caesar veniet? Caesar will not come, will he?

2. Those not answerable by yes or no use an interrogative pronoun, adjective,
or adverb; as, quis veniet? who will come? qui homō veniet?
what man will come? ubi homō veniet? when will the man come?

B. Indirect questions are direct questions quoted indirectly and used as
   substantive clauses with a verb that expresses an interrogative idea,
   and may be subdivided into
(1) Those which, in the direct form, are answerable by yes or no.
   These are introduced by num or -ne; as, rogat num veniat, he
   asks whether he is coming.
(2) Those which, in the direct form, are not answerable by yes or no.
   Direct questions introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective,
or adverb use, upon becoming indirect, the same
   introductory word; as, rogat quis veniat, he asks who is
   coming.

Exercise

1. What did Caesar do on the next day? 2. He found out whether he could ascend the mountain. 3. Did he
send Considius from the camp to the mountain? 4. Considius did not find the enemy on the mountain, did he? 5. Didn’t Considius see the Roman army at daybreak? 6. Caesar asked whom he had seen. 7. Considius did not find out whether the enemy was there. 8. But late in the day Caesar learned who was there. 9. On the next day, he started out for Bibracte. 10. You know, don’t you, whether he made forced marches? 11. Did he remain there many days? 12. The Helvetians tried to find out where Caesar would find a supply of grain. 13. He will ask whether the neighbors will give him grain. 14. Will he not leave his baggage in that town? 15. Have the Aeduans always been called friends of Caesar? 16. Don’t you know how large a number of soldiers the Aeduans have sent to Caesar? 17. He asked whether they would also fortify his camp. 18. They will find out how powerful Caesar is. 19. Then they will show how they will help him. 20. Will not Caesar draw up a battle line within a few days?

LESSON VIII

Purpose Clauses with ut and nē: 123 with 1 and 2. alius and alter: 113.

Exercise

1. Caesar had demanded the help of the Aeduans. 2. Their forces had crossed to the other bank of the river that they might help him. 3. They chose a prominent man that he might be leader of their troops. 4. Caesar had come into the Helvetians’ territory to conquer them. 5. He had brought some (men) from Rome, others from the Roman province. 6. This had been done so that the
Helvetians might not cross the Rhone into our province. 7. The territory of the Helvetians was on one side [pars] of the mountains, our province was on the other. 8. Some neighbors of the Helvetians were their friends, others (were their) enemies. 9. Caesar had pitched his camp near [ad] Bibracte so that he might have sufficient [of] grain. 10. A line of battle was drawn up so that Caesar might withstand the enemies’ charge. 11. The battle was (a) fierce (one) and many Helvetians were captured. 12. Some were slain, others were made slaves. 13. The rest are sent home that they may rebuild the towns and villages which have been set-on-fire. 14. The men and women who returned home were few, were they not? 15. They will rebuild their towns so that they may keep out the Germans. 16. Caesar had fought fiercely so that the Helvetians might not try again to cross the Rhone. 17. He had not come to seize their lands. 18. One army conquered, the other suffered defeat. 19. This battle was considered the fiercest of the entire war. 20. Caesar sent a message to Rome to announce the victory to the senate.

LESSON IX

Ablative of Separation: 79 with a.
Ablative of Source (Origin): 81 with i.
Ablative of Agent: 82.
Verbs of Fearing: 146.

Exercise

1. The Helvetians had been conquered by Caesar. 2. Ambassadors from many states came to Caesar to ask (for) peace. 3. He asks why the Helvetians have left their homes. 4. They had done this that they might have
other states as neighbors. 5. The Gauls alone will not keep them out of their territory. 6. Will not help be given to them by the Roman people? 7. Ariovistus, who was sprung from the Germans, had come into the Gauls' territory. 8. In a short time, he will drive out all the Gauls from their fields. 9. Will you not send this man away from Gaul? 10. Caesar wonders what the cause of these things is. 11. These injuries arose from Ariovistus's haughty character. 12. The Sequanians feared that Ariovistus would not depart from their towns. 13. Caesar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus that he might cease from his wrongdoing. 14. The Aeduans, often called brothers by the Romans, had been deprived of their fields. 15. Even the children were taken from their homes (as) hostages. 16. Caesar fears that the Germans may cross the Alps into Italy. 17. The Sequanians feared that Ariovistus might not abstain from battle. 18. Don't you know when [at what time] we shall be free of Ariovistus? 19. We fear that we may suffer his rule many years. 20. Only the Rhone separates our province from the Sequanians.

LESSON X

Ablative of Comparison: 84.
Ablative of Degree of Difference: 89.
Idiomatic Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives: 105, 106.

Exercise

1. Ariovistus had more soldiers than Caesar. 2. But Caesar's soldiers were much better [more] prepared. 3. Caesar asked Ariovistus whether he would overlook the kind deeds of the Romans. 4. Then Ariovistus replied very haughtily. 5. He had been in Gaul more years than
Caesar.  6. His army was braver than Caesar's.  7. The barbarians had a very great amount of grain.  8. Caesar was many miles further from his (own) supply.  9. And so he prepared his army as quickly as possible. 10. He hastened to Vesontio, a rather large town. 11. Vesontio was a larger town than Bibracte. 12. At Vesontio (there) were stronger fortifications than at other places. 13. A wall that was many feet higher had been placed around the town. 14. In the middle of the town (there) was quite a high hill. 15. A redoubt, as strong as possible, had been built on the top of this hill. 16. Caesar feared that Arivostus might arrive there first [prior]. 17. And so he hastened that he might seize the arms that were there. 18. At this time Arivostus was more than ten miles away. 19. He had marched very rapidly, but Caesar had gone more rapidly. 20. Caesar came to this town a little earlier than Arivostus.

LESSON XI

Ablative of Cause: 83.
Ablative of Means: 85.
Result Clauses with ut and ut non: 124.

Exercise

1. On account of the grain supply, Caesar's army delayed for a few days near Vesontio. 2. The Romans learned from the replies of the traders how brave the Germans were. 3. For this reason, so great a fear seized the army that the minds of all were disturbed. 4. This fear first arose from the tribunes who had followed Caesar out of friendship. 5. Some, however, were influenced by (a sense of) duty. 6. The former are afraid that the enemy may put them to death. 7. The latter will stay in the
camp that there may be no [not be any] suspicion of cow-ardice. 8. Because of their cowardice many, throughout the entire camp, were panic-stricken. 9. They feared that the grain might not be brought. 10. This had been re-
ceived from neighboring tribes. 11. In the farthestmost (parts of the) camp, some were grieving on account of their danger. 12. Others were so panic-stricken that they did not restrain their tears. 13. Were not the centurions much less cowardly than the tribunes? 14. By means of a speech, Caesar strengthened their courage. 15. We shall go out from this town which is surrounded by a river. 16. With our carts we shall carry as large a supply of grain as possible. 17. We conquered this same tribe many years before, so that it is not proper to fear them now. 18. They defeated the Gauls more by strategy than by bravery. 19. But our armies will never be captured by this means. 20. I shall break camp at once, so that I may find out what legions will follow.

LESSON XII

Ablative with Deponent Verbs: 86.
Infinitive as Subject: 162, 163, 1, 164, 1.
Infinitive as Object: 162, 163, 2 and a, 164, 2 and a, b.

Exercise

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion desired to follow Caes-
sar. 2. (It) was not necessary (for) Caesar to order them to march. 3. They were accustomed to undergo dangers. 4. On this account they were willing to start out at once. 5. They were not afraid that (there) was a scarcity of food. 6. And they were prepared to go by whichever road (it) had been decided to send them. 7. And so he ordered
Diviciacus to find out what road was the best. 8. They employed Diviciacus as guide and marched for seven days. 9. Ariovistus's troops at this time were not more than twenty miles away. 10. Caesar had come nearer so that Ariovistus desired to hold a conference. 11. (It) was decided by Caesar to do that which Ariovistus proposed. 12. Ariovistus was unwilling to bring to the conference any foot-soldiers. 13. And so Caesar did not hesitate to use his regular soldiers. 14. (It) seemed to him to be suitable to place them on horses. 15. For he did not dare to intrust his safety to the cavalry of the Gauls. 16. That he might be able to do this, he ordered many horses to be procured. 17. Therefore his soldiers secured all the Gallic horses, so that he had a very strong guard. 18. Thus he had the best possible guard. 19. For Ariovistus was prepared to employ treachery. 20. Because of these things, was it not proper (for) Caesar to use all his prudence?

LESSON XIII

Ablative of Accompaniment: 90.
Ablative of Manner: 91.
Ablative of Attendant Circumstance: 92.

Exercise

1. With these horsemen, Caesar said he would go to the conference. 2. (It) was reported that the conference was (attended) with great danger. 3. Ariovistus was ready to attack Caesar with great violence. 4. For this reason, Caesar had brought with him the tenth legion, which was well-known for its bravery. 5. All except a few men were further than two hundred paces away. 6. Ariovistus says that he is unwilling to come under any other plan.
7. Caesar will not dare to come without the tenth legion. 8. This legion at all times fought with the greatest bravery. 9. Because of Caesar's influence, Ariovistus had been called king by the Romans. 10. Caesar showed how the Aeduans had secured the control of Gaul. 11. He also said that they had held this power many years. 12. He said that the Romans would at all times help their allies. 13. Don't you think that we shall defend them with our greatest strength? 14. You will attack them with great danger. 15. A larger number of Germans will never cross the Rhine with our consent. 16. Ariovistus replied that these fields had been given him by the Gauls themselves. 17. I say that I have not accepted tribute from them wrongfully. 18. Do you realize that all their troops were defeated by my soldiers with great loss? 19. This (fact) shows why they have with great willingness paid me tribute. 20. With my army, I came into Gaul many years earlier than the Roman people.

LESSON XIV

Ablative (and Genitive) of Description: 94 with 1; 57 with a, b, c. Ablative of Specification: 95. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse: 156.

Exercise

1. Ariovistus was (a man) of great influence. 2. He had sent men of unfriendly disposition into Gaul. 3. He had tried with much [great] eagerness to drive Caesar out of Gaul. 4. At home we had very fertile fields and several months' supply of grain. 5. But rewards were offered to me by the Gauls of their (own) free-will. 6. I have learned that all the places in Gaul that are especially
fertile are held by the Romans. 7. I have tried to get
possession of these fertile fields. 8. But the Gauls have
not hesitated to wage war with my troops. 9. However,
we have shown that we surpass in bravery the men who
hold this locality. 10. The friendship of the Roman
people ought to help me. 11. With this hope, I have
come to talk with Caesar. 12. I realize that a large number
of Germans have crossed the river. 13. You see that they
are (men) of very great size of bodies and of extraordinary
bravery. 14. They are men like in character but unlike in
customs. 15. They are men of like character but of un-
like customs. 16. You said that the Aeduans, to whom
you had given rewards, had been called your brothers.
17. But I know that, in the war which you waged with
the Allobroges, the Romans did not enjoy the Aeduans' aid.
18. I suspect that you keep this army, which you have in Gaul, that you may crush me. 19. I swear that I
shall call you my enemy and not my friend. 20. I am in-
formed that (there) are many Romans whose gratitude I
am able to purchase by your death.

LESSON XV

Participles: 166.
Ablative Absolute: 96 with 1.

Exercise

(Each of the first twelve sentences contains an ablative absolute.)

1. After this speech was delivered by Arjovistus, Caesar replied. 2. While I was consul, the Aeduans sought our friendship. 3. Now that the fields of the Aeduans have been ravaged, I shall not desert them. 4. Having defeated the Aeduans, you will get possession of their largest towns.
5. With Gaul conquered, I fear you may try to overrun the Roman province. 6. After you have been sent home, I shall allow the Aeduans to enjoy their own laws. 7. When these words had been spoken, (it) was announced that Ariovistus's cavalry was approaching. 8. The conference dismissed, Caesar withdrew to the tenth legion. 9. Because these things had been done, a much greater eagerness arose. 10. If an attack is made by Ariovistus, we shall fight with all our courage. 11. But with the tenth legion helping, we can fight without great danger. 12. However, I fear that an attack may be made on our other friends. 13. A few days afterwards, Ariovistus desired ambassadors to be sent to him. 14. He said (there) were many things which he wished to discuss with Caesar. 15. These matters were of much importance [pertained very much] both to Caesar and to himself. 16. (It) was decided to send Valerius, who was a young (man) of extraordinary wisdom. 17. Caesar knew that this (man) was able to use the Gallic language. 18. Valerius, having advanced to Ariovistus, was asked why he had come. 19. But Ariovistus stopped him as he tried to reply. 20. Thrown into chains, he was made a prisoner.

LESSON XVI

Dative with Intransitive Verbs: 64 with a, c, d.
Dative with Compound Verbs: 65.

Exercise

1. Will Ariovistus harm this ambassador? 2. Caesar will not pardon Ariovistus, will he? 3. Ariovistus will not be pardoned by Caesar. 4. Did not Valerius resist those who made him prisoner? 5. Those men were resisted by
Valerius.  6. Ariovistus desired power more than booty.  
7. And so he made war upon the Aeduans, whom Caesar had favored.  8. Caesar encouraged the tenth legion, which he had trusted.  9. Caesar trusted the tenth legion, which he had encouraged.  10. The tenth legion was greatly trusted and indulged by Caesar.  11. With this legion, he will be able to meet the attack of those who wish to harm him.  12. He knows that those whom he has favored will help him.  13. In a short time, he will be in command of the auxiliaries which the Aeduans will [have] sent to him.  14. Ariovistus broke camp and withdrew several miles.  
15. Caesar’s army crossed the river and, for five successive days, he displayed his men to Ariovistus.  16. But Ariovistus did not wish to fight with an army of so extraordinary bravery.  17. However, within these few days, a part of his troops fought in cavalry battles with the Gallic horsemen.  18. He was afraid that he was not able to resist the army over which Caesar had been placed in command.  19. He thought he would not meet the enemy but would stay in the camp which he had built.  20. This plan having been decided upon, he kept his men there for several days.

LESSON XVII

Dative of Possessor: 68.
Dative of Purpose: 69.
Dative with Adjectives: 70.

Exercise

1. The Germans were very unlike the Romans in the method of battle which they employed.  2. For the sake of his own safety, each cavalryman chose a foot-soldier.  3. Because of his training, the latter was able to equal the
speed of the former. 4. For another camp, Caesar found a place which was next to the enemy. 5. In all matters this place was suitable for a camp. 6. He ordered one line to fortify the camp with a twelve foot wall. 7. He drew up two battle lines as a protection to the others. 8. An attack having been made on the third line, Caesar sent the others as a reënforcement to them. 9. Thus this part of the army was [for] a help and not a hindrance to the other. 10. With this smaller camp fortified, Caesar withdrew to the larger camp. 11. Caesar had two redoubts. [Translate in two ways.] 12. Each camp had a wall and a ditch. [Translate in two ways.] 13. Caesar thought that the smaller camp would be a (source of) loss to the enemy. 14. Caesar asked why Ariovistus had not fought a decisive battle. 15. He asked the same (question) of several Germans who were friendly to him. 16. He found out that the lots did not favor a battle. 17. For many years, we have considered the lots as a (source of) safety to us. 18. We have consulted them often, so that we may not be harmed by our enemies. 19. This custom has been of [for] great use to us. 20. The Romans also have customs like this. [Translate in two ways.]

LESSON XVIII


Exercise

1. Soldiers had to be left by Caesar as a guard for each camp. 2. He then advanced toward the enemies' camp for the purpose of fighting. 3. He had a smaller number
of soldiers than the enemy. 4. For this reason, the auxiliaries had to be drawn up by Caesar. 5. To [ad] strengthen their courage, the Germans drew up their line so that kinsmen stood together. 6. Carts were placed around the entire line, so that no [not any] hope of fleeing might be left. 7. On the carts [in with the abl.] they placed women to [ad] encourage the men. 8. Caesar went away to the right wing for the sake of encouraging his army. 9. (The battle) was fought so fiercely that opportunity for [of] withdrawing was not given. 10. The Germans received the attack by making a phalanx. 11. More men had to be summoned by the commander to the right wing. 12. The third line had to be sent by Crassus as a reënforcement to our men. 13. Finally by advancing rapidly our men routed the enemy. 14. They fled fifteen miles to the river Rhine. 15. Some threw themselves into the river to save themselves. 16. Others finding boats escaped in [by] them. 17. No opportunity for [of] collecting themselves ought to be given to the enemy. 18. The Roman cavalry overtaking the rest slew (them) all. 19. Caesar himself, in pursuing the enemy, happened upon [in] Valerius. 20. Great was Caesar's (good) fortune in seeing Valerius.

LESSON XIX

Genitive of the Whole: 55 entire.

Exercise

1. We have learned that the Belgians are a third part of Gaul. 2. They were one of the well-known tribes. 3. Certain (ones) of them formed a conspiracy against the Romans. 4. Caesar asked what the causes of the conspiring were. 5. The Belgians feared that in-the-first-
place all (of) the Gauls would be conquered. 6. After this is done [abl. abs.], the Roman army will harass us by laying waste our fields. 7. We have sufficient [of] bravery so that we can keep them out. 8. But we ought to have more soldiers. 9. Many of our prominent men desire a revolution more than peace. 10. They have larger resources for hiring men than the others. 11. Caesar was informed that those who were making the conspiracy were of great influence. 12. Aroused by these rumors, he decided that more grain must be purchased. 13. A few of his soldiers were sent by Caesar to [ad] purchase grain. 14. Caesar knew that the Belgians were the bravest of all the Gauls. 15. For this reason, the largest possible number of soldiers had to be collected. 16. Therefore he ordered one of his lieutenants to lead two legions into Gaul. 17. He also ordered the Senones, who lived nearest the Belgians, to find out whether a conspiracy had been formed. 18. They reported that a very large number of men were being collected. 19. Then Caesar did not hesitate to start out with all the troops that he was able to collect. 20. He arrived at the Belgians' territory within a very short time.

LESSON XX

Subjective Genitive: 53.
Objective Genitive: 54.
Genitive with Adjectives: 58.

Exercise

1. Because of the memory of Caesar's victories, the Remi sent ambassadors to him. 2. (In) the beginning of their speech, they said the Remi would give all (of) their (things) to Caesar. 3. We do not dare to fight with the
leader of so great an army. 4. We are not skilled in war and we desire peace. 5. With your consent, we shall allow your army to come into our towns. 6. We are desirous of helping you with supplies. 7. Our eagerness for [of] peace was so great that we did not conspire with the other Belgians. 8. Will the wrongdoings of the other tribes be a (source of) loss to us? 9. Caesar found out that a large number of the Belgians had sprung from the Germans. 10. Because of the scarcity of supplies, they had crossed the Rhine. 11. Upon the arrival of the Belgians, the Gauls had been driven out. 12. Within the memory of their fathers, they had been able to keep off the attacks of the Cimbri. 13. The flight of the Cimbri had given them much influence. 14. The Remi knew how great a number of men each tribe had promised in the council of the Belgians. 15. They said that the Bellovaci were desirous of the control of the entire war. 16. But they were not more skilled in fighting than the Suessiones, who lived next to them. 17. A few years before Diviciacus had been king, but at this time they had made Galba king. 18. This man had much wisdom. [Translate in two ways.] 19. He was more influenced by eagerness for [of] power than by hope of peace. 20. He had promised many thousand men as an aid to his neighbors.

LESSON XXI

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 145 with a.
Relative Clauses of Purpose: 123 with 3 and 4.

Exercise

1. Caesar urged the Remi to [that they should] bring as hostages the children of prominent men. 2. He decided
that he would not allow larger forces of the enemy to be collected. 3. He ordered the Aeduans to [that they should] advance to the territory of the Bellovaci. 4. This was done that they might the more easily lay waste their territory. 5. He learned that all the Belgians' forces, which they had collected, were coming toward him. 6. He sent scouts to [who were to] find out how far they had advanced. 7. Then his army crossed the river so that supplies could be brought to him without danger. 8. He left Titurius on the other side [pars] to [who was to] keep the enemy from the bridge. 9. The Belgians began to attack a town of the Remi, Bibrax by name. 10. They stripped the walls of men so that they might come nearer. 11. So many stones were thrown that no one could remain on the wall. 12. In-the-early-part-of [primus] the night Iccius, one of the Remi, sent messengers to Caesar. 13. These messengers were sent to say that he could not hold out much longer. 14. He begged that soldiers should be sent as a reinforcement to him. 15. At midnight Caesar ordered [impero] the Numidians to start out. 16. Upon their arrival, the eagerness of the Remi was increased. 17. For the same reason, no hope of storming the town was left to the Belgians. 18. And so, after delaying for a few days near Bibrax, they came toward Caesar with all their troops. 19. They pitched camp (after) having advanced six miles. 20. The Belgians' camp was much larger than Caesar's.
Various Ways of Expressing Purpose:

With ut, ne, quod, or a Relative Pronoun: 123 entire.
With Substantive Clause: 145 with a.
With Supine: 170 a.

Exercise

1. (There) were more soldiers in the enemies' camp than in Caesar's. 2. And so Caesar warned his men that they should not fight with the enemy. 3. But by daily cavalry battles, he tried to find out how brave the enemy was. 4. He found out that they were no [by nothing] braver than our men. 5. He ordered [iubeo] his soldiers to make a ditch from each side of the hill which was in-front-of the camp. 6. Then he ordered them to put up redoubts at-the-ends-of the ditches. 7. This was done for the sake of fortifying the camp. 8. He left the two legions which he had last enrolled in the camp, so that they could be led out as a reënforcement. 9. The other six legions, which he greatly trusted, he ordered to be stationed in-front-of the camp. 10. The enemy also advanced to fight. [Use supine.] 11. Each army delayed to find out what the other would do. 12. Each hesitated to fight for so long a time that Caesar led his men back into camp. 13. The enemy then tried to cross the river to storm a redoubt. 14. Caesar sent the Numidians to prevent them. [Translate in three ways.] 15. Then he led out the entire army to drive them back. [Translate in three ways.] 16. (The battle) in the river was so fiercely fought that a very large number of the enemy was slain. 17. Our men crossed the river to pursue the others. [Translate in three ways.] 18. The enemy, having called together a council, decided that they
would return home. 19. They decided upon this so that they might fight-it-out at home and use their (own) supplies. 20. Their leader could not persuade them to delay longer.

LESSON XXIII

Substantive Clauses of Result: 148.  
Clauses of Characteristic: 125 with a.

Exercise

1. This plan having been decided upon, the enemy started out of the camp with much noise. 2. (It) was brought to pass by this noise that the departure was very similar to a flight. 3. (It) happened that Caesar, fearing treachery, had not allowed his men to follow. 4. He did not understand why the enemy had gone away so quickly. 5. He therefore sent scouts ahead to find out. [Translate in three ways.] 6. These scouts reported that the enemy, who had started out a little (while) before, had hidden in the woods. 7. The result was, because of this news, that Caesar sent all (of) his cavalry ahead. 8. He ordered [imperō] Labienus to follow closely with three legions. 9. Thus it was brought to pass that many were killed in flight. 10. At that time it was decided that those who had hidden should start out for home. 11. (There) are some who think that these men were very cowardly. 12. But there was no food in this place which they could give to their men. 13. And (there) was also the additional fact that they could not hold out longer without food. 14. (There) were few who were not desirous of returning home. 15. Meanwhile the arrival of the Roman army brought it to pass that the rest did not dare to delay longer. 16. The Suessiones were now almost the only (ones) who
had not surrendered themselves to Caesar. 17. And so (it) happened that Caesar at once hastened to them by forced marches. 18. But at first he was not able to storm their town, although there were few defending it [abl. abs.]. 19. Finally, however, they said they would surrender the arms which Caesar desired. 20. Then they obtained their request that they should not be killed.

LESSON XXIV

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Hindering, etc.: 147. Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Doubting: 149 with a.

Exercise

1. Caesar did not refuse to [but that he would] receive them into surrender. 2. Nor did he hesitate to lead his army against the Bellovaci. 3. Caesar did not doubt that they would surrender themselves at once. 4. Nothing will hinder the Bellovaci from coming [but that they will come] into his power. 5. Suspicion was not lacking that they had heard (of) Caesar's victories. 6. These rumors prevent them from making [so that they will not make] an attack on Caesar. 7. Many prominent men say that the Aeduans have been made slaves by Caesar. 8. Because of their influence, the Bellovaci had revolted from the Aeduans. 9. These men can not be restrained from saying [but that they will say] these things. 10. Caesar, after receiving their surrender [abl. abs.], demanded [impero] of them six hundred hostages. 11. Caesar then advanced to the territory of the Nervii, concerning whom he asked many (questions.) 12. He found out that their customs prevented them from being [so that they should not be] cowardly. 13. They said that
they would not refuse to fight with Caesar. 14. We shall try to prevent you from harming [so that you will not harm] our homes and children. 15. We shall prevent those who are unfriendly to us from coming [so that they shall not come] into our territory. 16. Caesar thought that he must make war [passive] upon the Nervii. 17. And so he sent scouts to choose a place for a camp. [Translate in three ways.] 18. Several of the Gauls who had been with Caesar pointed out to the Nervii how they could capture one of Caesar's legions. 19. They did not doubt that Caesar's legions could be captured one at a time. 20. The Nervii did not hesitate to try this plan.

LESSON XXV

Temporal Clauses:

With postquam, etc.: 126.
With dum, etc.: 127, a, c.
With cum: 129 with a.

Exercise

1. As soon as Caesar had found this out, he arranged his line of march otherwise. 2. For when he approached the enemy, he used-to-lead his army unencumbered. 3. He did not doubt that the enemy would attack him. 4. But after his men were drawn up for [ad] fighting, the enemy hesitated to make an attack. 5. At this time, when six legions were marching light-armed, two other legions served [were] as a protection to the baggage. 6. After our men had crossed the river, they engaged in battle with the enemies' cavalry. 7. After a fierce battle had been fought, the cavalry withdrew to the woods. 8. And our men waited until they should advance again.
9. Until they have been driven from the woods, no attack will be made upon them. 10. When the scouts had chosen a place suitable for a camp, the six legions began to fortify it. 11. As soon as our baggage was seen by the enemy, they advanced with all their troops. 12. When our cavalry had been routed, they, with great violence, made an attack against the six legions. 13. All these things were done while the six legions were pitching camp. 14. On account of the enemies' speed, everything had to be done by Caesar in the shortest possible time. 15. The enemy advanced so quickly that our men did not wait until Caesar sent his orders. 16. Caesar ordered [iubeo] the lieutenants to remain with [apud] their legions until the camp had been fortified. 17. Caesar came while the battle raged fiercely [it was being fiercely fought]. 18. After Caesar came, he urged the soldiers that they should bravely withstand the enemies' attack. 19. He knew that he could trust an army of so great bravery. 20. When he went away in another direction to [ad] encourage them, he found them already fighting.

LESSON XXVI

Causal Clauses:

With quod: 130.
With cum: 132.

Exercise

1. Because the time was very short, each soldier fought near [ad] the standards he saw first. 2. The time was so short that our men were hindered from seeking [so that they should not seek] their own standards. 3. Since the
legions were fighting in various places, they could not carry out [facere] Caesar's commands at the same time. 4. Because of the many trees, (it) resulted that all of the legions could not be seen by one man. 5. When the Atrebates had been exhausted by wounds, they were driven into the river. 6. While they were trying to cross the river, our men killed a large number of them. 7. Because our men had advanced into an unfavorable place, the enemy tried again to resist them. 8. But after they had begun again to fight, they were routed. 9. (It) happened also that two other legions had routed the Viromandui. 10. When they had been driven from the higher place, they fought on the very bank of the river. 11. The enemy could not be prevented from stripping [but that they should strip] our ramparts of soldiers. 12. The Nervii advanced to attack the camp. [Translate in three ways.] 13. Since the ramparts had been stripped of soldiers, certain (ones) of the Nervii advanced. 14. They did not doubt that they could gain possession of the camp. 15. Because those who were on the top of the hill saw that our men were victors, they hurried from the camp for the sake of plundering. 16. But when they saw the enemy in our camp, they fled headlong. 17. On account of the noise of those who were coming with the baggage, it resulted that many fled. 18. The Treveri, who were especially skilled in war, fled because they found out that our camp was filled with the enemy. 19. They did not wish to wait until they should be killed. 20. Because the Romans were fleeing in all directions, they thought that we had been conquered.
PROSE COMPOSITION

LESSON XXVII

Concessive Clauses:

With etsi: 134.
With cum: 135.

Exercise

1. When Caesar had come to the right wing, he found that his soldiers were hard pressed. 2. He warned them that they should not fight with their ranks so compact. 3. Although they were fighting very bravely, they were being conquered. 4. (There) were some who were not able to stand. 5. But although they were exhausted with wounds, they were resisting the enemy. 6. Caesar himself advanced to the front [first] rank because (there) was no aid that could be sent. 7. He thought that the enemies' attack could be stopped, though matters seemed to be at a crisis. 8. Because time was short, he snatched a shield; he himself had come there without a shield. 9. When he had arrived at the front rank, he ordered [impero] the centurions to fight with open ranks. 10. This was done that they might the more easily use their swords. 11. Though the Romans had been hard pressed, Caesar's arrival gave them hope of victory. 12. No one doubted that they had soldiers enough. 13. But their method of fighting had prevented them from conquering [so that they should not conquer]. 14. The result was that the enemies' attack was stopped. 15. Although the enemy had ceased from the attack on one side, Caesar found out that the seventh legion was being hard pressed. 16. He warned the tribunes that they should gradually bring their forces together. 17. When this is [will have been] done, you will no longer fear that you will be surrounded by the enemy. 18. Al-
though the enemy is very brave, they have not more bravery than the Romans. 19. When Labienus had gained possession of the enemies' camp, he sent the tenth legion as a reënforcement to our men. 20. As soon as they found out that our men were in danger, they hurried with the greatest possible speed.

LESSON XXVIII

Conditions: 136, 137, 138, 139, 140.

Exercise

1. If we have encouraged you by our words, we have helped you. 2. And if we are able to help you, we are grateful. 3. If you [shall] desire more aid, we shall send reënforcement to you. 4. If we should receive reënforcement, we should begin again to fight. 5. If we had more aid now, we should be willing to fight. 6. If aid had been sent to us earlier, we should not have fled. 7. But we shall not be cowardly, even if we [shall] fight alone. 8. If the enemy were not so brave, we should now be victors. 9. When the front rank of the enemy fell, other soldiers fought from their bodies. 10. They are (men) of so great bravery that they can not be easily conquered. 11. (It) resulted from this battle that almost all (of) the Nervii were killed. 12. If they should try to fight again, (there) would be few who would be able to bear arms. 13. Because they were thoroughly frightened, those who survived sent ambassadors to Caesar. 14. Though they had long been enemies of the Roman people, Caesar received them into surrender. 15. He will allow them to occupy their own towns, if they [shall] desire. 16. If their neighbors should try to harm them, he would stop them. 17. Unless Caesar
had been an extraordinary commander, the Romans would have been conquered. 18. Would not Caesar be considered extraordinary, if he were a general now? 19. Did his army at any time conquer a braver enemy than the Nervii? 20. Would the Nervii have conquered the Romans if they had had more [of] training?

LESSON XXIX

Conditions in Indirect Discourse: 153, 156, 157, 158.

Exercise

1. (a) If Caesar fights, he conquers. (b) Write (a) depending on dicō. (c) Write (a) depending on dixi. 2. (a) If Caesar has fought, he has conquered. (b) Write (a) depending on dicō. (c) Write (a) depending on dixi. 3. (a) If Caesar fights [future], he will conquer. (b) Write (a) depending on dicō. (c) Write (a) depending on dixi. 4. (a) If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. (b) Write (a) depending on dicō. (c) Write (a) depending on dixi. 5. If the Aduatuci heard (of) that battle, they returned home. 6. I shall tell you that, if the Aduatuci heard (of) that battle, they returned home. 7. Although their town was surrounded by fortifications, on one side [pars] (there) was an easy approach. 8. When we were approaching the walls, they made several sallies out of the town. 9. If we [shall] resist them very bravely, we shall gain possession of the town. 10. Caesar said that, if his men should resist them very bravely, they would get possession of the town. 11. After we had built a tower, we began to move it toward the wall. 12. The Aduatuci thought that, if we were able to do this, we had the help of the gods. 13. The result was that they sent ambassa-
SECOND YEAR LATIN

FOR SIGHT READING

SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND NEPOS

BY

ARTHUR L. JANES

BOYS’ HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN
PREFACE

The conviction has long been growing that pupils, in their study of Latin, are not gaining all they should in power to translate; that too much effort is expended on syntax and on thumbing the vocabulary. In most schools this intensive work of the second year has been limited to the first four books of Caesar's Gallic War. Students have learned to depend on notes and vocabulary rather than upon themselves. They have done little independent thinking. In this way they have spent much time and yet have made scanty progress in ability to translate, and have lost all opportunity to read the more interesting parts of Books V, VI, and VII of the Gallic War, the very important and highly entertaining narrative of the Civil War, and the attractive Lives of Nepos. To remedy these conditions is the purpose of this book.

Selections have been made from Books III–VII of the Gallic War, from Book III of the Civil War, and from Nepos. All words which Professor Lodge in The Vocabulary of High School Latin has shown should be mastered by the end of the second year are printed in full-faced type in the text where they first occur. These words with their meanings and forms, together with all other first occurrences, are given in the page vocabularies. The meanings—but not the forms—of others are repeated where necessary, so that pupils will carry in mind only that definite and limited list of words which Professor
Lodge has shown to be of frequent occurrence and of the greatest value.

The footnotes include the meanings of the less usual words, unusual meanings of common words, hints on derivation and translation, and synonyms. Matters of syntax and history have been reduced to a minimum.

The chapter on word formation has been made short and simple with the thought that much of this work should be postponed till later in the course.

The editor wishes to acknowledge his gratitude to the many teachers of Latin who have given helpful suggestions, and especially to Dr. Ernst Riess, Chairman of the Department of Ancient Languages in the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, who has carefully read the entire manuscript.

Boys' High School, Brooklyn.

ARTHUR L. JANES.
SIGHT TRANSLATION

This volume contains considerably more Latin than is generally read in the second year. The purpose of the additional matter is that the teacher may be given a comparatively wide range of choice and not that a much greater amount be read. It cannot be too strongly urged that teachers should exercise the utmost care lest sight translation become a matter of quantity rather than of quality, and lest the pupil think that translation is the result of combining memory with guesswork. It must be understood that the purpose of sight translation is the development of power—not the careless reading of much Latin. The difference between sight translation and the prepared translation is one not of quantity but simply of method. In sight translation, only that information is given which is absolutely and wholly new to the pupil. For the rest he must depend upon his own experience and ingenuity.

It is suggested that a large part of this sight work be done in class. The pupil should be urged to follow closely and get whatever he can from the sentence as the Latin is carefully read by the teacher. The reading may be repeated several times and the meaning brought out so far as possible by careful accentuation. The pupil may then be asked to give the meaning of the sentence in a general way. This may be followed by a rereading by phrases in order of occurrence, and the main import of each phrase and its relation to others should be under-
stood before it is left. The meaning of many phrases is so clear that translation will be found unnecessary. Another reading by the teacher will serve to make the various parts of the sentence fall into their proper relations in the student's mind. Following this a pupil may be asked to give in his own words—with the text before him—not a translation but the full and complete meaning of the sentence as it appears to him. By this method, much of the slavish adherence to Latin idioms will be avoided.

The text covered in this way may be the assigned translation for the next recitation when syntax and forms may be considered as fully as desired. It should be remembered, however, that syntactical questions should be asked simply for the purpose of ascertaining the pupil's knowledge of the bearing of the phrase or word on the meaning of the sentence and not for the purpose of attaching labels to ablatives and subjunctives.
C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER TERTIUS

Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba goes into winter quarters at Octodurus.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimâ et parte equitâtús in Nantuâtés, Veragros, Sedûnósque misit, qui á finibus Allobrogum et lacú Lemannó et flúmine Rhodanó ad summâs Alpês pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod¹ iter per Alpês, quò magnô cum perículó magníisque cum

Incipit Liber ῆο. Tertius

Cum manu profisceretur Caesar, servavit Galba caelestem.\[5\]
\[6\]
Alpásque equitatus in nantuátum veragros sedûnosque misit.\[7\]

Beginning of the Third Book of the Gallic War, from a manuscript of the tenth century. Reduced one half.

portóriís² mercátóriès ire cônusèrant,³ pateﬁéri volèbat. Huic permisit, sì opus esse arbitrârètur, uti in hís locís legiôinem hiemandi causâ collocàret. Galba, secundís⁴ aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complûribus eórùm expugnâtis, missís ad eum undique légâtis obsidibusque datís et pâce factâ, cônstituit cohortês duâs in Nantu-

aliquot, indecl. adj., several.

---

1. quod iter ... patefieri: preserve the Latin order in translation; iter is subject of patefieri.
2. customs duty.
3. (Contracted from cōnsuēve-rant): were (lit. had become) accustomed.
4. Translate the five ablatives absolutely by short, simple sentences.
ŚELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND NEPOS

ātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legīonis cohori-
tibus in vícō Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octōdūrus,
hiemāre; quī vícus positus in vallē, nōn magnā adiectā
plānītiēs, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum
hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem
eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab his re-
lictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque
mūnīvit.

The mountain tribes revolt and occupy near-by heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frū-
mentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subītō per explōrā-
tōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallis
concesserat omnēs noctū discussisse montēsque qui
impendērēnt ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et
Veragrōrum tenērī. Id alique 5 dē causīs acciderat, ut
subītō Gallī bellī renovādī legiōnīisque opprimēndae
cōnsiliōm caperent: prīnum, quod legiōnem ūnam,
neque 6 eam plēnissimam, dētractīs 7 cohortibus duābus
et complūrībus singillātim, quī commeātūs petēndī causā
missī erant, absentibus 8 propter paucitātem dēspiciē-

vallēs, vallis, f., a valley.
adiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, add; 
cf. ad + iaciō: adiēctā as an adj.,
lying near.
attribuō, -ere, -tribui, -tribūtum,

assign.
renovō, r, renew; cf. novus.
plēnus, -a, -um, full.
singillātim, adv.; cf. singūlī.
paucitās, paucitātis, f.; cf. pauci.

1. nōn magnā = parvā.
2. plāin.
3. Causal.
4. Explained by ut . . . caper-
rent.
5. alique dē causīs: these rea-
sons are (1) quod . . . dēspiciē-
bant, (2) quod . . . existimābant, (3) quod . . . dolēbant, and (4) quod . . . habēbant.
6. and not.
7. dētractīs . . . absentibus: these ablatīves absolute give the reasons for neque eam plēnissimam.
8. Abl. abs. with complūrībus.
bant;\(^1\) tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem\(^2\) loci, cum ipsi\(^3\) ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tēla con-
icerent, nē primum quidem im petitum suum posse sus-
tinēri existimābant. Accēdebant quod suōs ab sē liberōs
5 abstractōs obsidum\(^4\) nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs\(^5\) nōn
sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis\(^6\)
culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea loca fīnitima prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

The Romans, called to a council, determine to defend their position.

3. His nūntiis acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hiber-
10 nōrum mūnitionēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dé
frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum,
quod dēditōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō
timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō
sententiās exquisīre\(^7\) coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tan-
15 tum repentinī periculi\(^8\) praetere opinīōnem accidisset ac
iam omnia fērē superstēra loca multitūdine armātōrum
complēta cōnspicerentur neque subsidīō\(^9\) venīrī\(^10\) neque
commeātūs supportāri\(^11\) interclūsis itineribus possent,
prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modi senten-
20 tiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentis relictīs ėruptiōne factā

abstrahō; cf. trahō.
culmen, culminis, n., top.

adiungō; cf. iungō.

1. despised.
2. propter iniquitatem: on account of the unfavorable char-
acter; modifies sustinēri.
3. The mountaineers.
4. obsidum nōmine: as (lit.
under the name of) hostages.
5. Rōmānōs . . . adiungere;
tells the fact which sibi persuā-
sum habēbant.

7. ask for.
8. Partitive gen. with tan-
tum.
9. Dat. of purpose.
10. Impersonal and passive,
but translate as personal and
active. Supply posset from pos-
sent.
11. Cf. portō.
Isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contendere. Maiōri tamen parti placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri\(^1\) et castra défendere.

*The Romans are attacked and outnumbered.*

5 4. Brevī spatiō interiectō,\(^2\) vix ut ipsis rēbus\(^3\) quās consittuissent comparandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs\(^4\) ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum cōnicere. Nostri primō integrīs\(^5\) vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre\(^6\) neque ullum fruāstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta défensōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxiliōm ferre; sed hōc\(^7\) superāri, quod diūturnitāte\(^8\) pugnae hostēs dēfessi proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs\(^9\) vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum\(^10\) ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo\(^11\) dēfessō\(^12\) ex pugnā excēdendi,\(^13\) sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendi facultās dabātur.

---

1. experiri and défendere: subjects of placuit. Trans.: the majority voted to try, etc., and to defend.
2. Cf. iācio.
3. Dative.
4. Nom. as subject of the historical infinitives decurrere and cōnicere: so also nostri . . . prōpugnāre, line 9, etc.
5. integrīs vīribus: abl. abs., denoting time.
6. Note the force of the prō in prōpugnāre.
7. Abl. of specification.
8. long duration.
11. nōn modo: sc. nōn.
12. dēfessō, sauciō: indirect objects of dābātur.
13. excēdendi, locī relinquendī, suī recipiendi: modify facultās.

gaesum, -i, n., heavy javelin.  
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, fresh.  
fruāstrā, in vain.  
sauciō, -a, -um, wounded, hurt, injured.
After a six hours’ battle, Galba decides upon a sally.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur,¹ ac nōn sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs acrius instārent, languidiōribus-que nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pīli centurīō, quem ἁρ νε- vicō proeliō complūribus cōn- fectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsiliī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrē- mum auxiliōm experīrentur. Ita- que convocātīs centuriōnibus ce- lerītē militēs certiōrēs faciit paulisper intermittērunt proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumpērent atque omnēm spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

languidus, -a, -um, listless.
scindō, -ere, scīdī, scīssum, splīt, cut down. Cf. rescindō.
pīlus, -ī, m., with primus, of the first rank (in a legion).

Nervicus, -a, -um, of the Nervii.
tantummodo, only.
reficiō; cf. faciō.
ērumpō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum, burst forth.

1. had been (and was still being) fought.
2. languidiōribus nostrīs: abl. abs. of cause.
3. Subject of cōnfectum (esse).
4. rushed up.
5. This, together with the four following subjunctives, represents imperative of direct discourse.
The Gauls are completely routed. Galba goes into winter quarters.

6. Quod iussi sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptīōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque sui colligendī hostibus facultātem relinqunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs intercipiunt, et ex homīnim miliibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstaβat, plūs tertīā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superīōribus cōnistiere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cópiis fūsis armīisque exūtīs sē in castra mūni-tiōnēsque suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vidēbat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolument legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hie-māvit.

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, collect.
cōnstaβī, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, stand together, stand firm.
Here impersonal, it was agreed, it was ascertained.
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour, throw, rout.

exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtum, draw off, despoil.
memīnī, meminissee, defective, the perfect, pluperf., and future perf. having the meanings of the pres., imperf., and future respectively, remember.
dēmoror, 1; cf. moror.

1. iussi sunt: sc. facere, of which quod is object.
2. sui colligendi: of collecting themselves, i.e. of rallying.
3. changed.
4. cut off; cf. intercept.
5. ex miliibus: modifies tertīā parte.
6. Abl. of separation with exūtīs which agrees with cópiis.
7. one, other.
8. conditions.
RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 7–16

In northwestern Gaul, a revolt breaks out which is led by the Veneti, a seafaring tribe. To meet them, Caesar orders a fleet built, and places Brutus in command, while other staff officers are sent to engage the attention of certain other revolting tribes. Because of the peculiar situation of their towns, the Veneti for a time prolong the revolt. But when Caesar’s new fleet arrives, the enemy is outmaneuvered and utterly defeated.

Sabinus goes north against the Venelli, encamps and refuses battle.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus cum ës còpiis quæs à Caesare accèperat in finës Venellòrum pervënit. His praerat Viridovìx ac sum-mam imperii tenëbat eàrum omnium civitâtum quae dëfécerant, ex quibus exercitum magnäsque còpias coëgerat; atque his paucis diëbus Aulercì Eburovicês Lexoviìque senàtû suò interfectò, quoq auctòrés bellì esse nòlèbant, portàs clausèrunt sèque cum Viridovice coniùnxèrunt; magnaque praetereà multitùdù undique ex Gallià perditòrum hominum latrònumque convènerat; aliòs spès praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultùrâ et cotidìanò labòre sévocàbat. Sabinus idòneò omnibus rëbus locò castrìs sèsè tenëbat, cum Viridovìx contrà eum duòrum míliaum spatiò cònsèdisset cotidièque pro-
ductìs còpiis pugnandi potestàtem faceret, ut iam nòn sòlum hostìbus in contemptìonem Sabinus venìret, sed

auctor, auctòris, m., promoter; here, responsible for. agricultûra, -ae, f.; cf. ager + colò, cultivate.
perdò, -ore, -didì, -ditum, give over, ruin. As an adj. here. sèvocà, i, call aside.
latrò, latrònìs, m., robber, thief; contemptìo, contemptìonis, f.; cf. brigand. Eng. contempt.

1. Abl. of time within which. 4. Concessive.
2. closed. 5. Dative of reference: trans.,
3. Abl. of means. in the eyes of the enemy.
etiam nostrorum miliitum vocibus nonnihil carperet; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit ut iam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id eadem causae faciebat, quod cum tantae multitudo hostium, praetertim eis absente qui summam imperii tenere, nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data legato dimicandum non existimabant.

Sabinus by stratagem induces the enemy to attack.

18. Hac confirmata opinione timoris idoneum quendam hominem et callidum deligit, Gallum, ex iis quos auxiliis causae secum habebat. Huic magnis praemis pollicitationibusque persuadet uti ad hostes transeat, et quid fieri velit edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum propninit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur docet neque longius abesse quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat et ad Caesarem auxilli ferendi causae profisciscatur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnibus occasione negotii bene gerendi abmittendam non esse,

carpoe, -ere, carpsi, carptum, censure.
opportunitas, opportunitatis, f., favorable chance.
callidus, -a, -um, shrewd, clever, crafty.
pollicitatio, pollicitationis, f.; cf. polliceor.

1. impression.
2. cum ... multitudo: modifies dimicandum.
3. a Gaul.
4. (one) of those.
5. pro perfuga: as though a deserter.
6. docet has as objects quibus ... prematur and neque longius abesse, etc.
7. neque ... quin: lit. and it was not farther away but that. abesse has for subject quin ... profisciscatur.
ad castra īri oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Venetici bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdent. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōisque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt quam ab iis sit concessum arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultisque collectīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum co-pleant, ad castra pergunt.

Sabinus gains a complete victory.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclivīs circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad sē colligendōs armandōisque Rōmānīs darētur, examinātique pervēne- runt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opporūnitāte locī, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigā-
cunctātiō, cunctātiōnis, f., de-lay.
cōnfīrmātiō, cōnfīrmātiōnis, f.; cf. cōnfīrmō.
parum, minus, minimē, too little, not sufficiently; cf. parvus.
laeetus, -a, -um, glad.
sarmentum, -i, n., twig.
virgulta, -orum, n., brambles.
pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctum, keep straight, proceed.
inscientia, -ae, f.; cf. sciō.
dēfatigātiō, dēfatigātiōnis, f., weariness.

1. Explained by the four following noms. and quod . . .
credunt.
2. food supplies.
3. nōn prius . . . quam: no sooner . . . than.
4. as though.
5. Subjunctive of purpose.

SECOND YEAR LATIN — 2
tiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac\(^1\) statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs viribus militēs nostri cōnsecūti magnum numerum ēorum occidērunt; 5 reliquōs equītēs\(^2\) cōnsectāti paucōs\(^3\) qui ex fugā ēvāserant reliquérint. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvāli pugnā Sabinus et dē Sabinī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est 10 animus,\(^4\) sic mollīs ac minimē resistēns\(^5\) ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns\(^6\) ēorum est.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 20–22

Crassus, realizing that he must meet a foe who has in former engagements vanquished Roman armies, takes unusual precautions. The Sotiates in Aquitania make an unsuccessful attack on the Romans and later, after entrapping Crassus in an ambush, are again routed and their town is seized. Their chief, Adiatunnus, attempts to escape with his six hundred faithful followers, but fails.

Crassus urges the enemy to fight.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vo- cātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum\(^7\) et nātūrā locī et manū mūni-

| cōnsector, 1, the frequentative form of cōsequor. | nāvālis, -e; cf. nāvis. |
| ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, go forth, escape. | alacer, -cris, -cre, eager. |
| | prōmptus, -a, -um, ready. |
| | mollīs, -e, weak. |

1. *but.*
2. *Nominative.*
3. *Obj. of reliquérint.*
4. *spirit.*
5. *sturdy.*
6. *purpose.*
7. Subject of expugnātum (esse).
tumquam diebus quibus eo ventum erat expugnatum cognoverant, legatis quoqueversus dimittere, coniurare, obsideis inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati quae sunt citeriores Hispaniae finitimae Aquitaniae; inde auxilia ducesque accessuntur. Quorum adventus magnae cum auctoritate et magnae cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere consinantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur qui una cum Q. Sertorii omnibus annos fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostris intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidi reliquere, et ob eam causam minus commodum frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in die small number et cunctandum existimavit quisque pugna decertaret. Hac re ad consilium delata, ubi omnibus idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae cunctavit.
The enemy refuses battle and Crassus attacks them.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplicī acīē
institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs
cōnsiliī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsi propter multitū-
dinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrō-
rum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius
esse arbītrābantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō
sine vulnerē victōriā potīrī et, si propter inopiam rei
frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs
in agmine et sub sarcīnisī īnfirmīōrēs animō adorīrī cō-
gitābant.3 Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis
Rōmānōrum cōpiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē per-
spectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōnē 4 atque opīniōnē
ˈtimōris hostēs 6 nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum
effecissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri
diūtius nōn oportēre7 quīn ad castra irētur, cohortātus
suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra con-
tendit.

The enemy make a strong defense, but Crassus is informed that the rear of
the camp is weak.

25. Ibi cum8 aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis
coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllo mūnitionibusque dēpellerent,
auxiliārēsque, quibus nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat,
tūtō, adv.; cf. tūtus.
ˈinfirmus, -a, -um; cf. firmus.
dēpellō, -ere, dēpuli, dēpulum;
cf. pellō.

auxiliāris, -e, an adj. used here
as a noun, as often in the
plural; cf. auxilium.

---

1. The subject is potīrī.
2. baggage.
3. planned.
4. Cf. cunctor.
5. appearance.
7. Depends on the idea of
saying found in vōcēs.
8. Introduces complērent, dē-
pellerent, and praebērent.
ad pugnam lapidibus tēlīisque subministrandis⁴ et ad aggerem caespitisibus comportandis speciem atque opinione pugnantium praebērent, cum² item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitus hostium castrīs Crassōrenüntiāvērunt nōn eadem esse diligentiā ab⁴ decumānā⁸ portā castra mūnita faciлемque aditum habēre.

Crassus charges the camp and kills three fourths of the enemy.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnum praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitāre, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, ēductis iis cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intritae ab labore erant et longēre itinere circumductīs,⁶ nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūniōnēs pervēnērunt atque his prōrūtis prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidērī⁷ aut quid rei gerērētur cōgnōsci posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri redintegrātīs⁸ vīribus, quod⁹ plērumque in spē victōriāe accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dē-

cæspes, caespitis, m., sod.        intendō, -ere, -tendī, tentum,
circumēō; cf. eō.               direct toward.
excitō, i, arouse, spur on.        prōruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, destroy,
intritus, -a, -um, unworn, un-
wearied.                         plānē, clearly.

---

1. furnishing.
2. Introduces pugnārētur and acciderent.
3. Abl. abs. with castrīs: after riding around the camp.
4. from the side of.

---

5. rear.
7. Sc. possent from posset.
8. Cf. integer.
9. Refers to ācrius impugnāre and is therefore neuter singular.
spērātis omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissīmis campīs cōnectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītānīā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōnštābat, vix quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

_Nearly all Aquitania surrenders._

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquītānīae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēisque ultrō misit, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs anni tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

_Caesar proceeds against the Morini and Menapii, but they retreat to the swamps._

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce misissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratiōne ac reliqui Gallī bellum gerere coe-

---

1. over.
2. Refers to mīlium and is subject of convēnisse, which in turn is subject of cōnštābat; transl. which it was understood had come, etc.
3. multā nocte: late at night.
4. only a few.
5. was near at hand.
6. were left.
7. and ... not.
8. but they.
9. than.
10. Sc. gerēbant as predicate.
pērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proelīō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impeditiōribus locis secūti paucōs ex suīs dēperdi-dērunt.3

Caesar lays waste their country and then goes into winter quarters.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllo ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Increādībīlī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostīs tenērentur, ipsī ēnūrērēs silvās peterent, eiusmodī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtæ uti opus necessāriō interimmitterētur et continuātiōne imbrīum diūtius sub pellibus militēs continēri

continēns, continentis, adj.; cf. teneō.
ēvolō, i, rush forth.
deinceps, adv., one after another.
caedo, -ore, cecidī, caesum, fell, cut.
imprūdēns, imprūdentis, unwary.
māteria, -ae, f., material, timber.
pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, sheep.
tempestās, tempestātis, f.; cf. Eng. tempest.
continuātiō, continuātiōnis, f.; cf. Eng. continuation.
imber, imbris, m., rain.

1. too far.
2. rather difficult.
3. lost.
5. inermibus . . . militibus: abl. abs.
6. were on the point of being seized.
nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīisque incēnsīs Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs, Lexoviīs, reliquis item cīvitātibus, quae proxīmē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit.
LIBER QUARTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-19

At this time practically all Gaul is under subjection to Rome. But Caesar realizes that the Germans menace the eastern border. Already two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, who have been driven from their homes, have crossed the Rhine into Gaul and conquered the Menapii. Caesar fears an alliance between Gauls and Germans, and determines to make war on the Germans. He tells the Usipetes and the Tencteri that there is no place for them in Gaul, but that they may settle in the territory of the Ubii just east of the Rhine. They delay their reply to this suggestion, and make a treacherous but successful attack on the Romans.

Prominent Germans come to Caesar to apologize for the attack, but are thrown into chains. Caesar makes a sudden attack upon the Germans, and slays nearly all of them. That the Germans east of the Rhine may be duly impressed, Caesar decides to cross the river. He builds a bridge in the extraordinarily short time of ten days, crosses, ravages the neighboring country, recrosses, and destroys the bridge.

Caesar decides upon an expedition to Britain, but can get little information about the country.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsu fore arbitrā-bātur, sī modo Insulam adisset, genus hominum perspē-

exiguus, -a, -um, small.       insula, -ae, f., island.

1. Abl. of time when.             2. Indir. obj. of subministrāta.
xisset, loca, *portus*, adītūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerī praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quicquam praeter ōram  maritimam atque ēas regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs  ad sē undique mercātōribus neque  quanta esset insulae magnūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ēsum bellī habērent aut quibus ĭnstitūtīs ĭterentur, neque quī  essent ad maiōrem  nāvium multitūdinem idōnei portūs, reperīre poterat.

To gather information Caesar sends Volusenus, who proves unequal to the task.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omni- bus cōpiis in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs  undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam  superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iūbet convenire. Interim, cōnsiliō eiūs cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britanniōs, ā complūribus insulae civitātibus ad eum lē-

---

1. readily.
2. Dative with nōtum est, refers to the traders.
3. coast.
4. vocātīs . . . mercātōribus: abl. abs. denoting concession.
5. neque quanta: introduce a series of indir. questions which are the objects of reperīre.
6. Agrees with portūs.
7. rather large.
8. nāvēs, classem: subjects of convenire.
9. Its antecedent is classem.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, learn; in perf. tenses, know.
trāiectus, -ūs, m., passage.
classis, classis, f., fleet.
gātī veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententia permanērent eōs domum remittit et cum iis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvītātēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, quantum ei facultātis dari potuit qui

Obtemperō, 1, obey. fidēlis, -e; cf. fidēs.

1. Cf. mansō.
2. Object of mittit.
3. Genitive of value.
4. Subjunctives expressing command after imperat.
5. quantum . . . qui: lit. how much of opportunity could be given to him who.
nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quīntō
dīē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset
renūntiat.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 22–31

Caesar prepares a fleet, crosses with part of his army to Britain,
and after a sharp encounter with the natives effects a landing. The
Britons retreat, but Caesar from lack of cavalry cannot pursue them.
A few tribes submit, but Caesar determines to await his cavalry be-
fore he advances farther. The transports in which his cavalry sail
are driven back by a storm, and the fleet is nearly wrecked. The
Britons, seeing their chance, plan to rebel. Caesar, however, real-
izes what their intentions are, repairs his fleet, and makes ready for
emergencies.

One Roman legion, separated from the others, is attached by the Britons.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā
5 frūmentātum¹ missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque
ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars
hominum² in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-
tāret, īī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statīōne erant Caesarī
nŭntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam³ cōnsuētūdō ferret
10 in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.
Caesar id⁴ quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris
initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs⁵ quae in statīōne erant sēcum in
eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in statīōnem succēdere,
reliquīs armāri⁶ et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.
15 Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hosti-

frūmentor, i, forage.
ventītō, i, frequentative of veniō.
pulvis, pulveris, m., dust.
cōnfestim, hastily.

¹. Supine showing the pur-
pose of missā.
². i.e. the Britons.
³. quam cōnsuētūdō ferret:
lit. than custom raised.
⁴. Explained by aliquid . . .
cōnsiliī. id quod erat: the
fact.
⁵. Subject of proficiscī.
⁶. to arm themselves.
bus premì atque aegrē sustinēre et coāsertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquis partibus, dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ā ārīnibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 33–35

The Romans are thrown into confusion by the war chariots of the Britons, but Caesar frees the legion from its dangerous position. The enemy collect in large numbers, attack the Romans, and are defeated.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Ārīanus numerum obsidium quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctii infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post medium noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolūmēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex ēis onerāriae duae ēōsdem

dēmetō, -ere, -messui, -messum, reap.
dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī, —, hide.
metō; cf. dēmetō.
icertus, -a, -um; cf. certus.
essedum, -i, n., chariot.
duplicō, i, double.
eaquinoctium, -i, n., the equinox; cf. aequus + nox.
nāvigationō, nāvigationis, f., sailing.
solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum, loosen; with nāvēs, weigh anchor.
onerarius, -a, -um (with nāvēs), transports; cf. Eng. freighters.
portūs, quōs reliqua, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā dēlātae sunt.

The Morini attack part of the Romans as they return to Gaul.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morīni, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllet, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā re núntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex eīs occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

Labienus conquers the Morini, and the army goes into winter quarters.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis legiōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morīnōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē recipērent nōn habērēnt, quō perfugīō

īnfrā, adv., below.
expōnō; cf. pōnō; in pass., dīs-embark.
trecentī, -ae, -a; cf. trēs + cen-
tum.
praedae, -ae, f., booty.
orbis, orbis, m., circle.

abicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum; cf. iaciō.
rebelliō, rebellīōnis, f.; cf. re + bellō.
siccitās, siccitātis, f., drought, drying out.
perfugium, -i, n., refuge, retreat.

1. Adverb.
2. ad clāmōrem: at their shout.
4. postea . . . quam: after.
5. quō . . . habērēnt: lit. had not where they might retreat.
superiōre annō erant ĕsi, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgāti, qui in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vāstātīs, frūmentis succīsis, aedificiis in-5 cēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnūm hiberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omninō civitātēs ex Britannīa obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesarīs 10 diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcēta est

succidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsum, cut down.
LIBER QUINTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1–5

Caesar realizes on his return to Gaul that, for a successful invasion of Britain, he needs a large army and fleet. He gives instructions that they be made ready, and goes himself to quiet a threatened disturbance among the Treveri. Upon his return a fleet of 800 ships and five legions with 2000 cavalry are found ready.

Treachery of Dumnorix.

6. Erat únā cum cēterīs¹ Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quō ante ² ā nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmis cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat húc quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorīx dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque³ recūsandī aut dēprecandi⁴ causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospiti-bus⁵ Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille⁶ omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sībi

insula, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unused.

nāvigō, ī, sail.
mare, maris, n., sea.

religiō, religiōnis, f., religion, scruples.
obstinātē, firmly, stubbornly, resolutely.

1. the others.
3. and yet.
4. of begging off.
5. i.e. friends of Dumnorix.
6. i.e. Dumnorix.
negāri vidit, omni spē imperandi adēmpť principioes
Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārique coepit ut
in continentī remanērent; metū territāre. Nōn sine causā
fieri ut Gallia omni nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōn-
silium Caesaris, ut quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interceptēre
verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret:
fidem reliquis interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut quod 5
esse ex ĺūs Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōnsiliō
administrērent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem
dēserēbantur.

_Dumnorix deserts and is slain._

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum 7 cīvitātī
Aeduae dignitātīs tribuēbat, coārcendum 8 atque dēter-
rendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuē-
bat et, quod longius eius āmentiam 9 prōgredi vidēbat,
prōspiciendum 10 nē quid 11 sībi ac rē pūblica nocēre
posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus,
quod Cōrus ventus nāvīgātiōnem impediēbat, quī mag-
nam partem omnīs temporīs in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit,

| adimō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēmtum, remove. | sporīō, i, strip. |
| metus, metūs, m., fear, anxiety, | nocēō, 2, injure. |
| territō, i, alarm. | commoror, i ; cf. moror. |

5. quod . . . intellēxissent: noun clause, the object of admi-
nistrārent.

6. ex ĺūs : to the advantage
of.

7. tantum dignitātīs tribuē-
bat : he paid so much respect.

8. control.

9. folly.

10. prōspiciendum (esse) : he
must see to it ; depends on statu-
ēbat.

11. quid nocēre : do any harm.

SECOND YEAR LATIN — 3
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND NEPOS

dabat operam ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilō¹ tamen sætius omnia eius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestrātem militēs equītēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iuet. At omnium animis impeditis 5 Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum in castris in-sciente² Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectione atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs magnam partem equītātūs ad eum īsequendum mittit retrahique³ imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat,⁴ interficī iuet, nihil hunc sē absente prō⁵ sānō factūrum arbitrātus, qui⁶ praeSENTIS⁷ imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātīs. Illī, uterat 15 imperātūm, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equītēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 8–11

About the 20th of July B.C. 54 Caesar sets sail, and arrives in Britain on the next day. The Britons offer no objections to his landing, but, upon the Romans’ advance inland, resistance is made, which proves unsuccessful. Caesar is compelled to return to his fleet because of news that his ships have been wrecked by a storm. While he is making repairs, the Britons unite against him.

cōnscendēō, -ere, -scendēi, -scēnsum, climb up, embark.
postpōnō; cf. pōnō.
retrahō; cf. trahō.
sānus, -a, -um, sensible.
clāmitō, 1, shout out.

1. nihilō tamen sætius: but nevertheless.
2. Cf. sciō.
3. The infinitive with imperō is rare.
4. obey.
5. prō sānō: as a sensible person.
6. since he.
7. Sc. ipsīus (Caesaris).
CAESAR, GALLIC WAR, BOOK V

Caesar's description of Britain and its inhabitants, which, however, contains many inaccuracies.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur quōs nātos in insula ipsa memoria prōditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis qui praedae ac bellī inferendi causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (qui omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepeērunt.

Silver denarius, struck 38-36 B.C., enlarged to twice the original size. Obverse: head of Caesar. Reverse: standard, eagle, plow, scepter.

Hominum est infinita multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtun-tur aut nummō aureō aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pon-dus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum 4
colē, -ere, colui, cultum, till, cul-tivate.
infinitūsus, -a, -um; cf. finis.
nummus, -i, m., money, coin.
aureus, -a, -um, gold.
tālea, -ae, f., bar.
ferreus, -a, -um, iron.
exāminō, 1, weigh.
plumbum, -i, n., lead.

1. quōs nātos (esse): subject of prōditum (esse): transl., whose origin on the island itself is handed down, they say, by tradi-tion.
2. handed down.
4. plumbum album: white lead, here tin.
album in mediterraneis regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, 
sed eius exigua¹ est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. 
Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum 
atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gu-
stāre fās² non putant; haec tamen alunt³ animī voluptā-
tisque⁴ causā. Loca sunt temperātīōra quam in Galliā 
remissīribus frigoribus.⁵

13. Ínsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est con-
trā Galliam. Huius lateris alter⁶ angulus, qui est ad 
Cantium, quō fērē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, 
ad orientem sōlem, ūnferior⁷ ad merīdiem⁸ spectat. Hoc 
latus pertinet circiter milia passuum quīngenta. Al-
terum⁹ vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; 
quā ex parte est Hiberna Ínsula, dimidiō minor, ut 
exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatiō trāns-
missūs atqueⁱ⁰ ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc 
mediō cursū est Ínsula, quae appellātur Mona; com-
plūrēs praeterēa minōrēs obiectae¹¹ Ínsulae exīstimantur; 
dē quibus Ínsulis nōnnullī scripsērunt¹² diēs continuōs

albus, -a, -um, white.
mediterrāneus, -ā, -um; cf.
medius + terra.
aes, aeras, n., copper.
fāgus, ἑ, f., beech tree.
abīēs, abietis, f., fir tree.
lepus, leporis, m., a hare.
gallīna, -ae, f., a hen.
ānser, ānseris, m., a goose.
gustō, ī, taste.
temperātūs, -a, -um, mild.

remissus, -a, -um, moderate.
triquetus, -a, -um, triangular.
angulus, -i, m., angle.
appellō, -ere, -pullī, -pulsum; cf.
pellō.
occidentēs, occidentis, falling, setting.
dimidius, -a, -um, divided in the middle; cf. dī + medius. Here 
a subst., half.
trānsmissus, -ūs, m.; cf. mittō.

1. limited.
2. right.
3. raise.
4. pleasure.
5. the cold.
6. the one.
7. Correlative with alter.
8. south.
9. the second (side).
10. as.
11. Sc. esse.
12. have written.
CAESAR, GALLIC WAR, BOOK V

xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus¹ reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā² mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longītūdō³ lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, 5 dccc milium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc milium passuum dccc in longītūdinem esse exīstīmatūr. Ita omnis īn- sula est in circuitū vīcīēs centum milium passuum.

10 14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimi quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, ne- que multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interi- ōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestīti. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī 15 vitrō inſiciunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte⁴ corporīs rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

brūma, -ae, f., shortest day (for brevissima diēs), midwinter.
aqua, -ae, f., water.
mēnsūra, -ae, f., measure, meas- urement.
vīcīēs, adv., twenty times; cf. vīgintī.
hūmānus, -a, -um, refined, civil- ized.
sĕrō, -ere, sēvī, satum, plant, sow.
lac, lactis, n., milk.
carō, carnis, n., flesh.
vīvō, -ere, vīxi, victum, live.
vestīō, 4, clothe.
vitrum, -i, n., woad (a plant used in dyeing).
inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, put on, stain.
caeruleus, -a, -um, sky-like, i.e. blue.
color, colōris, m., color.
horribilis, -e, dreadful.
aspectus, -ūs, m., appearance.
capillus, -i, m., hair.
prŏmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let grow.
rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsum, shave.
labrum, -ī, n., lip.

1. inquiries.
2. Here refers to the “water- clock,” shaped like an hourglass.
3. Cf. longus.
RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 15–23

The Britons engage the Romans in several battles, but are defeated in each instance. Cassivellaunus changes his tactics from pitched battles to harassing the Romans, but, influenced by the desertion of many tribes, finally submits.

*Caesar quarters his army among various tribes for the winter.*


peragō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, accom- plish, finish, hold.
prōveniō; cf. veniō.
distribuō, -ere, -tribui, -tribūtum, assign, distribute.
cōnfinium, -ī, n., neighborhood, locality.
medeor, -ēri, —, with dative, remedy.
quiētus, -a, -um, calm.

1. than.
2. Sc. legiōnem.
ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītāque hiberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morāri cōnstituit.

An especial friend of Caesar is killed.


The Eburones attack the Roman camp.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs ac dēfectīonis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō, qui, cum ad finēs rēgnī sui...
Sabinō Cottaequē praestō¹ fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomāri Trēveri nũntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressīs lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque, ūnā ex parte Hispanīs equitibus ēmissīs, equestrī proelīō superiōrēs fuissent, désperātā re hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvē-runt uti aliquī² ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: Habēre sēsē quae dē re commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

Ambiorix at a conference advises the Romans to withdraw.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendi causā C. Arpinēius, eques Romānus, familiāris Q. Titūri, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispaniā quidam, qui īam ante missū³ Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud⁴ quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum ei⁵ cōnfītēri⁶ dēbere, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucis, finitimiīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quoquae ei⁷ et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissi essent, quōs Aduatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenui-

praestō, adv., at hand, ready, in readiness.
concitō, i, arouse.
lignātor, lignātōris, m., wood-cutter.

contrōversia, -ae, f., quarrel.
missus, -ūs, m.; cf. mittō.
cōnfīteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, confess.
liberō, i, free.

1. praestō fuissent: they had offered their services.
2. Singular.
3. missū Caesaris: sent by Caesar.
4. apud quōs: in their presence.
5. Caesar.
6. The main verb in indir. discourse.
7. Ambiorix.
sent; neque id quod fecerit de oppugnatiōne castrorum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis; suaque esse eiusmodi imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris1 in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitūdinem. 5 Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallōrum coniūrātiōni2 resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humiliātē suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus3 rērum ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superāri posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commune rōcōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōni subsidīō venire posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre4 potuisse, præsertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus5 quoniam 15 prō6 pietāte sātisfēcerit,7 habēre nunc sē rationem8 officiī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūriōm prō hospitiō ut suae ac militum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam9 Rhēnum trāns-isse; hanc affore10 bigūō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium11 velintē, priusquam fīnitimi sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernis militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab ipsis abscit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre

coāctus, -ūs, m.; cf. cōgō.
porrō, furthermore.
humilitās, humilitātis, f., weakness.

1. power.
2. Cf. coniūrō.
3. Cf. perītus.
4. refuse.
5. Gauls.
6. as to.
7. appeased.
8. rationem officiī: regard for his duty.
adeō, to such an extent.
recuperō, 1, recover.
pietās, pietātis, f., patriotism, loyalty.

9. hired.
10. would be here.
11. cōnsilium velintē: it was their business (to consider) whether they wished.
iürandō cōnfirmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere,¹ quod hibernis levētur, et Caesari prō eius meritis grātiam referre.¹ Hāc Īrātōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

The members of the council disagree.

5 28. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbāti, etsi ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum.² Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, magnaque inter eōs³ existit contrōversia.⁴ L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī militum et primōrum ārdinum centūriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernīs iniussū⁵ Caesaris discēden-dum existimābant; quantāsvīs Ambiorīgis magnās etiam cōpiās Germānōrum sustinēri posse mūnitis hibernīs docēbant; rem⁶ esse testimōniō,⁷ quod prīimum hostium impetum multis ultrō vulneribus illātīs fortissimē sustinu-erint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; interea et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius⁸ quam auctōre hoste dē sum-mīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

levō, I, lighten, relieve.
ignōbilis, -e; cf. nōbilis.
humilis, -e, obscure.
existō, -ere, -stī, -stitum, arise.

quantusvīs, quantavīs, quantum-vīs; cf. quantus + volō.
postrēmō, finally, lastly, in conclusion.

1. Progressive present.
2. to be believed.
3. i.e. the councilors.
4. dispute.
5. without the order.
6. Refers to the quod clause.
7. proof.
8. more disgraceful.
Titurius expresses his opinion.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūntās Germānīs convenīnt, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proxīmis hibernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōnsulendi esse occasiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrāri prefectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnūtes interficiendī Tasgeti cōnsilium fuisse cap-
tūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, si ille adesset, tantà contemptiōne nostri ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōri. Ariovisti mortem et superiōrēs nostrās

sērō, late, too late.

1. shouted.
2. Cf. iungō.
3. fuisse captūrōs: would have adopted.
4. Objective genitive.
5. sēsē ... spectāre: he was not considering the enemy as his authority, but was looking at the facts.
6. a source of grief.
victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliis acceptis sub
populi Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre gloriā rei
militāris extinctā. Postrēmō quis hoc sibi persuādēret,
sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad eiusmodi cōnsilium
dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem
esse tūtam: si nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad
proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; si Gallia omnis cum
Germānis cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam
salūtem. Cotta quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent
cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō si nōn praesēns
periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset
timenda.

Sabinus disclaims responsibility.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum
ā Cottā prīmīisque ōrdinibus ācrīter resisterētur, ‘Vincite,’
inquit, ‘si ita vultis,’ Sabinus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut
magna pars militum exaudīret; ‘neque is sum,’ inquit,
‘qui gravissimē ex vōbis mortis periculō terrear; hi sapiēnt;
si gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem repos-

ārdē, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, burn.
tot, indecl. adj., so many.
exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīntum, destroy.
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, descend, resort.
dissentiō, -IRE, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, disagree.
exitus, -ūs, m., outcome.

obsidiō, obsidiōnis, f., siege.
disputātiō, disputātiōnis, f.; cf.
putō.
clārus, -a, -um, clear, loud.
vōs, vestrum or vestī, plu. of tū, you.
terreō, 2; cf perterreō.
sapiō, -ere, sapīvī, ——, under-
stand.

1. of this.
2. Refers to quis.
3. in utramque partem: for either contingency.
4. Infinitive is used because the question here is equivalent to a statement.
5. in utramque partem: on either side.
6. have your own way.
7. said.
8. ex vōbis: used for a partit. gen. with qui.
9. i.e. militēs.
cent, quî, si per tê liceat, perendinô diê cum proximîs hibernis coniunctî communêm cum reliquis belli cäsum sustineant, nën reiecti et relêgati longë à cêteris aut ferrô aut famë intereant.

Sabinus prevails.

5 31. Cônsurgitúr ex cônsiliô; comprehendunt utrumque et orant nê suâ dissënsiône et pertinâciâ rem in summum periculum dëdûcant: Facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu profisciscantur, si modo unum omnës sentiant ac probent; contrâ in dissipënsiône nûllam sê salûtem perspicere. Rês disputâtïône ad medium noctem perdûcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permôtus manûs; superat sententia Sabîni. Prônûntiâtur prîmâ lûce itu-rôs. Cônsûmitur vigiilis reliqua pars noctis, cum su quisque miles circumpliceret, quid sêcum portâre posset, quid ex instrûmentô hibernôrum relinearre cögerêtur. Omnia excôgitantur quârê nec sine periculô maneâtur et languôre militum et vigiilis periculum augeâtur. Prîmâ lûce sic ex castris profisciscuntur ut quibus esset persuásum nôn ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimô côns-ilium datum, longissimô agmine maximísque impediménitís.

reposco, -ere, —, —; cf. posco.
perendinus, -a, -um, after to-morrow.
relégô, i, send away.
interesô, -ire, -iī, -itum, perish.
cônsurgô, -ere, -surrēxî, -surrēc-tum, rise in a body.
dissënsiô, dissënsiônis, f.; cf. sentiô.
prônûntiô, i, declare.
circumpliciô; cf. perspiciô.
instrûmentum, -i, n., tool, equip-ment.
excôgitô, i, think out.
languor, languôris, m., weariness.

1. sustineant (et) nôn inter-
eant: would bear (and) would not perish.
2. sword.
3. they grasped by the hand.
4. Cotta and Sabinus.
5. dat manûs: yielded.
6. ut, etc.: as (men) who had been persuaded that the plan had been offered.
32. At hostēs, posteaquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliāisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs insidiis bipertitō in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et, cum sē maiō pars agminis in magnam convallēm dēmisisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōque premere et prīmōs prohibère ascēsū atque iniquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

The Romans are attacked by the Eburones.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēisque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia déficere vidērentur; quod plērumque īs accidere consuēvit quī in ipsō negotiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, qui cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat; et in appellandis cohortandōs milibus imperātōris et in pugnā militās officia praestābat. Cum propter longitudinēm agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut

convallis, convallis, f., valley.
trepidō, i, run about, become confused.
concursō, i, frequentative of currō.
obēō, -ire, -īi, -itum, perform.

1. in two bodies.
2. sē dēmisisset: had gone.
3. Dative.
4. Historical infinitives.
5. Sc. fēcit.
6. in such a way that.
impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casü reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode cecidit; nam et nostris militibus sperminuit et hostes ad pugnam alaceriores essent, quod non sine summo timore et despēratiōne id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesser erat, ut vulgo militēs ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eorum carissima habēret ab impedimentīs petere atque arripere properāret et clāmōre et flētū omnia comple- rentur.

**Battle plan of Ambiorix.**

34. At barbaris consilium non deūit. Nam ducēs eorum tota acie prōnuntiāri iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet: Illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservāri quaeque Romānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victorīā posita existimārent. Nostrī tametsi ab duce et at fortūnā deserēbantur, tamen omnem sperminuit in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiens quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium captēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnuntiāri iubet ut procūl tēla concionant neu proprius accēdant et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fecerint cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil his nocēri posse), rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs sequantur.

- incommode, synonym, male.
- despēratiō, despēratiōnis, f.; cf. spērō.
- necesse, indecl. adj., necessary.

---

1. -que connects discēderent and properāret.
2. Cf. fleō.
3. Subj. representing imperat. in direct discourse.

- cărus, -a, -um, dear.
- arripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, seize quickly.
- proinde, therefore.

4. although.
5. as often as.
6. from a distance.
7. Object of recipientēs: to whom does this refer?
The Romans are defeated with fearful slaughter.

35. Quō praecptō ab īs diligentissimē observātō, cum quaeplam cohorss ex orbe\(^1\) exsserat atque impetum fēce-
rat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam\(^2\) par-
tem nūdāri necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere.
5 Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī
coeperant, et\(^3\) ab īs qui cesserant et\(^3\) ab īs qui proximi
steterant circumveniēbantur; sin autem locum tenēre
vellent, nec virtūtī locus reliquēbātur neque ab tantā
multitudine coniecta tēla cōnferti vítāre poterant. Ta-
10 men tot\(^4\) incommodis\(^5\) cōnflictātī, multis vulneribus ac-
ceptīs resistēbant et magnā parte diēi cōnsūmptā, cum ā
primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod
ipsis esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō,\(^6\)
quī superiōre annō primum\(^7\) pilum dūxerat, virō fortī et
15 magnae auctōritātīs, utrumque femur trāgulā\(^8\) trāicitur;
Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum
circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus
omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs
fundā vulnerātur.

praecptum, -i, n., order. femur, femoris, n., thigh.
quaeplam, quaeplam, quodplam, träiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, pierce;
any. cf. iaciō.
refugiō; cf. fugiō. subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, go
tō help.
stō, stāre, stētī, stātum, stand. adhortor, ā; cf. hortor.
take one's stand. ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face.
cōnflictō, ā, break down. funda, -ae, f., sling.
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy.

1. circle.
2. eam partem: i.e. of the
Roman army.
3. both . . . and.
4. so many.
5. disasters.
7. primum pilum: first di-
vision.
8. javelin.
An interview with Ambiorix is sought.

36. His rébus permótus Q. Titúrius, cum procul Ambiorígem suös cohor tantem cónspéxisset, inter pretum suum, Cn. Pompéium, ad eum mittit rogátum ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellátus respondet: Sí velit sécum colloqui, licère; spéráre sē a multitúdine impetrári posse quod ad milítum salútem pertineat; ipsí vērō nihil nocítm írí, inqué eam rem sē suam fidem inter pónere. Ille cum Cotta saució commúnicat, si videátur, pugná ut excédant et cum Ambiorígē unā colloquantur: spéráre sē ab có dē suā ac milítum salúte impetrári posse. Cotta sē ad armátum hostem itúrum negat atque in có persevérat.

Sabinus is slain in conference, and his army is destroyed.

37. Sabinus quós in praesentíā tribúnos milítum circum sē habébat et primórum órdinum centuriónes sē sequi iubet, et, cum proprius Ambiorígem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperátum factit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condicio nibus inter sē agunt longiorque cónsultó sermō ab Ambiorígē instituitur, paulátem circum ventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō móre victóriam con clámant atque ululátum tollunt impetúque in nostrós

parcō, -ere, pepérci, parsúm, spare.
commūnicō, 1, confer.
cósultō, adv., on purpose.

sermō, sermónis, m., conversation.
ululátus, -ús, m., shout, outcry, yell.

1. impetrári posse: the subject is quod ... pertineat.
2. Titúrius.
3. sē ... inter pónere: he pledged his honor.
4. Titúrius.
5. said ... not.
6. quós tribúnos = eós tribúnos quós.
7. in praesentíā = illō tempore.
factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interfacitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliqui sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, 5 aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns occiditur. Illī aegrēad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad unum omnēs desperātā salūte sé ipsī interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō ēlapsī incertis1 itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

The Aduatuci and Nervii are persuaded to join the revolt.

38. Hāc victoriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, qui erant eius rēgnō finitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, pedītātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucisque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nervīōs pervenit hortāturque nē sui2 in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Rōmānōs prō īs quās accēperint inīriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfecēs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interisse3 dēmōnstrat: Nihil esse4 ne-gōtii subitō oppressam5 legiōnem quae cum Cicerōnē hiemet interfici; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc orātiōne Nervīōs persuādet.

---

1. chosen at random.
2. sui liberandi atque ulciscendi: modifies occāsiōnem; the chance of freeing themselves and of punishing.
3. perished.
4. The subject is legiōnem ...
5. oppressam interfici: to surprise and slay.
With reënforcements they attack Cicero’s camp.


Cicero prepares for a vigorous defense.


advolō, 1, hurry.
fāma, -ae, f., report, rumor, news.
lignātiō, lignātiōnis, f., getting wood.

4. fully.
adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum, gain.

5. were erected.

6. in succession.

1. i.e. the Nervii.
2. Sc. nūntiīs.
3. blocked.
ram exhaure cógēbantur. Quà quidem ex ré hominum multitudō cógnōsci potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mi-
lium passuum ē in circuitū mūniōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vālli, falcēs testū-
dinēisque, quās idem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

The Nervii make a determined attack, but are sturdily resisted.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō ferventēs fūsili ex argillā glandēs fundis1 et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendē-
runt2 et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēisque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mūlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia3 animī fuit ut,4 cum5 undisque flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlorum multitudine premerentur suoque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs for-
tūnās cónflagrāre intellegebant, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcē-
deret nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit

exhauriō, -ire, -hausi, -haustum, iaculum, -i, n., dart.
drain off, carry off. casa, -ae, f., hut.
fałx, falcis, f., hook. strāmentum, -i, n., thatch.
coorior, -īri, -ortus sum; cf. orior. tēgō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover.
ferveō, -ère, fervui, ———, glow. parīō, -ere, peperi, partum, gain.
fūsilis, -e, -e, melted. scālae, -arum, f., ladder.
argilla, -ae, f., clay. flamma, -ae, f., fire.
glāns, glandis, f., bullet. torroē, -ère, torruit, toustum, scorch.
fervefaciō; cf. ferveō + faciō. cónflagrō, 1, be on fire.

1. with slings; modifies presence.
2. caught. 4. Introduces dēcēderet, etc.
3. modifies iacere.
5. Concessive.
eventum, ut eō diē maximus numeros hostium vulnerā-
retur atque interficerētur, ut 1 sē sub ipsō vāllō constipā-
verant recessumque prīmis ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum
quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā
et contingente 2 vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex
eō quō stābant 3 locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remō-
vērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, 4 si introire vellent, vo-
cāre coepe runt; quōrum prōgressī ausus est nēmō. Tum
ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis dēturba ti, 6 turrisque
succēnsa est.

The rivalry of two brave centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs,
quī iam prīmis āordinibus appropinquārent, T. Pul lō et
L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās 6 habē-
bant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō 7
summis simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum
ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' in-
quit, 8 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis
exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.'
Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā 9 mūnītiōnēs, quaeque
pars hostium cōnfertissima est visa, in eam irrup tīt. Ne
Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vallō continet, sed om-

consti po, 1, crowd closely.
recessus, -ūs, m., chance for re-
treat; cf. re-cēdō.
introēō; cf. intrō, within + eō.
dēturbo, 1, drive down, beat
down, dislodge.
succendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsum,
set on fire.
antefero; cf. ferō.
simultās, simultātis, f., rivalry.
tuus, -a, -um, thy, your.
irrumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, rush.

1. inasmuch as.
2. touching.
3. stood.
4. Accusative.
5. dēturba (sunt): sc. hostēs

as subject.
6. disputes.
7. rank.
8. said he.
9. outside of.
Caesar is informed of the attack.

45. Quantō\(^1\) erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte militum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs\(^2\) ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittē\(^5\) bantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō\(^3\) nātus honestō,\(^4\) qui ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfugērat summamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servē\(^6\) spē libertātīs magnīsque persuādet praemīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō\(^6\) illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus\(^7\) ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

Caesar prepares relief for Cicero.

46. Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hūrā circiter xī diēi, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum\(^9\) ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit ut in Atrebātiōm finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, si reī publicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs

\(\text{asper, aspera, asperum, violent.}\)  \(\text{intus, adv., within.}\)
\(\text{dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendi, -prehēnsum, catch.}\)  \(\text{illigō, 1, tie to or into, fasten on or in.}\)

1. quantō . . . tantō: lit. by how much . . . by so much;

freely, the . . . the.

2. the force.

3. station.

4. honorable.

5. slave.

6. in iaculō: the shaft of the javelin was doubtless hollow and the letter hidden inside.

7. after mingling.

8. cum nūntiō: on the receipt of the dispatch.

9. a second.
Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quōd paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximis hibernis cōgit.

Caesar places Crassus in charge of the winter quarters at Sāmarobrīva. Labienus remains in his own camp.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō die mīlia passuum xx prōcēdit. Crassum Sāmarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās publicās, frumentumque omne quod eō tolerandae¹ hiemis causā dēvēxerat relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interītū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiāe vēnissent, veritūs nē, sī ex hibernis fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs² recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum trīa mīlia passuum longē ab suis castrīs cōsusēdisse.

A dispatch is sent to Cicero.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opiniōne³ trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum com-

antecursor, antecursōris, m., fore-runner.
dēvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum, carry away.
interītus, -ūs, m., = mors.
caedes, caedis, f., slaughter.
similis, -e, like.
perscrībō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, describe.
recidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, fall back, relapse, sink, return, be reduced.

1. enduring.
2. quōs scīret = cum eōs scīret.
3. expectation; ablative of separation.

The Gauls leave Cicerō and march against Cæsar.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explorātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquent, ad Cæsarem omnibus cōpiās contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia lx. Cicerō data facultāte Gallum alium ab eōdem Verticōne quem supra dēmōn-

---

**Lexicon:**

- **epistula, -ae, f.,** = litterae.
- **āmentum, -i, n.,** thong.
- **adhaerēscō, -ere, -haesī, -haesum, stick.**
- **dēmō, -ere, dēmpsi, dēemptum, take down.**
- **perlegō, -ere, -lēgi, lēctum, read through.**
- **recitō, i, read aloud.**
- **laetitia, -ae, f., pleasure, delight, gladness.**
- **incendium, -i, n., fire.**

---

1. **javelin.**
2. **Cf. illīgō.**
3. **would be on hand.**
4. **ordered.**
5. **smoke.**
6. **at a distance.**
strāvimus repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscript in litteris hostēs ab sē discussisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediiā nocte Caesar allātis suōs facit certiorēs eōsque ad dimicandum animō confirmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī periculī rēs cum tantulis cōpiis iniquō locō dimērī cāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte existimābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium septem, praeertim nūllis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dimissis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

*Caesar under pretense of fear entices the Gauls to his own ground.*

50. Eō diē parvulis equestrībus proeliis ad aquam factīs utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod ampliorēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant;

---

1. Cf. petē.
2. *such small.*
3. Lit. *it might be slackened from.*
4. Sc. *castra,* the obj. of *contrahit.*
5. *small.*
7. *angustiēs viārum:* by making the streets narrow.
8. *in the eyes of the enemy.*
9. *spies.*
10. *slight.*
Caesar,\textsuperscript{1} si forte\textsuperscript{2} timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proelīō contenderet; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rivumque trānsiret. 5. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equītibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō\textsuperscript{3} equītēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in his administrandis rēbus quam maximē concursārī\textsuperscript{4} et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

\textit{Caesar attacks and utterly routs the Gauls.}

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitāti cōpiās trāducunt aciemque iniquō locō cōnstituunt, nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeceptibusque circummissīs prōnūntiāri iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānṣīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctīs in speciem portis singulis ordinibus caespitum,\textsuperscript{5} quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat,
sic uti omnino pugnandi causae resisteret nemo, magnumque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnès armis exuit.\textsuperscript{1}

*Caesar proceeds to Cicero’s camp and congratulates the officers and men on their bravery.*

52. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludésque intercédébant, omnibus suis incolumibus eodem die ad Cicerônem pervenit. Ínstitútás turres, testúdinés munitiónesque hostium admirátur; pröducta legiöne cögnósit nón decimum\textsuperscript{2} quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex his omnibus iūdícit rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantà virtūte rēs sint administrātæ. Ciceróñem prō eius merítō legiöñemque collaudat; centuriōnes singillatim tribünösesque militem appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisset virtūtem testimōnīō Cicerōnis cögnōverat. Dē càsū Sabīnī et Cottaë certius ex captīvis cögnósicit. Posterō diē cöntiöne habità rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cónsolātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrímentum culpā et tēmeritāte lēgāti sit acceptum, hōc\textsuperscript{3} aequōre animō fерendum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquinātur.

**RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 53–58**

Because many Gallic tribes seem on the verge of rebellion, Caesar decides to winter in Gaul. Under Indutiomarus the Gauls plan to attack the camp of Labienus. They are lured to the very walls of the camp, and then attacked and completely routed.

| collaudō, I, praise highly. | ness, indiscretion. |
| cöntiö, cöntiönis, f., assembly. | expiō, I, alone. |
| culpa, -ae, f., fault. | diūtinus, -a, -um, long-continued. |
| tēmeritās, tēmeritātis, f., rash- | lasting. |

1. *stripped.*
2. *decimum quemque militem:* one soldier in ten.
3. Abl. of cause.
4. beneficiō, virtūte: abls. of means.
5. *disaster.*
6. Dat. of reference.
LIBER SEXTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1–10

During the winter Caesar levies more troops in order to be ready for the expected uprising of the Gauls. In the early spring he lays waste the territory of the Nervii, and the Senones and the Carnutes submit—all of whom previously refused to come to a conference of Gallic tribes which Caesar had called. He then proceeds against the Menapii in the north, who have never been subdued, and receives their submission. Meanwhile Labienus engages in battle with the Treveri, and they surrender. That he may frighten the Suebi, who plan to join the Treveri, Caesar again crosses the Rhine, but finds that they have retreated into the deep forests.

Customs of the Gauls. Two factions.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum1 perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliæ Germāniaeaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum2 iūdiciō habēre existimantur, quōrum3 ad arbitrium4 iūdicumque summa5 omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.6 Idque 10 eius7 reī causā antiquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiorem auxiliī egēret; suōs enim

ēgē, -ēre, egūī,—, lack.

1. point (in the story).
2. i.e. Gallōrum.
3. Refers to party leaders.
4. discretion.
5. final judgment.
6. is referred.
7. eius reī: explained by the clause nē... egēret.
quisque opprimit et circumvenit non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habeat auctóritátem. Haec eadem ratiō est in 1 summā tōtius Galliae; 2 nāmque omnēs civitātēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

By the help of the Romans, the Aeduans gain the ascendancy.

5 12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctóritās antiquitus crat in Aeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Arioviustum sibi adiūnxe rante eōsque ad 10 sē magnis iactūris pollicitātōnibus3 perduxerant. Proelīs vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omni nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā 4 antecesserant 6 ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent 6 obsidēsque ab his principum filiōs 15 acciperent, et públicē iūrāre 7 cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs consili iniūrōs, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Diviciācus auxiliī petendi causā Rōman ad senātum praecens 20 infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs 8 redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs,
The condition of the common people and the power of the Druids.

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sé, nulli adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum,
alterum equitum. Illī rēbus divīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pública ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis publicīs privātisque con-
stituunt, et, si quod est facinus admissum, si caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque con-
stituunt; si qui aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrī-
ciis interdicit. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcedunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque iīs petentibus iūs reddītur neque honōs īllus communicātur. Hīs autem omni-
bus druidibus praestēt īnus, qui summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, si quī ex reliquis excellit dignitātē, succēdit, aut, si sunt plūrēs parēs, suf-
fragīō dōidum, nōnnumquam etiam armīs dē prīnci-
pātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus

sacrificium, -i, n., a sacrifice.
prōcūrō, 1; cf. cūrō.
interpretor, i, explain.
hērēditās, hērēditātis, f., an in-
heritance.
dēcrētum, -ī, n., decision.
impius, -a, -um, wicked.

scelerātus, -a, -um, criminal.
dēfugiō; cf. fugiō.
contāgiō, contāgiōnis, f., a touch-
ing, contact.
excellō, -ere, ——, ———, = praestat.
suffragium, -i, n., vote.

1. are concerned with.
2. religious rites.
3. = druidēs.
4. = plēbēm.
5. crime.
6. committed.
7. dēcrētō nōn stetit: does not abide by their decision.
8. forbid.
10. is shared with.
11. dead.
12. several.
13. Abl. of means with con-
tendunt.

_Doctrine of the Druids._


consecrō, 1, make holy, dedicate, consecrate.
trānsferō; cf. ferō.
parentēs, -um, m., parents.

versus, -ūs, m., verse.
ēdiscō, -ere, -didici, ———, learn by heart.
perdiscō; cf. ēdiscō.

1. gather.
2. obey.
3. the system.
4. i.e. in Britanniam.
5. Cf. maneō.
6. right.
7. Concessive.
8. accounts.
9. doctrine.
10. Explained by the clause ut . . . remittant.
11. with the help.
12. Explained by interīre and trānsire.
volunt persuādere, nōn interīre\textsuperscript{1} animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī\textsuperscript{2} putant, metū mortis negligentō. Multa prāctereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitudine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

\textit{The Knights.}

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus\textsuperscript{3} atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod\textsuperscript{4} ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum\textsuperscript{5} ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc\textsuperscript{6} ūnam grātiam potentiamque nóvērunt.

\textit{Human sacrifices.}

15 16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum\textsuperscript{7} dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōrībus morbīs quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur aut prō victimīs homīnēs\textsuperscript{8} immolant aut sē immolāturōs volvent, administrīisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur,

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textbf{anima, -ae, f., soul.} & tomed, be wont. \\
\textbf{sīdus, sīderis, n., star.} & ambactus, -ī, m., retainer. \\
\textbf{mōtus, -ūs, m., motion.} & morbus, -ī, m., disease. \\
\textbf{mundus, -ī, m., universe.} & victima, -ae, f., victim. \\
\textbf{disputō, i, discuss.} & immolō, ī, sacrifice. \\
\textbf{iuventūs, iuventūtis, f., youth.} & voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow. \\
\textbf{soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accus-} & administrō, -tri, m., attendant. \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{enumerate}
\item perish.
\item Sc. homīnēs as subject.
\item = opus.
\item Refers to bellum incidit.
\item eōrum ut quisque . . . ita plūrimōs: the more famous each
\item of them is . . . the more, etc.
\item hanc ūnam: only this, i.e. no other.
\item much.
\item Object of both immolant and immolāturōs.
\end{enumerate}
quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortaliun nune plaeari arbitrantur; publiceque eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succensis circumventi flammae examinantur homines. Supplicia eorum qui in furti aut in latrocini aut in aliquae noxia sint comprehensi gratiora dis immortaliibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis copia deficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

The gods of the Gauls.

17. Deorum maximem Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viaram atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem ferem quam reliqua gentes habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere.
Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtēm bella regere. Huic, cum proelīō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, ani-
mālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum
cōnferunt. Multis in civitātibus hārum rērum extrūc-
tōs tumulōs locis cōnsecrātīs cōspicāri licet; neque
saepē accidit ut negligētā quispiam religiōne aut capta
apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravis-
simumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.


10 18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedi-
cant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam
causam spatiā omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed
noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum
initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In
reliquīs vitae institūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquis differunt,
quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adulēvērunt ut mūnus
militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur,
filiumque puerīlī ætāte in públicō in cōnspectū patris
assistere turpe dūcunt.

caelestis, -e, heavenly (being).
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, control.
dēvoventō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, vow.
animal, animālis, n., animal.
finiō, 4, measure.
nātālis, -e, of birth; with diēs, birthday.
adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum, grow
up.
militia, -ae, f., military service,
warfare.
puerīlis, -e; cf. puer.
assistō, -ere, -stītī, ——, stand
near.

1. piled up.
2. religious obligation.
3. i.e. in war: sc. ea.
4. apud sē: at his home.
5. hide.
6. i.e. in sacred places.
7. boast.
8. handed down.
9. ut . . . subsequātur: i.e.
the day began with sunset.
10. chiefly.
11. duty.
12. disgraceful; adj. agreeing
with the inf. assistere.
Marriage and funeral customs.

19. Viri, quantas pecuniias ab uxoribus dotes nornine acceperrunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatioine factae cum dotesibus comminicant. Huius omnis pecuniiae coniunctim ratio habetur fructusque servabant; uter eorum vita superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberis, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinquii conveniunt et, de morte sires in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excrucias tatas interficiunt. Funera sunt præ culti Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes quos ab iis dilactos esse constantbat, iustis funebris confectis, una cremabantur.

dotes, dotes, f., dowry (cf. do).
aestimatio, aestimatio, f., calculation, appraisal.
coniunctim, jointly.
fructus, -us, m., profit.
ilustria, -e, distinguished.
quaesitio, quaestio, f.; cf. quaerere.
excruce, i, torture.

funus, funeris, n., funeral.
magnificus, -a, -um; cf. magnus + facio.
sumptuosus, -a, -um, expensive, costly.
cor, cordis, n., heart.
diligere, -ere, -lexi, -lectum = amo.
funeris, -e, of a funeral; plu. as a subst., funeral rites.

1. wives.
2. unite.
3. ratio habit: an account is kept.
4. are saved.
5. vita superavit: has survived. vita is abl. of specification.
6. over.

7. = mortuos est.
8. in servilem modum: i.e. by torture.
9. considering.
10. vivis . . . fuisse: were dear to them while living.
11. supra . . . memoriam: before our day.
12. regular.
**Selections from Caesar and Nepos**

All state news is under control of officers.

20. Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sācantum, si quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsis rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt occultant, quae esse exūsū iūdi-cāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditūr.

**Religion and customs of the Germans.**


No private ownership of land.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, căseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam falsus, -a, -um, false.
cernē, -ere, crēvī, crētum, see, perceive.

| 1. quae civitātēs = eae civitàtēs quae. | 7. bold deed. |
| 2. better (than others). | 8. quae visa sunt: what seems good (to hide). |
| utf: have it enacted by law that. | 10. publish. |
| 4. common report. | 11. = putant. |
| 5. has heard. | 12. aid. |
| 6. and not. | 13. = pueris. |
agri modum certum aut finés habet propriōs; sed magis-
strātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus 1 cōgnāti-
çōnitūsque 2 hominum, quique 3 ūnā 4 coiērunt, quantum
et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post
5 aliō 5 trānsire 6 cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt causās : 7
nē assiduā cōsuetūdine captī studium bellī geréndi agri-
cultūrā 8 commūtent; 9 nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant
potentiorēs 10 atque humiliōrēs possessōnibus expellant;
nē accūrātiōs quam ad frigora 11 atque aestūs vitandōs
10 aedificēnt; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupidītās, quā ex rē
factōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte 12
plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs
aequāri 13 videat.

Government. Relations with neighbors. Hospitality.

23. Civitātibus maxima laus 14 est quam lātissimē cir-
cum sē vāstātis finibus 15 sōlītūdinēs habēre. Hoc 16 pro-
prīum 17 virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrī fīnitimōs cēdere,

proprius, -a, -um = privātus.
cōgnātiō, cōgnātiōnis, f.; cf.
nāscor.
ceō; cf. com + eō.
assiduus, -a, -um, continued.

accūrātē = diligenter.
aestūs, -īs, m., heat.
aedificō, 1, erect a building, build
(houses).
sōlītūdō, sōlītūdinēs, f.; cf. sōlus.

1. clāns; indir. obj. of attri-
buunt.
2. cōgnātiōnibus hominum :
groups of kinsmen.
3. = eiusque qui.
4. ūnā coiērunt: have banded
together.
5. Adverb.
6. = excēdere.
7. Explained by the subjunc-
tive clauses which follow.
8. for agriculture; abl. of

price.
9. exchange.
10. Subject of studeant.
11. cold.
12. Cf. aequus.
13. are equalised.
14. = gloria.
15. border lands.
16. Subject of esse understood, explained by the following
infinitives.
17. mark.
neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitratur, repentinae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs qui ei bellō prae sint et vitae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnēm atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuvenūtis exercendae ac désidiae minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, qui sequi velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt ii qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; qui ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in désertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postēa fidēs dérogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; qui quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sāntōsque habent, hisque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

The Germans compared with the Gauls.

Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inerrant, propter hominum multī incursiō, incursiōnis, f., attack. prōditōr, prōditōris, m., traitor. infāmia, -ae, f., ill repute. dērogō, 1; cf. dētrahō. iuventūs, iuventūs, f., youth. violō, 1, harm. désidia, -ae, f., laziness. sāntus, -a, -um, inviolable, sacred. désertor, désertōris, m., deserter. in direct discourse.

1. Abl. of cause, explained by 6. are highly praised.

timōre sublātō. 7. qui ex his = ei ex his qui.

2. raids. 8. omnium rērum fidēs: confidence in all matters.


4. i.e. of some expedition. 10. offensively.

5. qui profiteantur: let them offer; represents an imperative
titūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mit-
terent. Itaque ea quae fertillissima Germāniae sunt
loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratostheni et
quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi
5 Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt
atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus his sē
dibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et
bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem ino-
pia, egestāte, patientiā quā ante Germāniī permanent,
10 eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallī autem
prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum
nōtitia multā ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātim
assuēfacti superāri multisque victi proeliis nē sē qui-
dem ipsi cum illīs virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest.

15 25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta
est, lātitūdō novem diērum īter patet; nōn
enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensūrās itinerum nō-
vērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Raura-
cōrum finibus rēctāque flūminis Dānuiī regiōne pertinet

| colōnia, -ae, f., colony. | trānsmarinās, a, -um; cf. mare. |
| fertilis, e, fruitful. | nōtitia, -ae, f., knowledge, familia-
| bellicus, -a, -um, military. | rēctus, -a, -um (perf. pass. part. |
| egestās, egestāsis, f., poverty. | of regō), straight. |
| patientia, -ae, f.; cf. patior. | |

1. Modīficis opīniōnem.
2. Contrasts anteā in line 20,
p. 74, and modīficis comparant.
3. quā ante: as before.
4. clothing.
5. Indir. obj. of largītur.
6. Cf. propinquus.
7. Acc. plur. multā .
ūsūs: lit. many things for abun-
dance and necessities.
8. furnishes.
10. i.e. Germānis.
11. Acc. of extent.
12. to a fast traveler.
13. measured.
14. rēctā flūminis regiōne: in a course parallel with the river.
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND NEPOS

ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrō-sus diversīs¹ à flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnītūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius² Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicit, cum³ diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāsci cōnstat quae reliquis in locis vísa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prō-denda⁴ videantur haec⁵ sunt.

The reindeer.

26. Est bōs⁶ cervi figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū existit,⁷ excelsius magisque dērēctum his quae nōbis nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sīcut palmae rāmique⁸ lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fē-minae⁹ marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnītūdōque cornuum.

The elk.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis capris figūra et variētas pellium, sed magni-

---

1. diversīs . . . regiōnibus: in a direction leading from the river.
2. of this (part).
3. Concessive.
4. ought to be handed down.
5. the following.
6. Here probably means reindeer, but the description of this and of other animals is far from accurate.
7. stands out.
8. branches.
9. of the female.
tūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō afflictae căsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. His sunt

Reindeer (left) and European Elk

5 arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex

mutilus, -a, -um, mutilated. upon, throw down.
crūs, crūris, n., leg. ērigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, raise up.
nōdus, -i, m., knot, joint. cubīle, cubīlis, n., couch.
articulus, -i, m., joint, knuckle. applicō, ī, apply. With sē = lean.
affigō, -ere, -fīxi, -fīctum, press reclinō, ī, bend back.

1. surpass.
2. crūra sine nōdis: an in- credible statement.
3. prop up.
vestigius cum est animadversum a venatöribus quo se recipere consuehint, omnès eō locō aut ab radicibus sub-ruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquent. Hūc cum se consuetūdine reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The wild ox.


vestigium, -ī, n., footprint. vēnātor, vēnātōris, m., huntsman. accidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, cut into; cf. ad + caedō. ūrō, -i, m., wild ox. elephāntus, -i, m., elephant. taurus, -i, m., bull. vēlōcitās, vēlōcitātis, f.; cf. vēlōx. studiōsē; cf. studium. fovea, -ae, f., pitfall. dūrō, 1, harden.

assuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum; cf. consuecō. mānsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factum, tame. amplitūdō, amplitūdinis, f.; cf. amplus. argentum, -i, n., silver. circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, surround. epulae, -ārum, f., banquet. pōculum, -i, n., cup.

1. Modifíes arborēs. 2. to such a degree. 3. perfect. 4. spare. 5. as evidence. 6. of oxen. 7. collected. 8. ab labris: at the mouth.
Finding that the Suebi have withdrawn to the interior, Caesar returns to Gaul and marches against Ambiorix and the Eburones to punish them for slaying Sabinus and Cotta. Ambiorix eludes him and disperses his army. Caesar leaves Quintus Cicero in command of the baggage at Aduatucu, and, dividing the remainder of his army into three parts, goes in search of Ambiorix. Caesar invites other tribes to share with him in the plundering of the Eburones.

The Sugambri start out to obtain a share in plundering the Eburones, but instead they attack the camp which Caesar has left in Cicero’s command.

locis sit Caesar ex captivis quae sunt; profectum\(^1\) longius reperient omnemque exercitum discississe cognoscent. Atque unus ex captivis, 'Quid vos,' inquit,\(^2\) 'hanc miseram ac tenuem\(^3\) sectamin praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimos? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis; hic omnès suas fortunas exercitus Romano Romano contulit; praesidii tantum\(^4\) est ut ne murmurus quidem cingi\(^5\) possit neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat.' Hac oblata spes Germani quam nacti erant praedam in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usi eodem duce cuius haec indicio\(^6\) cognoverant.

Contrary to Caesar's orders, Cicero sends a large number of men out of camp to forage.

36. Cicero, qui omnès superiores diēs praeceptis Caesaris summa diligentia militēs in castris continuisset ac nē calōnem\(^7\) quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimō diē diffidēns\(^8\) dē numerō diērum Caesarēm fidem servātūrum, quod longius progressum\(^9\) audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferebātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illiūs patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, si quidem ex castris egredi nōn licēret, nullum eiusmodi cāsum exspectāns quō, novem opposītis\(^10\) legiōnibus maximōque

sector, 1, frequentative of sequor. fortūnātus, -a, -um; cf. fortūna. reditus, -ūs, m.; cf. red-eō.

1. profectum (esse): sc. Caesarem as subject.
2. said he.
3. insignificant.
4. so little.
5. = defendi.

6. information.
7. camp servant.
8. not feeling sure.
10. sent against the enemy.
equitātū, dispersis ac paene dēlētīs hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quinque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī ĥoc spatīō diērum convaluerant, circiter ccc, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; magna praetereā multitudō cālōnum, magna vis iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

The Germans assault the camp and a panic ensues.

37. Hōc ipsō tempōrē ĉāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā in castra irrupere cōnantur, nec prius sunt visī, obiectis ab ēa parte silvis, quam castrīs appropinquārent, usque eō ut quī sub vāllo tenderent mercātōrēs recipiēndī sui facultātem nōn habērent. Inopinantēs nostri rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in stātiōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquis partibus, si quem adītum reperire possint. Aegrē portās nostri tuentur, reliquōs aditūs

seges, segetis, f., grain, grain
field.
convalēscō, -ere, -valui, —, recover.
subsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, stay

1. destroyed.
2. offendi posset: harm could be done; subjunctive of result introduced by quō.
3. = numerus.
4. beasts of burden.
5. at once.
6. rush.
7. nec prius quam: and not till.
8. usque eō ut: so much so that.
9. stretched (tents), had their booths.
10. unprepared.
11. to see whether.

SECOND YEAR LATIN — 6
locus ipse per sē mūnitioneque défendit. Tōtīs trepidātur¹ castris, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat² prōvident. Alius castra iam 5 capta prōnūntiat, alius délētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit;³ plērique novās⁴ sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt Cottaecque et Titūri calamitātem, qui in eōdem castellō occiderint, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tāli timōre omnibus perterritis cōnfirmātur 10 opinīō barbarīs,⁵ ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere⁶ nituntur sēque ipsi adhortantur⁷ nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

Publius Sextius Baculus again displays his bravery.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cuius 15 mentiōnem superiōribus proelīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quintum cibō caruerat. Hic diffusus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem discrimine; capit arma ā proximis atque in portā cōnsistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc 20 centūriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statione erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit⁸ animus Sextium

tālis, -e, such.
mentiō, mentiōnis, f., mention.
cibus, -i, m., food.
careō, -ēre, carui, —, want, be

| 1. | there was a panic. |
| 2. | rally. |
| 3. | insisted. |
| 4. | novās . . . fingunt: make up new superstitions from the locality. |
| 5. | Dat. of reference modifying cōnfirmātur. |
| 6. | Cf. irrumpere. |
| 7. | Cf. hortor. |
| 8. | relict animus Sextium: Sextius fainted. |

without.
immineō, -ēre, —, —, be close at hand.
discrimen, discriminis, n., crisis.
CAESAR, GALLIC WAR, BOOK VI

gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegrē per⁴ manūs trāditus servātur. Hoc spatiō² interpositō reliqui sēsē cōnfir-
mant tantum⁵ ut in mūniōniibus cōnsistere audeant speci-
emque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

The foragers return toward camp amidst much confusion.

5 39. Interim cōnfēctā frūmentātiōne militēs nostri clāmōrem exaudīunt;⁴ praecurrunt equītēs, quantō rēs
sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hic vērō nūlla mūniō est
quae perterritōs recipiat; modo⁶ cōnscriptī atque ēsūs
militāris imperiī ad tribūnum militum centuriōnēsque
ōra⁶ convertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur⁷ exspectant.
Nēmō est tam fortis quin reī novitāte perturbētur. Bar-
barī sīgna procul⁸ cōspicātī oppugnatiōne dēsistunt;
redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discēssisse
ex captīvīs cōgnōverant; posteā dēspectā paucitāte ex
15 omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

The foragers finally reach camp with some loss.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc
celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque coniciunt; eō
magis timidōs perterritōs militēs. Aliī cuneō factō ut
celeriter perrumpant cēnsent:⁹ Quoniam tam propinquā
sint castra, etsī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at¹⁰

frūmentātiō, frūmentātiōnis, f.,
foraging.
praecurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursum,
to hurry ahead.

per manūs: from hand to
hand.
Sc. temporis.
3. to such a degree.
4. heard from a distance.
5. newly.

novitās, novitātis, f., novelty.
cuneus, -i, m., “flying wedge.”

6. faces.
7. was ordered.
8. from a distance.
9. expressed it as their opin-
ion.
10. at any rate.
reliquōs servāri posse; alīī¹ ut in iugō cōnsistant atque
eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hoc veterēs nōn probant
militēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Ita-
que inter sē cohōrtaī, duce C. Trebōniō, equīte Rōmānō,
qui īs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt
incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt.
Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem ĭmpetū militūm
virtūte servantur. At ī qui in iugō cōNSTITERANT, nūllō
etiām nunc ūsū rei militāris perceptō,² neque in eō quod
probāverant cōnsiliō ĭPERMĀRE,³ ut sē locō superiōRE
dēfenderent, neque eam⁴ quam prōfuisse alīis vīm celeritātemque viderant imitārī potuērunt, sed sē in castra reci-
pere cōnātī iniquum in locum dēmīsērunt. Centuriōnēs,
quōrum nōnnūlli ex ĭnferiōribus ārdinibus reliquārum le-
15 gionum virtūtis causā in superiōrés erant ľordinēs huius
legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam⁶ rei militāris laudem
āmitterent, fortissimē pugnātēs concidērunt. Militūm
pars, hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus, praeter spem in-
columis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa
20 periit.⁶

The Germans depart, but the Romans are left in great fear, which is
 alloyed by Caesar's arrival.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod
nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūniōnibus vidēbant, cum eā

percipō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, ob-
tain, gain.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, ——, to
be advantageous.
imitor, i, copy, represent, imi-
tate.
expugnātiō, expugnātiōnis, f.; cf.
expungnō.

1. Sc. cēnsent.
2. having gained.
3. Complementary inf. to po-
tuērunt.

4. Modifies vīm celeritātem-
que.
5. acquired.
6. perished.
praedā quam in silvis dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discersum hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem¹ nōn faceret adesse cum 5 incolūmī Caesarem exercītū. Sic omnium animōs timor occupāverat ut, paene aliēnātā mente, dēlētīs omnibus cōpis equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent neque² incolūmī exercītū Germānōs castra oppugnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sus-10 tulit.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 42–44

Caesar inflicts punishment on other revolting tribes, distributes his forces, and returns to Italy for the winter.

aliēnō, 1, make strange; part. frenzied.

---

1. fidem nōn faceret: could man) army safe the Germans not make them believe.
2. neque ... contenderent: would not have attacked the camp.
and they held that with the (Ro-
While Caesar is in Italy, the Carnutes and Arverni begin a revolt under Vercingetorix, who storms a city of the Boii called Gorgobina. Caesar returns from Italy with help. On the way he takes several towns and proceeds to Avaricum, a town which the Gauls have not burned because they think it impregnable to Caesar's attack. But the town is finally taken after a defense has been maintained for twenty-five days and 40,000 men, women, and children have been slain. Caesar thinks that this victory will destroy the compact against him that exists among the Gallic tribes, and so divides his army. But more states join Vercingetorix. Caesar himself goes to Gergovia, engages the Gauls, and suffers a heavy loss. The Haeduans immediately revolt and sack Noviodunum, one of their own towns, in which Caesar has placed provisions and hostages. Caesar nevertheless marches northward through the Haeduan territory to the Senones, and is joined by Labienus, who has just won a great victory at Lutetia.

Upon the revolt of the Haeduans, defection spreads to nearly all the Gallic tribes. A council of all Gaul is called, and Vercingetorix is named commander in chief. Caesar meanwhile sends to the Germans for cavalry, and starts out to defend the Province, which Vercingetorix has threatened. During this march, the Gauls make an attack on the Romans, but are defeated and pursued by the Romans to Alesia.

Vercingetorix retires to Alesia. Caesar pursues him and begins to build a wall.

68. Fugātō omni equitātū Vercingetorix cópiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coeptit celeritereque impedimenta ex castrīs ēduī et sē subsequī ius-sit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quan-
tum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex
novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō die ad Alesiam
castra fecit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque ho-
stibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs 2
cōn-
s fidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātūs 3 ad labōrem militēs
Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.

The situation of Alesia.

69. Positum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum 4
cēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnāri nōn posse vidē-
rētur; cuius collis rādīcēs 5 duo duābus ex partibus
10 flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter
milia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbant; reliquis ex
omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō 6 spatiō parī
altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae
pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem
15 locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et mā-
seriam in altitūdinem sex pedum prae ductūerant. Eius
mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus x
milia passuum tenēbat. 5 Castra opportūnis locīs erant
posita viii castellaque xxiii facta; quibus in castellis
20 interdiū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō
fieret; haec eadem noctū excubītorībus ac fīrmīs praes-
sidiīs tenēbantur.

sītus, -ūs, m., location.
circumvāllō, i; cf. circum + vāllō
(vāllum).
subluō, -ere, —, —, wash.

fastīgium, -i, n., elevation.
māceria, -ae, f., wall.
prae ductō; cf. ducō.
ex cubī tor, excubītorīs, m., sentinel.

1. in skirmishes with their

2. i.e. of the Gauls.

3. Cf. hortor.

4. very.

5. Accusative.

6. Cf. inter + iaciō.

7. parī altitūdinis fastīgiō:

8. embraced.

Vercingetorix sends his cavalry home to make a general levy.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūniōnēs ab Rōmānīs 20 perficiantur, cōnsilium capīt omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque qui per aetātem arma ferre posseint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae⁵ salūtis ratiōnem habeant

---

1. broken.
2. angustiōribus ... relictīs: because the gates had been left (made) too narrow.
3. nōn minus: i.e. than the cavalry.
4. inner gates.
5. Refers to Vercingetorix.
neu \(^1\) sē \(^2\) optimē dē commūni libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod si indiligentiörēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta lxxx ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne \(^3\) initā frumentum sē exigūē \(^4\) diērum \(^5\) xxx habēre sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī \(^6\) posse par·cendō.\(^6\) Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus \(^7\) intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam īs quī nōn pārurīnt \(^8\) cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, viritim distribuit; frūmen·tum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum admini·strāre parat.

_Caesar's circumvallation._

15 72. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs ex perfugīs et captīvis, Caesar haec genera mūnitīōnis instituit. Fossam pedum xx dērēctīs \(^9\) lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum \(^10\) tantundem patēret quantum summa labra \(^11\) distārent; reli·quās omnēs mūnitīōnēs ab ēa fossā pedibus cccc redūxit hoc \(^12\) cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum spatium necessāriō esset complexus nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingerē·tur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitīōnēs multītūdō

|silentium, -i, n., silence. | tantundem, just so far. |
|viritim, individually; cf. vir.| distō, -āre, ——, ——, be apart. |
|parcē, sparingly. | corōna, -ae, f., crown, ring, line. |

---

1. and not.
2. sē... meritum: him who had done his best for, etc.
3. ratiōne initā: by actual calculation.
4. barely.
5. be endured; impersonal.
6. by being saving.
hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operi dēstīnātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās eādem altītūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestrībūs ac dēmissis locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum extrūxit; huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandi-

The Defenses on Caesar’s Rampart before Alesla

bus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris qui ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turres tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs lxxx inter sē distārent.

campester, -ris, -re, flat. commissūra, -ae, f., a joining, junction.
dērivō, i; cf. dēducō. pluteus, -ī, m., shed, defense.
ēmineō, -ēre, -minuī, —, project.

1. hastened.
2. detailed.
4. low.
5. lōrīcam pinnāsque: breastworks and butwalks.
6. branched tree trunks.
7. check.
Caesar's defenses.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriāri et frūmentāri et tantās mūnitioṇēs fieri necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōnnumquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō pluribus portīs summā vi facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō mi-nōre numerō militūm mūnitioṇēs dēfendi possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmis abscessīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus per-

ab Pīnas, de loria of Plutae.
Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia

10 petuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stipitēs dēmissī et ab intellectō revinctī, nē revelli possent, ab rāmis emīnēbant. Quīni erant ōrdinēs, coniunctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō qui intrāverant sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllis induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

māterior, i, cut timber.
truncus, -i, m., trunk.
abscidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down.
dēlibrō, i, peel.
cacūmen, cacūminis, n., top.
stipes, stipitis, m., log.

revincīō, -ire, -vinxī, -vincūm, fasten.
implicō, i, interweave.
acūtus, -a, -um, sharp.
vāllus, -i, m., stake.
cippus, -i, m., pointed pillar, tombstone.

1. at times.
2. addition should be made.
3. continuous.
4. ab infimō: at the bottom.
5. be torn away.
6. with.
7. projected.
8. entered.
9. sē induēbant: were im-paled.
Ante hōs obliquis āūdīnibus in quīncuncem dispositīs scrobēs in altītūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur pau-
lātim angustiōre ad infimum fastigīō. Hūc teretēs sti-
pitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūti et praeusti dēmittēbantur ita ut nōn amplius digitī quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfirmandi et stabiliēdī causā singulī ab īnfīmō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur,

Conjectural Appearance of Caesar’s Works before Alesia
For greater clearness, only a few rows of cippi and of liliae are shown.

reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Huius generis octōni āūdīnēs ducti ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine

obliquus, -a, -um, transverse.
quincuncx, quincuncis, m., see note on this word.
scrobis, scrobis, m. and f., pit.
fodiō, -ere, fōdiō, fossum, dig.
teres, teretis, smooth.
stabiliō, 4, fasten.

exculcō, 1, stamp down.
integō, -ere, -tēxi, -tectum, cover over.
octōni, -ae, -a, eight each, eight.
ternī, -ae, -a, three each.
similitūdō, similitūdinis, f., resemblance.

1. in quincuncem: i.e. arranged thus:
2. slope.
3. thigh.
4. thickness.
5. finger (breadths), inches.
6. singulī pedēs: a foot of each stake.
flōris lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreis hāmis infīxis tōtae in terram infodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissīs spatiis omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

*Caesar builds similar defenses against the enemy outside.*

5 74. Hīs rēbus perfectis, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī naturā, xiiiī milia passuum complexus pars eiusdem generis mūnitīōnēs, diversās ab his, contrā exterīōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūnitionum praesidia circumfusa perrumpī posse nē autem cum percūlo ex castrīs ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

*An enormous army is levied by the Gauls.*

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō principium indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Veringetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitāti imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfusā nec moderāri nec discernere suōs nec frū-

---

1. stakes.
2. keeping to.
3. facing opposite, *i.e.* toward the enemy outside.
4. surrounded.
5. broken through.
6. forage.
7. appointed.
8. proposed.
9. Object of both infinitives.
mentandī rationem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduis atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambarrīs, Aulercīs Brannovicibus, milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūntīs 1 Helvis, Cadūrcis, Gabalīs, Vellāviis, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse consuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonīs, Rutēnis, Carnutibus duo-
dēna 2 milia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovicibus; oc-
tōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiis et Helvētiis; sēna Andibus, Ambiānis, Mediomaticis, Petcoriis, Nervīis, 10 Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; v milia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; iii Velioceṣīs; Esuviis et Aulercīs Eburovicibus iii; Rauracīs et Bōis bīna; x universīs civitātibus quae Oceanum attingunt quaque eōrum consuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numero 15 Coriosolītēs, Redonēs, Ambibarii, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovacī suum numerum non contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō 3 cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; 4 rogāti tamen ab Commīo prō 5 eius hospitiō duo milia misērunt.

The Gauls, confident of success, start for Alesia. The command is divided among four men.

76. Huius operā Commīi, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque utīli superiōribus annīs erat üsus in Britannīā Caesar; prō quibus merītīs civitātem eius immūnem esse iussērat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsis Morīnōs 25 attribuerat. Tanta tamen universae Galliae consēnsiō

1. bini, -ae, -a, two each.
2. útilis, -e, useful.
3. immūnīs, -e, exempt (from taxes).
4. consēnsiō, consēnsiōnis, f.; cf. consentiō.
5. duodēna milia: twelve thou-
sand each.

Extraordinary measures are proposed by Critognatus.

77. At ī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, consūmpto omnī frumentō, inscit quid in Aeduis gerētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum consultiōnant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiās, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praeter-

**vindicō, i, claim.**

**incumbō, -ere, -cubī, -cubitum,**

apply one’s self.

**recēnseō, -ēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsum,**

count over.

**cōnsobrinus, -i, m., cousin.**

**fidūcia, -ae, f., confidence.**

foris, adv., outside.

**inscius, -a, -um; cf. sciō.**

**cōnsultiō, i, take counsel.**

---

1. recovering.
2. Sc. Gallia as subject.
3. was recorded.
4. representatives.
5. sight.

---

6. The following clauses explain why.
7. Cf. praeter + ēō.
8. held out.
9. considered.
eunda vidētur orātiō Critognātī propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlītātem. Hic summō in Arvernis ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātīs, 'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum qui turpissimam servitūtēm dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum 1 his mihi rēs est qui ēruptīōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū 2 pristinae resīdēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animi est ista mollitia, nōn 10 virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant 3 facilius reperiuntur quam qui dōlōrem patiēnter ferant. Atque ego hanc 4 sententiām probārem (tantum 5 apud mē dignitās potest), si nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram 6 fierī vidērem; sed 15 in cōnsiliō capiēndō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxiliōnem concertāvīmus. 7 Quid hominum milibus 8 LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquīs 9 cōnsanguineīisque 9 nostrīs animī 10 fore existimātīs, si paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite 20 hōs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte

nēfārius, -a, -um, impious.
cĭvis, cĭvis, m. and f., citizen.
residēō, -ēre, -sēdi, —; cf. manēō.
iste, ista, istud, demonstrative pron., that of yours.
mollitia, -ae, f., irresolution.

patienter, patiently.
praeterquam, prep., except.
vester, vestra, vestrum, your (plu.).
exspoliō, i, rob.
stultitia, -ae, f., folly, foolishness.

1. cum . . . est: my concern lies with these.
2. Cf. cōnsentiō.
3. Cf. ferō.
4. hanc sententiam: i.e. of making a sally.
5. tantum . . . potest: such weight has honor with me.
6. loss.
7. Cf. incitō.
8. Abl. abs.
vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūti subicere. An, quod ad diem non vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē constantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulterioribus mūni tiōnibus animine causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum nūntiās cōnfīrmāri non potestis, omnis aditū præsaepō, hīs útimīnī testibus appropinquare eōrum adventum; cuius reī timōre exterrī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō mei cōnsilīi est? Facere quod nostrī maiōres nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac similī inopīa subāctī eōrum corporibus qui aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam tolerāvērent neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī si exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātī causā institui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī magnāque illātā calamitāte finibus quidem nostrīs ali quandō recesserunt atque aliās terrās petīrunt; iūra, imbēcillitās, imbēcillitātis, f., weakness. exterreō, 2; cf. per-terreō. meus, a, -um, my. nēquāquam, by no means. subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, subdue. pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful, noble. aliquamō, finally. prōsternō, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum, ruin. ergō, therefore, then. præsaepō, -ire, -saepsi, -saep tum, block. 1. Sc. nolite. 2. steadfastness. 3. animī + ne, the interrog. particle. animī causā: for the sake of amusement. 4. are kept in motion. 5. i.e. the Gauls outside. 6. i.e. the Romans. 7. i.e. the Gauls. 8. (it is my plan) to do. 9. i.e. to the present war. 10. Abl. of means with tolerā vērunt. 11. sustained. 12. Cf. dō. 13. Agrees with īstitūi and prōdī. 14. quid . . . fuit: what similarity had that war (to this one)?
lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adducti, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agris civitātibusque cōnsidere atque hīs aeter-

5 nam iniuungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condicīone bella gessērunt. Quod si ea quae in longin-
quis nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam
galliam, quae in āu provinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus
commūtātis, secūribus subjēcta perpetuā premītur

10 servitūte.'

...Caesar refuses to allow noncombatants to leave Alesia...

78. Sententiis dictis cōnstituunt ut ii qui valētūdine aut aetātē inūtile sīnt bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experienda arbitrantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum 15 cōnsiliō, si rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditōnis aut pācis subeundam condicīōnem. Mandubīi, qui eōs oppidō recēperant, cum libēris atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnitionēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in 20 servitūtem receptōs cībō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiis recipi prohibēbat.

The Gallic troops arrive and encamp near the town.

79. Intereā Commiō reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permīssā erat cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam

invidiā, -ae, f., envy.
aeternus, -a, -um, everlasting.
iniungo, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum;

cf. impōnō.
secūris, secūris, f., ax; symbol of
Roman authority.

1. The antecedent is hōrum.
2. Cf. nōscō.
3. changed.
4. ill health.
5. illō ... cōnsiliō, quam: but that plan must be used rather than.
6. guards.
perveniunt et colle ēditīōre occupātō nōn longius nostris müniṭiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiem quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum trīa patēre dēmonstrāvimus complent pedestrēsque cöpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superiūribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliis vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cöpiis ante oppidum cōnsīstunt et proxīmam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptīōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

_The Gallic cavalry suffers defeat._

80. Caesar, omni exercitū ad utramque partem müniṭiōnium dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex

1. higher.
2. Cf. dēspiciō.
3. _i.e._ the Gauls in the town.
4. _expressions of joy._
5. _joy._
6. _i.e._ the twenty-foot ditch nearest Alesia.
7. _wickerwork._
8. _earth._
9. _i.e._ the infantry.
omnibus castrīs quae summum undique iugum tenēbant dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae prōven-
tum exspectābant. Gallī inter equītēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant qui suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equītum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proelīō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superi-
ōrēs esse Gallī cōnfiderent et nostrōs multitūdine premi vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et īī qui mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et īī qui ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōn-
spectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque aut rēctē aut turpiter factum célāri poterat; utrōsque et laudis cupidit-
tās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsuum dubiā victōriā pugnārē-
tur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertēs turmis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt cōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventi interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra īnsecūti sui colligendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At īī qui Alesiā proesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls make a night attack.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō atque hoc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō Gallī,

The Gauls retire without accomplishing their desire.

82. Dum longius a mūnitione aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tellōrum prōficiēbant; posteaquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulī inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlāti trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turri-

tagitta, -ae, f.. arrow.
librillis, -e, of a pound weight.
prōterreo, 2; cf. perterreo.
tenebrae, -ārum, f., darkness.
trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fōssum, pierce through.

1. in the field.
2. with slings.
3. slingstones.
4. stakes.
5. bullets.
6. as long as.
7. sē induēbant: were im-paled.
8. sharp points.
9. ditches.
bus\textsuperscript{1} trāiectī\textsuperscript{2} pilīs\textsuperscript{3} mūralibus interiabant.\textsuperscript{4} Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūlā mūnitione perturpat, cum lūx appeteret,\textsuperscript{5} verītī nē ab latere aperītī ex superīriōribus castrīs ēruptīōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpē- runt. At interiōrēs,\textsuperscript{6} dum ea quae ā Vercingetōrīge ad ēruptīōnem praeparātā erant, prōferunt,\textsuperscript{7} priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in his rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discussisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitionibus appro- pinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

\textit{The Gauls make a third attack.}

10 83. \textbf{Bis} magnō cum dētrimentō repulsi Gallī quid agant cōnsulant; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex his superiōrum castrōrum sitūs\textsuperscript{8} mūnitionēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdi- nem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostri, necessāriōque paene iniquō locō et lēnīter\textsuperscript{9} dēclivi\textsuperscript{10} castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legionibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium lx mīlia ex omni numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum quae maxi- 15 mam virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque\textsuperscript{11} pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundi tempus dēfīniunt, cum meridiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Ver-

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{praeparō}, \textit{i} ; \textit{cf. parō}. & \texttt{circumplector}, \textit{-i}, \texttt{-plexus sum}, \textit{surround}. \\
\texttt{prōferō}; \textit{cf. ferō}. & \texttt{pactum}, \textit{-i}, \textit{n.}, \textit{manner}. \\
\texttt{infīciō}; \textit{cf. faciō}. & \texttt{dēfīniō}, \textit{4}, \textit{limit, set}. \\
bis, \textit{twice}. & \\
\end{tabular}

1. Abl. of separation. 7. Sc. et to connect with explent.
2. \textit{run through}. 8. \textit{locations}.
3. Abl. of means. 9. \textit{gently}.
5. = \textit{appropinquāret}. 11. = \textit{et quō}.
cassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris prīma vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae supra dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquaē cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

The Romans are attacked from both sides.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distinctūr nec facile pluribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus existit, quod suum praesidium in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Desperate fighting continues on both sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quaque in parte gerātūr cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrīisque ad animum occurrīt ūnum esse illud longurius, -ī, m., long pole.

1. wall.
2. Cf. teneō.
3. resisted; sc. hostibus.
4. multum . . . valet: does much toward frightening.
5. arises.
6. suum praesidium . . . cōnstāre: their own protection depends much on others' bravery.
7. are out of sight.
8. quite strongly.
9. to both sides.
tempus quod maximè contendi conveniat: Galli, nisi per-
frēgerint mūnitioāēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmāni,
si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant.
Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitioāēs labōrātur, quō Ver-
cassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Iniquum loci
ad déclivitātem fastigiām magnum habet mōmentum.
Alii tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfat-
gātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab universis
in mūnitioāēm coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea
quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmāni conegit; nec iam
arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

Caesar sends reinforcements and urges on his men.

86. His rébus cógnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohor-
tibus sex subsidīō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, si susti-
nēre nōn possit, dēductis cohorṭibus ēruptiōne pugnet;
id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohorṭa-
tur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrōrum dimicā-
tiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere.
Interiōrēs dēspērātis campestribus locīs propter
magnitudinem mūnitioāēm loca praerupta ascēnsu temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multi-
tūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpuignantēs dēturbant,
aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam¹ rescindunt.

Caesar himself enters the fight.

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidō addūcit. Restitūtō proelīō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūnitionēs et ā tergō hostēs adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis xi cohortibus, quās ex proximis praeśiđiis dēductās fors² obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid³ faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelīō inter sit.⁴

The Gauls are completely defeated.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, turmīs⁵que equitum et cohortibus visīs quās sē sequī iussērat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia⁶ et dēvexa cernē-bantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit⁷ rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitionībus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente⁸ post⁹ tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs

accelerō, 1, hurry. 
vestitus, -ūs, m., attire.

1. breastworks.
2. chance.
3. quid faciendum: i.e. to make a sally.
4. take part.
5. squadrons.
6. dēclīvia et dēvexa: the downward slopes and hillsides.
7. followed.
8. suddenly.
9. post tergum: i.e. of the Gauls.
aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellau- nus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa 5 militāria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolēmus in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī 1 ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salute cōpiās ā mūnitōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē auditā ex castrīs Gallōrum fugā. Quod nisi crēbris sub- 10 sidīis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlēri potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur: magnus numerus capitūr atque interficitur; reliqui ex fugā in civitātēs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix surrenders himself and his entire army.

15 89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suspecte non suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnāe cēdendum, ad 2 utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere 3 seu vivum 4 trādere velint. Mittuntur dē his rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādi, principēs prōducī. Ipse in mūniōne prō castrīs cōndidit 4; eō ducēs prōducuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī 6 per cōs civitātēs recuperāre posset, 25 ex reliquis captūris tōtī exercitūi capitā 7 singula prae- dae nōmine distribuit.

2. ad utramque rem: for either alternative; explained by seu... seu... velint.
3. appease.
4. alive.
5. took his place.
6. to see if.
7. capitā singula: a man apiece.
Caesar distributes his army for the winter.


1. thanksgiving.
C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO CIVILI

LIBER TERTIUS

The so-called First Triumvirate (B.C. 60), composed of Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey, was formed for the purpose of advancing the selfish interests of its members. Caesar wished to extend his power, Crassus to increase his wealth, Pompey to secure his hold on the East. With the help of Crassus and Pompey, Caesar was elected consul for the year B.C. 59. The Senate, influenced by Crassus and Pompey, voted that Caesar as proconsul should have as his province Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina, and Illyricum, with an army of four legions — an arrangement that was to hold good for five years.

Caesar thereupon set out to subdue Gaul, the narrative of which he has given us in his Commentaries on the Gallic War. The five-year period proved too short for the purpose, and hence an additional five years was granted, while Spain was allotted to Pompey, and Syria to Crassus. Pompey remained at Rome and governed his province through trusted lieutenants. Crassus proceeded to Syria, where he was killed in battle, B.C. 53.

Caesar's proconsulship was to expire at the end of B.C. 49, and wishing to stand for his second consulship in that year, he had arranged with Pompey that he should candidate for the office even though absent from the city. But Pompey, growing jealous of Caesar's marked success in Gall and Britain, joined the aristocratic (senatorial) party and induced the Senate to decree that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen some months before the expiration of his second five-year term.

Knowing that he would not be safe at Rome, where Pompey was in supreme command, Caesar refused to obey, and taking but a single legion, crossed the Rubicon, which bounded his province, and
marched towards Rome. Thus the Civil War was begun. As he advanced, many cities submitted, while Pompey, dismayed at this evidence of Caesar’s power, hastened to Brundisium and thence to Macedonia.

Caesar turned his attention to his enemies in the West. With Spain, Sicily, Sardinia, and Italy won, he returned to Rome and assumed the dictatorship, to which he had been appointed in his absence.

At this point the following selections take up the story.

*Caesar is elected consul.*

1. Dictatóre habente comitia Caesare cōnsulēs creantur Iūlius Caesar et P. Servilius; is enim erat annus, quō per lēgēs ei cōnsulem fieri licēret.

Caesar resigns the dictatorship and goes to Brundisium.

2. His rēbus et fēriis Latinīs comitiūsque omnibus perficiendīs xi diēs tribuit dictātūrāque sē abdicat et ab urbe proficiscitur Brundisiumque pervenit.

**dictātōris**, m., *dictator.* **dictātūra**, -ae, f., *dictatorship.*
**comitia**, -ōrum, n., *election.*
**fēriae**, -ārum, f., *festival.*
**abdīcō**, 1, *resign.*
**angustē**, scarcely, by crowding.

1. Pred. acc. agreeing with implied subject of fieri.
2. assigned.
3. so few.
Meanwhile Pompey has collected an enormous army.

3. Pompēius annuum spatium ad comparandās cōpiās nactus, quod vacuum ā bellō atque ab hoste ōtiōsum fuerat, magnam ex Asiā Cycladibusque insulis, Corcȳrā, Athēnīs, Pontō, Bithyniā, Syriā, Ciliciā, Phoenicē, Aegyptō classem coēgerat, magnam omnibus locis aedificandam cūrāverat.

Caesar addresses his troops, and crosses to ἕλαστε.


annuus, -a, -um; cf. annus.
ōtiōsus, -a, -um, undisturbed.
cōntiōnōr, i, address.
mancipium, -i, n., slave.
Nōnae, -ārum, f., the Nones, the

1. (cōntiōnātus) relinquerent, etc., (urging) that they should leave, etc.
2. Depends on conclāmantibus, just as relinquerent depends on cōntiōnātus above.
3. nāvēs solvit: set sail.
4. Sc. sunt.
5. Its position after the noun is unusual.
6. dangerous.
7. Here passive in meaning.
Both Caesar and Pompey hasten to reach Dyrrhachium. Pompey gains the town and both go into winter quarters.


Caesar’s effort for peace is defeated.

19. Inter bina castra Pompēī atque Caesaris ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus, crēbraque inter sē colloquía

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>diurnus, -a, -um, of the or by day.</th>
<th>mētor, 1, measure off.</th>
<th>iūrō, 1, swear, take an oath.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The subject is Pompey.</td>
<td>6. praeoccupātō itinere: since Pompey had got the start of him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. = primus.</td>
<td>7. protected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. advanced.</td>
<td>8. reliquārum legiōnēm: those at Brundisium.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
militēs habēbant, neque ullum interim tēlum per pactiōnēs loquentium trāiciēbātur. Mittit P. Vatiniōm lēgātum ad ripam ipsam flūminis, qui ea, quae maximē ad pācem pertinēre vidērentur, ageret et crēbrō magnā vōce prōnuntiāret, licēretne cīvibus ad cīvēs dē pāce tūtō lēgātōs mittere, quod etiam fugītīvīs ab saltū Pyrēnaeō praedōnibusque licisset, praeertim cum id agerent, nē cīvēs cum cīvibus armīs dēcertārent? Multa suppliciter locūtus est, ut dē suā atque omnium salūte dēbēbat, silentiōque ab utrisque militibus audītus. Respōnsum est ab alterā parte Aulum Varrōnem profiērī sē alterō dīe ad colloquium ventūrum atque eundem visūrum, quemadmodum tūtō lēgātī venīre et quae vellent expōnere possent, certumque eī rei tempus con-stituitur. Quō cum esset posterō dīe ventum, magna utrimque multitūdō convēnīt, magnaque erat exspectātiō eius rei, atque omnium animī intentī esse ad pācem vidēbantur. Quā ex frequentiā Titus Labiēnus prōdit, summissā ōratiōne dē pāce loquī atque altercāri cum Vatiniō incipit. Quōrum medium certātiōnem inter-

pactiō, pactiōnis, f., agreement. utrimque, on each side. crēbrō, adv.; cf. crēber. altercor, i, dispute. saltus, -ūs, m., mountain glade. certātiō, certātiōnis, f., strife, praedō, praedōnis, m., pirate. debate. profiētor, -ēri, -fessus sum, declare openly. interrupō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum; cf. perrumpō.

1. Sc. Caesar as subject. 5. cum ... agerent: since they were working to this end.
2. (asking) whether it was not allowable. 6. visūrum ... possent: would see how commissioners might be able, etc.
3. Refers to the remnants of 7. bent upon.
Sertorius’ army in Spain (B.C. 8. summissā ōratiōne: in a 72).
calm speech.
4. In the war with the pirates (B.C. 66).
rumpunt subitō undique tēla immissa; quae ille¹ ob-
tectus armīs militum vitāvit; vulnerantur tamen com-
plūrēs, in his Cornēlius Balbus, M. Plōtius, L. Tiburtius,
centuriōnēs militēsque nōnnūlli. Tum Labiēnus:

5 ‘Dēsinite ergō dē compositiōne loqui; nam nōbis nisi
Caesarīs capite relatō pāx esse nūlla potest.’

Caesar’s troops which were left at Brundisium under Antony and Calenus,
acting under orders, cross to Greece.

26. Illī² adhibītā audāciā et virtūte administrantibus
M. Antōniō et Fūlō Calēnō, multum ipsīs militibus hor-
tantibus neque ūllum periculum prō salūte Caesarīs re-
ocūsantibus nactī austrum nāvēs solvunt atque alterō diē
Apollōniam praetervehuntur. Quī cum essent ex con-
tinentī³ visī, Cōpōnīus, quī Dyrrhachī classī Rhodiae⁴
praecerat, nāvēs ex portū ēdūcit, et cum iam nostrīs re-
missiōrē⁵ ventō appropriquāssent, idem auster increbuit
10 nostrisque praesidiō fuit. Neque vērō ille ob eam
causam cōnātū⁶ dēsistēbat, sed labōre et persevērantiā
nautārum sē vim tempestātīs superāre posse spērābat
praetervectōsque Dyrrhachium magnā vī ventī nihilō
sētius sequēbātur. Nostrī ūsī fortūnae beneficiō tamen
impetum classī⁷ timēbant, si⁸ forte ventus remisisset.

obtēgō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctum, pro-
tect.
dēsīnō, -ere, dēsīi, dēsītum, cease.
compositiō, compositiōnis, f.,
settlement.
auster, austral, m., south wind.

praetervehor, -ī, -vectus sum, be
 carried by, sail by.
incrēbēscō, -ere, -crēbui, —,
increase.
persevērantia, -ae, f., persistency.
nauta, -ae, m., sailor.

1. i.e. Valentinus.
2. i.e. Caesar’s troops at
Brundisium.
4. Adj. with classi.
5. milder.
6. Cf. cōnōr.
7. Subjective genitive.
8. si... remisisset: if the
wind should die down.
Nacti portum, qui appellatur Nymphaeum, ultrā Lissum milia passuum III, eō nāves intrōdūxérunt (qui portus ab Africō tegēbātur, ab austrō nōn erat tūtus) leviusque tempestātis quam classis1 periculum aestimāvērunt. 5 Quō simulatque intrō est itum, incrēdibilī fēlicitāte auster, qui per biduum flāverat,3 in Africum sē vertit.

Both Caesar and Pompey advance toward Antony. Caesar joins Antony, and Pompey encamps.

30. Haec eōdem ferē tempore Caesar atque Pompēius cōgnōscunt. Nam praeter vectās Apollōniam Dyrrhachiumque nāvēs viderant, ipsi iter secundum4 eās terrā dīrēxerant, sed quō essent eae dēlātae, primīs diēbus īgnōrābant. Cōgnitāque rē diversa5 sibi ambo6 cōnsilia capiunt: Caesar, ut quam primum sē cum Antōnīō coniungēret; Pompēius, ut venientibus7 in itinere sē oppōneret, si8 imprōudentēs7 ex insidiis adorīrī posset, 15 cōdēmque diē uterque eōrum ex castrīs statīvis ā flūmine Apsō exercitum ēducent9: Pompēius clam et noctū, Cae- sar palam10 atque interdiū.11 Sed Caesāri circuitū12 maiōre iter erat longius adversō13 flūmine, ut vado trānsire posset: Pompēius, quia expeditō itinere flūmen 20 eī trānseundum nōn erat, magnīs itineribus ad Antōnium

Āfricus, -ī, m., southwest wind.  
levīter, adv.; cf. levis.  
aestimō, ī, estimate.  
intrō, adv., within.

dirigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, direct.  
īgnōrō, ī, not know.  
statīvus, -a, -um, permanent.

1. i.e. Pompey’s.  
2. good fortune.  
3. had blown.  
4. Prep., following, abreast of.  
5. different.  
6. both.  
7. Refer to Antony’s men.  
8. (to see) if.  
9. Note the singular subject.  
10. openly.  
11. by day.  
12. circuitu maiōre: explains iter longius.  
13. adversō flūmine: up the river.
contendit atque eum ubi appropinquāre cōgnōvit, idōneum locum nactus, ibi cōpiās collocāvit suōsque omnes in castris continuit ignēisque fieri prohibit, quō occultiōn iter esset eius adventus. Haec ad Antōnium statim per Graecōs dēferuntur. Ille missīs ad Caesarem nūntiis ūnum diem sēsē castris tenuit; alterō die ad eum pervēnit Caesar. Cuius adventū cōgnitō Pompēius, nē duōbus circumclūderētur exercitibus, ex eō locō discēdit omnibusque cōpiis ad Asparāgiōm Dyrrhachīnōrum pervenit atque ibi idōneō locō castra pōnit.

Caesar fails to lure Pompey to fight, but cuts him off from Dyrrhachium.

41. Caesar, postquam Pompēium ad Asparāgiōm esse cōgnōvit, eōdem cum exercitu prefectus expugnātō in itinere oppidō Parthīnōrum, in quō Pompēius praesidium habēbat, tertīō diē ad Pompēium pervēnit iūxtāque eum castra posuit et postrīdiē ēductis omnibus cōpiis aciē instructā dēcernendi potestātem Pompēiō fēcit. Ubi illum suis locīs sē tenēre animadvertit, reductō in castra exercitū, aliud sibi cōnsilium capiendum existimāvit. Itaque posterō die omnibus cōpiis magnō circumcuitū difficultī angustōque itinere Dyrrhachium prefectus est spērāns Pompēium aut Dyrrhachium compelli aut ab eō interclūdi posse, quod omnem commeātum tōtiusque belli apparātum eō contulisset; ut accidit. Pompeius enim primō ignōrāns eius cōnsilium, quod diversō ab ea regiōne itinere prefectum vidēbat, angustiis rei apparātus, -ūs, m., equipment.

1. to the same place. 5. ut accidit: and so it turned out.
2. close to. 6. prefectum (esse): sc. Caesarem.
3. of fighting a decisive combat. 7. scarcity, abl. of cause.
4. The subject is Pompey.
frumentariae compulsum discississe existimabat; posteà per exploratóris certior factus posterò diè castra mövit brevióre itinere sè occurrere ei posse spērāns. Quod fore suspicātus Caesar mīlitēsque adhortātus, ut aqueò animō labōrem ferrent, parvā parte noctis itinere intermissō manē Dyrrhachium vēnit, cum primum agmen Pompēī procul cernerēt, atque ibi castra posuit.

Caesar arranges for food supply.

42. Pompēius interclūsus Dyrrhachio, ubi prōpositum tenēre nōn potuit, secundō ēsus consiliō editō locō, quī appellātūr Petra aditumque habet nāvibus mediocrem atque eās ā quibusdam prōtegit ventīs, castra commūnit. Eō partem nāvium longārum convenīre, frumentum commeātumque ab Asiā atque omnibus regiōnibus, quās tenēbat, comportārī imperat. Caesar longius bellum ductum īri existimāns et ē Italici commētibus despērāns, quod tantā diligentiā omnia litora ā Pompēiānis tenēbantur, classēsque ipsius, quās hieme in Siciliā, Galliā, Italīā fēcerat, morābantur, in Epīrum rei frumentariae causā Q. Tillium et L. Canulēium légārum misit, quoque hae regiōnēs aberant longius, locis certīs horrea cōnstituit vectūrāsque frumentī finitimīs civitātibus dēscripsit. Item Lissō Parthinēsque et omnibus castellis quod esset frumentī conquīrī iussit. Id erat perexiguum cum ipsius agrī nātūrā, quod sunt
loca aspera\(^1\) ac montuosa ac plêrumque frûmentô utuntur importâtô, tum quod Pompeius haec\(^2\) prôviderat et superiôribus diêbus praedae locô Parthînôs habuerat frûmentumque omne conquisitum spoliâtis\(^3\) effossisque\(^4\) eôrum domibus per equites comportâtat.

_Caesar hems in Pompey with a line of fortresses._

43. Quibus rêbus cõgnitis Caesar cõnsilium capit ex loci nâtûrâ. Erant enim circum castra Pompei permultî ëditî atque asperi collês. Hôs prîmum praesidiis tenuit castellaque ibi commûnit. Inde, ut locî cuiusque nâtûra ferëbat,\(^5\) ex castellô in castellum perductâ múntione circumvallâre Pompeium instituit, haec\(^6\) spectâns, quod angustâ re frûmentariâ ûtëbâtur,\(^7\) quodque Pompei multitudine equitum valëbat, quô minôre periculô undique frûmentum commeâtumque exercitû supportâre posset, símul, uti pâbulâtione Pompeium prohiberet equitâtumque eius ad rem gerendam inûtilem efficeret, tertô, ut auctôritâtêm, quâ ille\(^8\) maximê apud exterâs nâtônês nîti\(^9\) vidëbâtur,\(^10\) minueret, cum fâma per orbem terrarum percrêbuisset illum à Caesare obsidérî neque audëre proelîo dîmicâre.

---

1. _rough._
2. _haec prôviderat: had foreseen this move._
3. _stripped._
4. _undermined._
5. = postulábat.

6. _percrêbëscô, -ere, -crêbui, —, become very frequent, be spread._
7. _found._
8. _i.e. Pompey._
9. _rely on._
10. _was seen._
Pompey builds counter fortifications and harasses Caesar's men while they are at work.

44. Pompēius neque ā mari Dyrrhachiōque discēdere volēbat, quod omnem apparātum belli, tēla, arma, tormenta ibi collocāverat frūmentumque exercitui nāvibus supportābat, neque mūnitionēs Caesaris prohibēre poterat, nisi proeliō dēcertāre vellet; quod eō tempore statuerat nōn esse faciendum. Relinquēbātur, ut extremam ratīōnem bellī sequēns quam plūrimōs collēs occupāret et quam lātissimās regiōnēs praeidīs tenēret Caesarisque cōpiās, quam maximē posset, distinēret; idque accidit. Castellis enim xxiv effectis xv milia passuum circuitū amplexus hōc spatīo pābulābatur; multaque erant intrā eum locum manū sata; quibus interim iūmenta pāsceret. Atque ut nostrī perpetuās mūnitionēs habēbant, perductās ex castellis in proximā castella, nē quō locō ērumperent Pompēiani ac nostrōs post tergum adorīrentur, ita illī interiōre spatīo perpetuās mūnitionēs efficiēbant, nē quem locum nostrī intrāre atque ipsōs ā tergō circumvenire possent. Sed illī operibus vincēbant, quod et numerō militum praestābant et interiōre spatīō minōrem circuitum habēbant. Quārē cum erant loca Caesarī capienda, etsī prohibēre Pompēius tōtīs cōpiās et dimicāre nōn cōn-

amplector, ĕ, -plexus sum, sur-round. intro, ĕ, enter.

1. The subject is the clause ut, etc.
2. extremam ratio: the last resort.
3. planted.
4. could feed.
5. continuous.
6. i.e. the Pompeians.
7. in (pushing) their fortifications.
8. Abl. of cause.
9. cum ... capienda: whenever Caesar had to seize new places.
CAESAR, CIVIL WAR, BOOK III

stituerat, tamen suis locis sagittāriōs funditōrēsque mittēbat, quōrum magnum habēbat numerum, multique ex nostrīs vulnerābantur, magnusque incesserat timor sagittārum, atque omnēs fērē militēs aut ex coāctis aut ex centōnibus aut ex coriīs tunicās aut tegimenta fēcerant, quibus tēla vītērent.  

Caesar’s troops retire from a skirmish with slight loss.

46. Nōstrī vērō, qui satis habēbant sine dētrimentō discēdere, complūribus interfectis v omnīnō suōrum āmissis quiētissimē sē recēpērunt paulōque citrā eum locum morāti aliis comprehēnsis collibus mūนītōnēs perfēcērunt.

Pompey has abundant supplies while Caesar suffers from want.

47. Erat nova et inūsitāta bellī ratiō cum tot castellōrum numerō tantōque spatiō et tantis mūnītōnibus et tōtō obsidiōnis genere, tum etiam reliquis rēbus. Nam quīcumque alterum obsidēre cōnātī sunt, percūlsōs atque infirmōs hostēs adortī aut proeliō superātōs aut aliquā offēnsiōne permōtōs continuērunt, cum

---

incēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, come up, arise.
cōāctum, -ī, n., felt.
centō, centōnis, m., matting.
corium, -ī, -n., hide.
tunica, -ae, f., shirt.
percūlus, -a, -um, upset, disconcerted.

---

1. suis locis: favorable places.
2. sagittāriōs funditōrēsque: bowmen and slingers.
3. coverings.
4. escape.
5. satis habēbant: deemed it sufficient.
6. i.e. of the enemy.
7. unusual.
8. numerō, etc.: abls. of specification.
9. nam ... prohibērent: a statement of a general truth; therefore praestārent and prohibērent should be translated by the present tense.
10. his opponent.
11. defeat.
12. kept in check.
ipsi numerō equitum militumque praestārent; causa autem obsidiōnis haec fērē esse cōnsuēvit, ut frūmentō hostēs prohibērent. At tum integrās atque incolumēs cōpiās Caesar īnferiōre militum numerō continēbat, cum illi omnium rērum cōpiā abundārent; cotīdiē enim magnus undique nāvium numerus conveniēbat, quae commētārum supportārent, neque ūllus flāre ventus poterat, quin aliqüā ex parte secundum cursum habērent. Ipse autem cōnsūmptis omnibus longē lātēque frū- mentīs summīs erat in angustīs. Sed tamen haec singulāri patientiā militēs ferēbant. Recordābantur enim eadem sē superiōre annō in Hispānīā perpessōs labōre et patientiā maximum bellum cōnfēcisse, meminerant ad Alesiam magnam sē inopiam perpessōs, multō etiam maiōrem ad Avaricum maximārum sē gentium victōrēs discessisse. Nōn, illīs hordeum cum darētur, nōn legūmina recūsābant; pecus vērō, cuius rei summā erat ex Ėpirō cōpia, magnō in ḥonōre habēbant.

A substitute for bread is found.

48. Est etiam genus rādicis inventum ab īs, qui vacā-bant ab operibus, quod appellātur chara, quod admix-

1. causa . . . cōnsuēvit, ut: moreover the purpose of such a blockade has generally been this, that.
2. at tum: but on this oc-casion.
3. tried to keep in check.
4. to blow.

Legūmen, legūminis, n., bean.
Chara, -ae, f., chara, a kind of wild vegetable.
Admiscēo, -ēre, -miscui, -mixtum, mixed with.

5. quin . . . habērent: lit. but that they had a favorable wind from some quarter.
6. i.e. Caesar.
7. remembered.
8. nōn, illīs hordeum cum darētur = hordeum nōn recūsā-bant cum darētur.
tum lacte multum inopiam levābat. Id ad similitūdinem pānis efficiēbant. Eius erat magnā cōpia. Ex hōc effectōs pānēs, cum in colloquiis Pompēiānī famem nostrīs obiectārent, vulgō in eōs iaciēbant, ut spēm eōrum minuerent.

Pompey’s army suffers from want of food and water.

49. Iamque frūmenta māttūrēscere incipiēbant, atque ipsa spēs inopiam sustentābat, quod celeriter sē habitūrōs cōpiam confidēbant; crēbraeque vōcēs militum in vigiliis colloquiisque audiēbantur, prius sē cortice ex arboribus victūrōs, quam Pompēium ē manibus dimissūrōs. Libenter etiam ex perfugīs cōgnōscēbant equōs eōrum tolerāri, reliqua vērō iūmenta interisse; útī autem ipsōs valētūdine non bonā, cum angustīs locī et odōre taetrō ex multitūdine cadāverum et cotidiānis labōribus insuētōs operum, tum aquae summā inopią affectōs. Omnia enim flūmina atque omnēs rīvōs, quī ad mare pertinēbant, Caesar aut āverterat aut magnīs operibus obstrūxerat, atque ut erant loca montuōsa et aditūs perangustī vallium, hās sublicēs in terram

pānis, pānis, m., bread.
obiectō, 1, throw up at, taunt with.

māttūrēscō, -ere, māttūrūi, —, begin to ripen.
odor, odōris, m., stench.
taeter, taetra, taetrum, foul.

1. relieved.
2. likeness.
3. hunger.
4. made bearable.
5. bark.
6. live.
7. gladly.
8. i.e. Pompey’s men.
9. kept alive.
10. Subject of útī.
11. dead bodies.
12. insuētōs operum: being unused to work.
13. afflicted: agrees with ipsōs and is modified by the abl. of cause.
14. brooks.
15. stopped.
16. i.e. vallēs.
17. stakes.
démissīs praesaepserat¹ terramque adiēcerat, ut aquam continēret. Ita illī necessāriō loca sequī dēmissa² ac palūstria et puteōs³ fodere⁴ cōgēbantur atque hunc labōrem ad cotidiāna opera addēbant; quī tamen fontēs ⁵ ā quibusdam praesidiis aberant longius et celeriter aestibus exārēscēbant. At Caesaris exercitus optimā valētudine summāque aquae cōpiā ūtēbātur, tum⁶ commeātūs omni genere praeter frūmentum abundābat, cuius cotidiē melius succēdere tempus maiōremque spem mātūritātē frūmentōrum prōpōnī vidēbant.

*Night attacks are made on Caesar's troops.*

50. In novō genere bellī novae ab utrisque bellandī ratiōnēs⁶ reperiēbantur. Illī, cum animadvertissent ex ignibus nocte cohortēs nostrās ad mūnitiónēs excubāre, silentiō aggressī universī intrā multitūdimem 15 sagittās coniciēbant et sē cōnfestim ad suōs recipībant. Quibus rēbus nostrī ūsū doctī haec reperiēbant remedia, ut aliō locō ignēs facerent aliō excubārent.

*Sulla's arrival drives the Pompeians off.*

51. Interim certior factus P. Sūlla, quem discēdēns castris praefēcerat Caesar, auxiliō cohortī vēnit cum legiōni-⁰ bus duābus; cuius adventū facile sunt repulsi Pompeīānī. Neque vērō cōnspectum aut impetum nostrōrum tulērant, primisque dēiectis reliqui sē vertērant et locō cessērant.

| palūster, -tris, -tre, swampy, | mātūritās, mātūritātis, f. ; cf. mātūrus. |
| fōns, fontis, m., spring, well. | excubō, -ere, -cubūlī, -cubitum, |
| exārēscō, -ere, -āruī, —, dry up. | keep watch. |
| abundō, 1, abound. | remedium, -i, n., help. |

1. blocked up. 4. dig. 5. *and then too.*
2. low. 6. methods.
Sed inequentēs nostrōs, nē longius prósequentur, Sūlla revocāvit. At plēriœque existimant, sī ácrius insequī volúisset, bellum eō diē potuisse 1 finīre. Cuius cōnsilium reprehendendum nōn vidētur. Aliae 2 enim sunt légāti partēs atque imperātōris: alter omnia agere ad 3 praescriptum, 4 alter liberē 5 ad summam 6 rērum cōnsulere debēt.

Six engagements bring losses to both sides. Caesar rewards his men.

53. Únō diē vi proeliiōs factis, tribus ad Dyrrhachium, tribus ad müñitionēs, cum hōrum omnium ratiō 7 habē-rētur, ad 8 duo milia numerō ex Pompēiānis cecidisse reperìēbāmus, èvocātōs 9 centuriōnēsque complūrés (in eō fuit numerō Valerius Flaccus, L. filius, eius, qui praetor Asiam obtinuerat); signaque sunt militāria vi relāta. Nostri nōn amplius xx omnibus sunt proeliiōs désiderāti.10 Sed in castellō nēmō fuit omninō militum, quīn vulnerārētur, quattuorque ex ūnā cohorte centuriōnēs oculōs āmīserunt. Et cum labōris sui periculiōque testimōnium afferre vellent, milia sagittārum circiter xxx in castellum coniecta Caesari renūntiāverunt, scūtōque ad eum relātō Scaevae centuriōnis inventa sunt in eō forāmina cxx. Quem 11 Caesar, ut erat dē sé meritus et dē rē pública, dōnātum 12 milibus 13 cc . . . collaudā-tūmque ab octāvis ordinibus ad prīmīpulum sé trādūcere 14

1. Sc. Sūllam as subject. 9. veterans; appositive with milia.
2. aliæ atque: different 10. lost.
3. according to. 11. Obj. of trādūcere.
4. instructions. 12. presented with; agrees with quem, as does also collaudātum.
5. freely. 13. milibus cc: sc. sēstertium.
6. summam rērum: general 200,000 sesterces equals something like $8000.
interests. 14. promote.
7. reckoning.
8. about, adv.
pronuntiavit (eius enim ope castellum magnâ ex part cōnservātum esse cōnstābat) cohortemque posteā di plici stipendiō, frūmentō, veste, congiāriis militāribus que dōnis amplissimē dōnāvit.

Because of scarcity of fodder, Pompey plans to force the blockade.

5 58. Caesar, quo facilius equitātum Pompeiānum a Dyrrhachium continēret et pābulātiōne prohibēret, ad tūs duōs, quōs esse angustōs dēmōnstrāvimus, magnō operibus prahēnīvit castellaque his locis posuit. Pon pēius, ubi nihil prōficiē equitātū cōgnōvit, paucīs intermissīs diēbus rūrsum eum nāvibus ad sē intrā mūn tiōnēs recipit. Erat summa inopia pābulī, adeō foliīs ex arboribus strictis et tenerīs harundinum rād cibus contūsis equōs alerent (frūmenta enim, qua fuerant intrā mūnitiōnēs sata, cōnsūmpserant); cōg bantur Corcyrā atque Acarnānīa longō interiectō nāvigi tiōnīs spatiō pābulum supportāre, quoque erat eius mōn tiōnēs cōpia, hordeō adaugēre atque his ratiōnibus equitātum tolerāre. Sed postquam nōn modo hordeum pābulumque omnibus locis herbaeque dēsectae, se etiam frōns ex arboribus dēficiēbat, corruptīs equ

congiārium, -i, n., reward.
folium, -i, n., leaf.
stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum, pluck.
harundō, harundinis, f., reed.

contundō, -ere, -tūdi, -tūsur bruise.
adaugēō, -ēre, -auxī, -auctum; augēō.
herba, -ae, f., grass.

1. help.
2. it was clear.
3. clothing.
4. accomplished.
5. = equitātum.
6. fodder.
7. to such a degree.
8. Ablatives of means with
9. tender.
10. had to feed.
11. sown.
12. too small.
13. cut down.
14. foliage.
15. emaciated.
māciē cōnandum sibi aliquid Pompēius dē ēruptiōne existimāvit.

Two brothers who have received many favors from Caesar are charged by the troopers with dishonesty.

59. Erant apud Caesarem ex equitum numerō Allobrogēs duo frātres, Raucillus et Egus, Adbucilli filii, qui principātum in civitāte multis annis obtinuerat, singulāri virtūte hominēs, quōrum operā Caesar omnibus Gallicis bellis optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. His domi ob hās causās amplissimās magistrātūs mandāverat atque eōs extrā ordinem in senātum legendōs cūrāverat agrōsque in Galliā ex hostibus captōs praemiaque rei pecūniāriae magna tribuerat locuplētēsque ex egentibus fēcerat. Hi propter virtūtem non sōlum apud Caesarem in honōre erant, sed etiam apud exercitum cārī habēbantur: sed frētī amicitiā Caesaris et stultā ac barbarā arrogantiā ēlātī dēspiciēbant suōs stipendiumque equitum fraudābant et praedam omnem clōnum āvertēbant. Quibus illī rēbus permōtī universi Caesarem adiērunt palamque dē eōrum iniūriis sunt questi et ad cētera addidērunt falsum ab hīs

māciēs, —, abl. māciē, f., lack of fodder.
Legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, choose. locuplēs, locuplētis, rich.
stultus, -a, -um, foolish.
fraudō, i, steal.

1. multīs annīs: abl. of time
Within which, but to be trans-
lated like acc. of extent.
2. operā optimā erat ūsus:
aid Caesar had found very
useful.
3. extrā ordinem: outside the
regular routine.
4. in senātum: as members
of the senate (of the Allobroges).
5. rei pecūniāriae: money.
6. had given.
7. poor.
8. dear.
9. relying.
10. domum āvertēbant: i.e. appropriated.
11. i.e. the cavalrymen.
12. openly.
13. i.e. the two brothers.
equitum numerum dēferri, quōrum stipendium āverterent.

_Caesar censures them and they return to Pompey._

60. Caesar neque tempus illud animadversiōnis esse existimāns et multa virtūtī eōrum concēdēns rem tōtam 5 distulit; illōs sēcrētō castīgāvit, quod quaestui equītēs habērent, monuitque, ut ex suā amīcitā omnia exspectārent et ex praeteritis suis officiis reliqua spērārent. Māgnam tamen haec rēs illīs offensīōnem et contemptōnem ad omnēs attulit, idque ita esse cum ex alīorum obiectātiōnibus tum etiam ex domesticō iūdiciō atque animī consciencīā intellegēbant. Quō pudōre adductī et fortasse non sē liberāri, sed in aliud tempus reservāri arbitrāti discēdere à nōbis et novam temptāre fortūnam novāsqve amīcitās experīrī consītuērunt. Et cum paucīs collocūtī clientibus suīs, quibus tantum faciūs committere audēbant, prīnum cōnātī sunt praefectūm equītum C. Volūsēnum interficere, ut postea bellō cōnfectō cōgnitum est, ut cum mūnere aliquō perfūgisse ad Pompēium vidērentur; postquam id difīcilius visum est neque facultās perficiēndi dabātur, quam maximās potuērunt pecūniās mūtuātī, proinde ac animadversiō, animadversiōnis, f., consideration, attention, punishment.

 castigo, i. punish.

| 1. quaestui habēre : used for gain. | 8. animī consciencīā : guilty conscience. |
| 2. ex . . . officiis : in accordance with his past favors. | 9. Connects adductī and arbitrāti. |
| 4. discredit. | 11. cum mūnere : carrying some favor, i.e. the death of Volusenus. |
| 5. in the eyes of. | 12. proinde ac : just as though. |
| 6. id ita esse : it to be such. | |
suis satisfacere\textsuperscript{1} et fraudātā restituere vellent, multis coēmpōs\textsuperscript{2} equis ad Pompēium trānsiērant cum iis, quōs sui cōnsiliī participēs habēbant.

Pompey gladly receives them and they inform him about Caesar and his army.

61. Quōs\textsuperscript{3} Pompēius, quod erant honestō\textsuperscript{4} locō nātī\textsuperscript{5} et īnstrūctī liberālīter magnōque comitātū et multis iūmentīs vēnerant virique fortēs habēbantur et in honōre apūd Caesarem fuerant, quodque\textsuperscript{6} novum et praeter consuētudinem acciderat, omnia sua præsidiā\textsuperscript{8} circumdūxit atque ostentāvit.\textsuperscript{7} Nam ante id tempus nēmō aut miles aut eques ā Caesare ad Pompēium trānsierat, cum\textsuperscript{8} paene cotidiē ā Pompēiō ad Caesarem perfugere, vulgō\textsuperscript{9} vērō universi in Ėpīrō atque Aetōliā conscriptī militēs eārumque regiōnum omnium, quae ā Caesare tenēbantur. Sed hi\textsuperscript{10} cōgnītīs omnibus rēbus, seu\textsuperscript{11} quid\textsuperscript{12} in mūnitio nibus perfectum nōn erat, seu quid ā perītiōribus reī\textsuperscript{13} militāris désiderāriī\textsuperscript{14} vidēbātur, tempori busque\textsuperscript{15} rērum\textsuperscript{16} et spatiis\textsuperscript{15} locōrum et custōdiārum\textsuperscript{17}

\textit{particeps, participis, m., accompany.} \quad \textit{comitātus, -ūs, m., escort, train, retain.}

\begin{itemize}
\item 1. repay.
\item 2. bought up.
\item 3. Object of dūxit in circum-
\item 4. honorable.
\item 5. quodque ... acciderat:
\item 6. Acc. with circum and also
\item 7. showed.
\item 8. Concessive.
\item 9. (et) vulgō in Ėpīrō ...
\item cōnscriptī militēs ...
\end{itemize}

\footnotesize{SECOND YEAR LATIN — 9}
variā diligentiā animadversā, prout\(^1\) cuiusque eōrum, quī negōtīs praeerant, aut nātūra aut studium ferēbat, haec\(^2\) ad Pompeium omnia dētulērunt.

*Pompey plans an attack on Caesar.*

62. Quibus ille cōgnitis ēruptionisque iam ante captō cōnsiliō, ut dēmōnstrātum est, tegmenta galeis\(^3\) militēs ex vīminibus\(^4\) facere atque aggerem\(^5\) iubet comportāre. Hīs pārātis rēbus magnum numerum levis armātūrae et sagittāriōrum aggeremque omnem noctū in scaphās\(^6\) et nāvēs actuāriās\(^7\) impōnit et dē medīa nocte cohortēs LX ex maximīs castrīs praesidiīisque dēductās ad eam partem mūnitionum dūcit, quae pertinēbant ad mare longissimēque ā maximīs castrīs Caesarīs aberant. Eōdem nāvēs, quās dēmōnstrāvimus aggere et levis armātūrae militibus complētās, quāsque ad Dyrrhachium nāvēs\(^8\) longās habēbat, mittit et, quid ā quōque fierī velit, praecipit.\(^9\) Ad eās mūnitionēs Caesar Lentulum Mārcellīnum quaeōrem cum legiōne nōnā positum habēbat. Huic, quod valētūdine\(^10\) minus commodā ütēbātur, Fulvium Postumum adiūtōrem\(^11\) summīserat.

*Description of the point of attack. Caesar’s men are driven back.*

63. Erat eō locō fossa pedum xv et vāllum contrā hostem in altitūdinem pedum x, tantundemque\(^12\) eius prout, according, as.

\(^{1}\) prout \(\ldots\) ferēbat: according as the character and zeal of each man showed (itself).

The clause explains variā.

\(^{2}\) Explained by the preceding clauses, cōgnitis \(\ldots\) ferēbat.

\(^{3}\) helmets.

\(^{4}\) twigs.

\(^{5}\) rubbish.

\(^{6}\) skiffs.

\(^{7}\) swift.

\(^{8}\) nāvēs longās: warships.

\(^{9}\) ordered.

\(^{10}\) valētūdine minus commodā: ill health.

\(^{11}\) adjutant.

\(^{12}\) just as far as.
vallī agger\(^1\) in lātitūdinem patēbat: ab eō intermissō spatiō pedum \(\text{dc}\) alter conversus in contrārium partem erat vallus\(^2\) humilīōre paulō mūnītione. Hoc\(^3\) enim superiōribus diēbus timēns Caesar, nē nāvibus nostrī 5 circumvenirentur, duplicem eō locō fēcerat vallum, ut,

---

\(^{1}\) embankment.  
\(^{2}\) rampart.  
\(^{3}\) Explained by nē...cir-  
\(^{4}\) continuous.  
\(^{5}\) at right angles.
incommodum. Nam ut ad mare ii cohortes nonae legionis excubuerant, accessere subito primae luce Pompæiani; simul navibus circumvecti milités in exteriorēm vallum tēla iaciēbant, fossaeque aggere comprehendunt, et legiōnāriī interiōris mūnitiōnis défēnsōrēs scālis admoētis tormentis cuiusque generis telēisque terrēbant, magnaque multitudō sagittāriōrum ab utrāque parte circumfundēbātur. Multum autem ab ictū lapidum, quod ūnum nostrīs erat tēlum, viminea tegimenta galeīs imposita défendēbant. Itaque cum omnibus rēbus nostrīs premerentur atque aegrei resistent, animadversum est vitium mūnitiōnis, quod supra dēmonstrātum est, atque inter duōs vallōs, quā perfectum opus nōn erat, per mare navibus expositī in āversōs nostrōs impetum fēcērunt atque ex utrāque mūnitiōne dēiectōs terga vertere coēgērunt.

A panic ensues. The eagle is saved by the bravery of the standard bearer.

64. Hoc tumultū nūntiātō Márcellīnus cohortēs subsidiō nostrīs labōrantibus summarīt ex castrīs; quae fugientēs conspicātæ neque illōs suō adventū cōnfīrmāre potuērunt neque ipsae hostīum impetum tuleōrunt. Itaque quodcumque addēbātur subsidiō, id corrēptum timōre fugientium terrōrem et periculum augēbat; hominum enim multitūdine receptus impediē-

1. injury.  
2. had bivouacked.  
3. Perfect third pers. plur.  
4. brought around.  
5. ladders, abl. abs. with ad-  
mōtis.  
6. missiles, abl. of means.  
7. crowded around.  
8. to a great extent.  
9. blow.  
10. weakness.  
11. in . . . nostrōs: upon our rear.  
13. quodcumque subsidiō: whatever in the way of help.  
14. carried away.  
15. retreat.
CAESAR, CIVIL WAR, BOOK III

bātur. In eō proeliō cum gravī vulnere esset affectus¹ aquilifer et à viribus² déficerētur,³ cōnspicātus equitēs nostrōs, 'Hanc ⁴ ego,' inquit, 'et vivus multōs per annōs magnā diligentīā défendi et nunc moriēns eādem fidē ⁵ Caesārī restituō. Nōlite, obsecrō,⁶ committere, quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit, ut reī militāris défecus admittātur,⁷ incoluemque ad eum déferte.' Hōc cāsū aquila cōnservātur omnibus primae cohortis centurionibus interfecīs praeter principem priōrem.

Both Caesar and Pompey come to help.

10 ⁶⁵. Iamque Pompēiānī magnā⁷ caede nostrōrum castris Mārcellīnī appropiquābant nōn mediocrī terrōre illātō reliquis cohortibus,⁸ et M. Antōnīus, qui prōximum locum praeсидīōrum tenēbat, eā rē nūntiātā cum cohortibus xī dēscendēns ex locō superiōre cernēbātur. ¹⁵ Cuius adventus Pompēiānōs compressit nostrōsque firmāvit, ut sē⁹ ex maximō timōre colligerent. Neque multō post Caesar significātōne per¹⁰ castella fūmō factā, ut erat superiōris temporis cōnsuetūdō, dēductis quibusdam cohortibus ex praeсидīōs eōdem vēnit. Quī ²⁰ cōgnitō détimentō cum animadvertisset Pompēium extrā mūnitionēs ēgressum secundum¹¹ mare, ut¹² liberē pābulāri posset nec¹³ minus aditum nāvibus habēret,

dēdecus, dēdecoris, n., disgrace. comprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, check.

1. afflicted.
2. Personified and hence abl. of agent.
3. was abandoned.
4. Sc. aquilam.
5. implore.
6. be committed.
7. magnā caede: abl. of at-
tendant circumstance.
8. Dat. with illātō.
9. sē colligerent: recovered.
10. per castella: from one re-
doubt to another.
11. Prep., along.
12. ut . . . habēret: result.
13. nec minus: and yet.
commutatā ratio ne bellī, quoniam prōpositum nōn tenuerat, castra īūxtā Pompēium mūnire iussit.

Pompey sends a legion to seize an abandoned camp.


prōpositum, -ī, n., plan. close.
mūtō, ē, change. aquor, ī, get water.
includō, -ere, -clōsī, -clōsum, in-
inānis, -ē, empty.

1. prōpositum nōn tenuerat: had not carried out his plan (of blockade).
2. Sc. suōs as subject.
3. Attracted from gender and number of cohortēs to gender and number of instar.
4. the equal of.
5. location.
6. Sc. eās, referring to cōpiās.
7. Sc. castra.
8. left standing.
10. in this condition.
The camp is reached but is attacked by Caesar.


sarcīō, -īre, sarsi, sartum, re- excīdō, -ere, -cidī, -csum, cut pair.
ēricius, -ī, m., log set with spikes.

1. Adverb.
2. Sc. rem, referring to signō
3. did disappoint.
4. rusk in.
5. betrayed.
7. Accusative.
Caesar's men mistake an outlying wall for the camp.

68. Sed fortūna, quae plūrimum potest cum in reli-
quis rēbus tum praecipuē in bellō, parvis mōmentis magnās rērum commūtātiōnēs efficit; ut tum accidit. Mūnitiōnem, quam pertinēre ā castris ad flūmen suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, dextri Caesaris cornūs cohortēs ignō-
rantiā loci sunt secūtae, cum portam quaererent castrō-
rumque eam mūnitiōnem esse arbitrārentur. Quod cum esset animadversum, coniūnctam esse flūminī, prō-
rutis mūnitiōnibus défendente nullō trānscendērunt, omnisque noster equitātus eās cohortēs est secūtus.

Pompey comes up with help and Caesar's men are panic-stricken.

69. Interim Pompēius hāc satis longā interiectā morā
et rē nūntiātā v legiōnēs ab opere dēductās subsidiō
suis dūxit, eōdemque tempore equitātus eius nostrīs equitibus appropinquābat, et acīēs instrūcta ā nostrīs, qui castra occupāverant, cernēbātur, omniaque sunt subitō mūtāta. Legiō Pompēiāna celeris spē subsidii cōnfīrmāta ab decumānā portā resistere cōnābātur atque ultrō in nostrōs impetum faciēbat. Equitātus Caesaris, quod angustō itinere per aggerēs ascendēbat, receptuī suō timēns initium fugae faciēbat. Dextrum cornū, quod erat ā sinistrō sēclūsum, terrōre equitum animadversō, nē intrā mūnitiōnem opprimerētur, eā ignōrantia, -ae, f., ignorance. seclūdō, -ere, -clūdī, -clūsum, shut off, separate.

1. incidents.
2. Explained by coniūnctam . . . flūminī, which has mūnitiōnem (understood) as subject.
3. torn down.
4. angustō itinere: i.e. the breach.
5. over.
6. receptuī suō timēns: fearing for their retreat.
7. nē . . . opprimerētur: purpose of sēsō recipiēbat.
8. eā parte: i.e. by the breach.
parte, quam prōruerat, sēsē recipiēbat, ac plērique ex hīs, nē in angustiās inciderent, ex x pedum mūnitio ne sē in fossās praecepitābant, primisque oppressi reliquī per hōrum corpora salūtem sibi atque exitum pariēbant. 5 Sinistrō cornū mīlitēs, cum ex vāllō Pompēium adesse et suōs fugere cernerent, veritī, nē angustiis interclūde rentur, cum extrā et intus hostem habērent, eōdem, quō vēnerant, receptū sibi cōnsulēbant, omniaque erant tumultūs, timōris, fugae plēna, adeō ut, cum Caesar signa fugientium manū prēnderet et cōnsistere iūb ēret, aliī eōdem cursū fugerent, aliī ex metū etiam signa dīmitterent, neque quisquam omnīnō cōnsisteret.

The same outlying wall proves the salvation of Caesar's men.

70. Hīs tantīs malīs haec subsīdia succurrēbant, quō minus omnis dēlērētur exercitus, quod Pompēius insidiās timēns, crēdō, quod haec praetēr spēm acci dent eius, qui paulō ante ex castrīs fugientēs suōs cō nspēxerat, mūnitio nibus appropinquāre aliquamdiū nōn audēbat, equitēsque eius angustiīs atque hīs ab Cae saris militibus occupātīs ad insequendum tardābantur.

praecipitō, 1, throw headlong.

1. trampled to death.
2. won.
3. ex vāllō: modifies cernent.
4. eōdem receptū sibi cōnsulēbant: they looked out for themselves by retreating over the same path by which they had come.
5. so much so.
6. eōdem cursū: with the same speed.
7. Explained by the quod clause.
8. aided.
9. quō, etc.: in preventing the whole army from being destroyed.
10. for some time.
11. atque hīs occupātīs: and by the fact that these were seized.
12. ad insequendum: in (regard to) their pursuit.
13. were checked.
Ita parvae rēs magnum in utramque partem mōmentum habuērunt. Mūnitōnēs enim ā castrīs ad flūmen perductae expugnātīs iam castrīs Pompēī propriam expeditamque Caesaris victōriam interpellāvērunt, eadem rēs celeritāte īsequentium tardātā nostrīs salūtem attulit.


71. Duōbus his ūnius diēi proeliis Caesar désiderāvit militēs dcccclx et nōtōs equitēs Rōmānōs Fleginātem Tūticānum Gallum, senātōris filium, C. Fleginātem Placentiā, A. Grānium Puteolis, M. Sacrātivīrum Capuā, tribūnōs militum, et centuriōnēs xxxii; sed hōrum omnium pars magna in fossīs mūnitōnibusque et flūminis ripīs oppressa suōrum in terrōre ac fugā sine ūllō vulnere interīt: signaque sunt militāria āmissa xxxii. Pompēius eō proeliō imperātor est appellātus. Hoc nōmen obtinuit atque ita sē posteā salútāri passus est; sed in litterīs numquam scribere est solitus, neque in fascibus īnsignia laureae praetulit. At Labiēnus, cum ab eō impetrāvisset, ut sibi captīvōs trādī iubēret, omnēs prōductōs ostentātiōnis, ut vidēbātur, causā,

**Notes:**

1. influence.  
2. propriam expeditamque: complete and easy.  
3. prevented.  
4. lost.  
5. from Placentia.  
6. est solitus: was accustomed.  
7. insignia praetulit: had the decoration of laurel wreath carried before him.  
8. Obj. of appellāns, interrogaōnas, and interfēcit.  
9. prōductōs causā: after they had been led out for the sake.

**Vocabulary:**

- *salūtō, i, greet, hail.*  
- *fascis, fascis, m., in plu. fasces, a bundle of rods inclosing an ax, a symbol of authority.*  
- *laurea, -ae, f., the laurel tree, laurel wreath.*  
- *ostentātiō, ostentātiōnis, f., display.*
CAESAR, CIVIL WAR, BOOK III

quō majorem perfugiae fidēs habērētur, commilitōnēs appellāns et magnā verbōrum contumeliā interrogāns, solērentne veterāni militiae fugere, in omnium conspectū interfēcit.

Pompey's men are prematurely elated.

72. His rēbus tantum fidūciae ac spiritūs Pompeiānis accessit, ut nōn dē ratione bellī cogitārent, sed vicisse iam vidērentur. Nōn illī paucitātem nostrōrum militiae, nōn iniquitātem locī atque angustiās praecoccupātīs castrīs et ancipitem terrōrem intrā extrāque mūnitionēs, nōn absēsum in duās partēs exercitum, cum altera alterī auxiliō ferre nōn posset, causae fuisse cōgitābant. Nōn ad haec addēbant, nōn concursū ācri factō, nōn proeliō dīmīcatūm, sibique ipsōs multitūdine atque angustiās maius attulisse dētrimentum, quam ab hoste accēpissent, nōn dēnique commūnēs bellī cāsūs recordābantur, quam parvulae saepe causae vel falsae suspiciōnis vel terrōris repentini vel obiectae religiōnis magna dētrimenta intulissent, quotiēns vel ducis vitiō vel culpā tribūni in exercitū commilitō, commilitōnis, m., fellow soldier. interrogō, 1, ask.

1. quō... habērētur: that greater confidence might be placed in him though a deserer.
2. Appositive with omnēs.
3. magnā... contumeliā: with most insulting words.
4. confidence.
5. pride.
7. paucitātem, etc.: subjects of fuisse.
8. praecoccupātīs castrīs: due to the fact that the enemy had previously occupied the camp.
9. causae fuisse: had been the cause (of our flight).
10. causae fuisse: had been the cause (of our flight).
12. Refer to Caesar's men.
13. Explained by the indir. questions following.
14. did recollect.
15. slight.
16. groundless.
17. obiectae religiōnis: of opposite religious scruples.
18. mistake.
19. fault.
Caesar encourages his troops.

73. Caesar a superiöribus consiliis depulsus omnem sibi commútandam belli ratiöem existimavit. Itaque unö tempore praesidiis omnibus dëductis et oppugnátioëe dimissë caöctöque in ünum locum exercitü con-tiöem apud militës habuit hortátusque est, ne ea, quae accidissent, graviter ferrent, néve his rëbus terrërentur multisque secundis proelii ünum adversum et id mediöcre oppönerent. Habendam fortünae grätiam, quod Ætalian sine aliqö vulnere cëpissent, quod duas Hispåniäs bellicösissimörum hominum peritissimis atque exercitätiissimis ducibus pácävissent, quod finitimäes frumentäriöque prövinciäs in potestätëm redëgissent; dënique recordäri dëbëre, quä fëlicitätë inter mediäs hostium classës opplëtis non sölüm portibus sed etiam litoribus omnës incolomës essent tränsporatäti. Si non omnia caderent secunda, fortünam esse industriä sublevandam. Quod esset acceptum dëtrimenti, cuiusvis potius quam suae culpae dëbëre tribüi. Locum se aequum ad dimicandum dedisse, potüm esse hostium

\[\text{concelebrō, I, }\text{proclaim.}\]
\[\text{opploë, -ëre, -plëvi, -plëtum, fill.}\]
\[\text{industria, -ae, f., diligence, ac-}\]
\[\text{tivity, seal.}\]

1. esset offënsum: harm had been done.
2. proinde ac sī: just as if.
3. orbem terrārum: the world.
4. speech.
5. et id mediöcre: and that a slight one.
6. set . . . over against.
7. help.
8. quod . . . dëtrimenti: subject of dëbëre tribüi.
9. Possessive gen., modifying culpae, which is indir. obj. of tribüi.
castris, expulisse ac superāsse pugnantēs. Sed sive ipsōrum perturbātiō sive error aliquis sive etiam fortūna partam iam præsentemque victoriām interpellāvisset, dandam omnibus operam, ut acceptum incommodum 5 virtūte sacrīrētur; quod si esset factum, futūrum ut dētrimentum in bonum vereret, utī ad Gergoviam acacidisset, atque ei, qui ante dimicāre timuissent, ultrō sē proeliiō offerrent.

They become zealous.

74. Hāc habitā cōntiōne nōnnūllos sīgniφērs ignō-10miniā notāvit ac locō mōvit. Exercituī quidem omni tantus incessit ex incommōdō dolor tantumque studium infāmiae sarciendae, ut nēmō aut tribūnī aut centuriōnis imperium désiderāret, et sibi quisque etiam poenae locō graviōrēs impōneret labōrēs simulique omnēs ardērent cupiditāte pugnandī. Cum superiōris etiam ōrdinis nōnnūlli ōratiōne permōtī manendum eō locō et rem proeliiō committendam exīstimārent, contrā ea Caesar neque satis militibus perterritis cōnfidēbat spatiumque interponendum ad recreandōs animōs putābat, et re-20licitis mūnitionibus magnopere rei frumentāriāe timēbat.

perturbātiō, perturbātiōnis, f.; cf. notō, 1, designate with a mark; brand, censure.
perturbō. recreō, 1; cf. creō.
error, errōris, m., mistake.
Caesar withdraws from the siege with Pompey following close behind.

75. Itaque nūlla interpositā morā, sauciōrum modo et aegrorum habitā ratiōne, impedimenta omnia silentio primā nocte ex castrīs Apollōniam praemīsit. Haec conquerescere ante iter confectum vetuit. His āna legiō missa praesidiō est. His explicitis rēbus duās in castrīs legiōnēs retinuit, reliquās dē quārtā vigiliā complūribus portīs ēductās cōdem itinere praemīsit parvōque spatiō intermissō, ut et militāre institūtum servāretur et quam sēriissimē eius profectīō cognōscerētur, conclāmāri iussit statimque ēgressus et novissimum agmen consēcutus celeriter ex cōnspectū castrōrum discersit. Neque vērō Pompēius cognitō cōnsiliō eius moram āllum ad sequendum intulit, sed id spectāns, si itinere impedimentōs perterritōs dēprehendere posset, exercitum ē castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque praemīsit ad novissimum agmen démorandum, neque cōnesquē potuit, quod multitum expeditō itinere antecesserat Caesar.

77. Posterō diē Caesar similiter praemissīs primā nocte impedimentīs dē quārtā vigiliā ipse ēgressit, ut, sī qua esset imposita dimicandi necessitās, subītum cāsum expeditō exercitū subīret. Hoc idem reliquē

| 1. modo habitā ratiōne: simply making provision for. | 6. Explained by si... posset. |
| 2. i.e. the baggage train. | 7. having in view. |
| 3. forbade. | 8. catch. |
| 4. latest. | 9. delay. |
| 5. the signal to be given. | 10. meet. |
fécit diēbus. Quibus rébus perfectum est, ut altissimís flūminibus atque impeditissimís itineribus nūllum acci-
peret incommodum. Pompēius primi diēi morā illātā 

et reliquōrum diērum frūstrā labōre susceptōcum sē 
magnis itineribus extendeteret et praegressōs cōnsequī 
cuperet, quàrto diē finem sequendī fécit atque aliud sibi 
cōnsilium capiendum existimāvit.

Caesar goes to Apollonia. Pompey makes for the same goal.

78. Caesarī ad sauciōs dépōnendōs, stipendium exer-
citui dandum, sociōs cōnfirmandōs, praesidium urbibus 
relinquendum necesse erat adire Apollōniam. Pompēius 
quoque de Caesaris cōnsiliō coniectūrā iūdicāns ad 
Scipionem properandum sibi existimābat: si Caesar iter 
illō habēret, ut subsidium Scipionī ferret; si ab órā 
maritimā Ōricōque discēdere nöllet, quod legiōnēs 
equitātumque ex Ītaliā exspectāret, ipse ut omnibus 
cōpis Domitium aggredētur.

Domitius barely escapes from Pompey and joins Caesar.

79. His dē causis uterque eōrum celeritātī studēbat, 
et suis ut esset auxiliō, et ad opprimendōs adversāriōs 
nē occasīōnī temporis deesset. Sed Caesarem Apollō-
nia ā directō itinere āverterat; Pompēius per Candāviam 
it in Macedoniam expeditum habēbat. Accessit etiam 
ex imprōvisō aliud incommodum, quod Domitius, qui diēs

extendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum (-tēnsum), stretch; with sē, ex-
ert one’s self.

praegredior; cf. ēgregior.

coniectūra, -ae, f., inference.
adversāriōs, -ī, m., enemy.

1. altissimís, etc.: abl. abs. 
denoting concession.
2. morā illātā, labōre sus-
ceptō: abl. abs. denoting cause.
3. Concessive.
4. Adverb.
5. occasīōnī temporis: favor-
able chance.
6. was added.
7. namely that.
complūrēs castrīs Scipiónis castra collāta habuisset, reī frūmentāriāe causā ab eō discesserat et Hēraclīam, quae est subiecta Cannāiae, iter fēcerat, ut ipsa fortūna illum obicere Pompeīō vidērētur. Haec ad id tempus Caesar īgnōrābat. Simul ā Pompeīō litterīs per omnēs prōvinciās civitātēsque dimissīs dē proeliō ad Dyrrrha-chium factō lātius īnflātiusque multō, quam ērēt gesta, ēmā percrēbuērum pulsum fugere Caesarem paene omnibus cōpiīs āmissīs. Haec ētinerā īnfasta reddiderat, haec civitātēs nōnnūllās ab eius amicitiatā āvertēbat. Quibus accidit rēbus, ut plūribus dimissī itineribus ā Caesare ad Domitium et ā Domitio ad Cae-sarem nūllā ratīōne iter cōnficere possent. Sed Allobrogēs, Raucillī atque Egi familiārēs, quōs perfūgisse ad Pompeium dēmōnstrāvīmus, cōnspicāti in itinere explōratōrēs Domitī, seu prīstinā suā cōnsuētūdine, quod ēnā in Galliā bella gesserant, seu glōriā ēlāti cūncta, ut erant ācta, exposuērunτ et Caesaris profectionem, adven-tum Pompeīi docuerunt. Ā quibus Domitius certior factus ēxvi ēx hōrārum spatiiō antecēdēns hostium beneficiō periculum vitāvit et ad Aeginium, quod est adiectum appositumque Thessaliāe, Caesarī venientī occurrīt.

Infītātius, with more exaggera-tion.

Percrēbrēscō, -ere, -crēbruī (-crē-bruī), —, be spread abroad.

Infestus, -a, -um, dangerous.

1. brought together, i.e. near to.
2. brought close, i.e. next to.
3. illum obicere: to put him in the way of.
4. quam . . . gesta: than the facts warranted.
5. pulsum . . . āmissīs: indir. disc. depending on fāma.
6. = fāma.
7. Sc. nūntiī.
8. certain Allobroges.
9. See p. 129, l. 2.
10. prīstinā suā cōnsuētūdine: because of their former intimacy.
11. glōriā ēlāti: puffed up by the glory (they had won).
12. getting the start.
13. adiectum appositumque: near and bordering upon.
Caesar storms Gomphi.

80. Coniuncto exercitu Caesar Gomphōs pervenit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus 1 ab Épirō; quae gēns paucis ante mēnsibus ultrō ad Caesarem légātōs miserat, ut suis omnibus facultātibus 5 ūterētur, praesidiumque ab eō mīlitum petierat. Sed eō fāma iam praecurrerat, 2 quam suprā docuimus, dē proelīō Dyrrhachinō, quod 3 multis auxerat partibus. Itaque Androstenēs, praetor Thessaliae, cum sē victōriae Pompēi comitem esse māllet quam socium Caesāris in rēbus adversis, omnem ex agrīs multitūdinem servōrum ac liberōrum in oppidum cōgit portāsque praecūdit et ad Scipionem Pompēiumque nūntiōs mittit, ut sibi subsidiō veniant: sē cōnfidere mūnitionibus oppidi, si celeriter succurrātur; 4 longinquam oppugnātiōnem sustinēre nōn posse. Scipīō discessu exercitu ab Dyrrhachiō cōgnītō Lārīsam legiōnēs adduixerat; Pompēius nōndum Thessaliae appropinquābat. Caesar castrīs mūnitīs scālās 5 mūsculōsaque 6 ad repentinam oppugnātiōnem fierī et crātēs 7 parāri iussit. Quibus rēbus effectis cohortātus mīlitēs docuit, quantum 8 ūsum habēret ad sublevandam omnium rērum inopiam potīrī 9

cōmes, comītis, m. and f., companion, associate, partaker, sharer. mālō, mālle, mālui, prefer.
praecūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, shut.

1. as you come. 6. sheds.
2. Cf. currō. 7. wicker hurdles.
3. quod ... partibus: which. 8. quantum habēret, etc.: how great a help toward relieving, etc., it would bring to gain possession of.
4. some one would hurry to help. 9. potīrī, inferre, fierī: subjects of habēret.
5. ladders.

SECOND YEAR LATIN — 10
oppidō plēnō atque opulentō, simul reliquīs civitātibus huius urbīs exemplō¹ inferre terrōrem et id fierī cele-
riter, prīusquam auxilia concurrerent. Itaque ūsus singulāri militum studiō eōdem, quō vēnerat, diē post
5 hōram nōnam oppidum altissimīs² moenibus oppugnāre aggressus ante sōlis occāsum expugnāvit et ad diripien-
dum³ militibus concessit statimque ab oppidō castra mōvit et Mētropolīm vēnit, sic ut nūntīōs expugnātī⁴
oppidi fāmamque antecēderet.

The other surrounding states surrender.

10 81. Mētropolitae prīmum⁵ eōdem ûsi cōnsiliō isdem
permōtī rūmōribus portās clausērunt mūrōsque armātīs
complēverunt; sed posteā cāsū civitātis Gomphēnīs
cōgnitō ex captivīs, quōs Caesar ad mūrum prōdūcendōs
cūrāverat, portās aperuērunt. Quibus diligentissimē
15 cōnservātīs collātā⁶ fortūnā Mētropolītum⁷ cum cāsē
Gomphēnium nūlla Thessaliae fuit civitās praetere Lārī-
saeōs, qui magnīs exercitibus Scīpiōnis tenēbantur, quīn⁸
Caesarī pārēret atque imperāta facetur. Ille⁹ idōneum
locum in agrīs nactus plēnis frūmentōrum,¹⁰ quae prope
20 iam mātūra erant, ibi adventum exspectāre Pompēi
eōque¹¹ omnem belli¹² rationēm cōnferre cōnstituit.

OPulentus, -a, -um; cf. Eng. opulent.

---

1. warning example.
2. altissimīs moenibus: abl.
of description with oppidum.
3. plundering.
4. expugnātī oppidī: of the
storming of the town.
5. Here = at first.
6. collātā cum: compared
with.
7. = Mētropolītārum.
8. quīn pārēret: but that
obeyed.
9. i.e. Caesar.
10. Note the plural.
11. eō cōnferre: transfer to
that place.
12. belli rationēm: issue of
the campaign.
Pompey and Scipio join forces. The Pompeians quarrel over the booty as though the victory were already won.

82. Pompēius paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervenit cōntiōnātusque apud cūntum exercitum suis agit grātiās, Scīpiōnis milītēs cohortātur, ut partā iam victorīā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptīisque omnibus in üna castra legiōnibus suum cum Scīpiōne honōrem partitur classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illi iubet praetōrium tendi. Auctīs cōpiis Pompēi duōbusque magnīs exercitibus coniūnctīs pristīna omnium cōnfīrmātur opinīō et spēs victorīae augētur, adeō ut, quidquid intercēderet temporis, id morārī rediō tum in Ìtaliam vidērētur, et si quandō quid Pompēius tardius aut cōnsiderātius faceret, ūnīs esse negotiōm diēi, sed illum dēlectāri imperiō et cōnsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dicerent. Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiis ac sacerdōtiis contendēbant in annōsque cōnsulātum dēfiniēbant, aliī domōs bonaque eōrum, qui in castrīs erant Caesaris, petēbant; magnaque inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportē-

partior, 4, divide. 
classicum, -i, n., trumpet call. 
canō, -ere, cecīni, cantum, sing, sound. 
praetōrium, -i, n., general's tent. 
cōnsiderātē, deliberately. 
dēlectō, i, delight. 
cōnsulāris, cōnsulāris, m., ex-consul. 
sacerdōtium, -i, n., priesthood. 

1. after making an address. 
2. gained. 
3. sharers. 
4. a second. 
5. pitch. 
6. Connects vidērētur and dicerent. 
7. ūnīs . . . diēi: was a visit of but a single day; depends on dicerent. 
8. illum dēlectāri imperiō: he was too much pleased with his command. 
9. ex-praetors. 
10. they said (in criticism). 
11. in annōsque: and for years ahead. 
12. consulship. 
13. established.
retne Lūcīliō Hirri, quod is a Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, proximis comitiis praetōriis absentis rationem habēri, cum eius necessāriī fidem implōrārent Pompēi, praestāret, quod proficiscenti recēpisset, né per eius auctōritātem déceptus vidērētur, reliqui, in labōre parī ac periculō nē unus omnēs antecēderet, recūsārent.

Pompey finally offers battle.

85. Pompēius, qui castra in colle habēbat, ad īnĪmās rādīcēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, expectāns si inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar nūllā ratione ad pugnam ēlici posse Pompēium existimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam belli rationem iūdicāvit, utī castra ex ēō locō movēret, semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendis castrīs plūribus adeundis locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsīōnem dimicandi nanciscerētur et insolītum ad labōrem Pompēi exercitūn cotidiānīs itineribus dēfatīgāret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, sīgnō iam profectionis datō tabernāculisque dētēnsīs animadversum est paulō ante extrā cotidiānam cōn-suētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēi progressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dimicāri vidērētur:

insolitus, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unusual.

dētendō, -ere, —, -tēnsum, take down.

1. Lūcīli Hirri: obj. gen. with rationem.
2. quod... esset: explains absentis.
3. elections.
4. Imperf., denoting repeated action.
5. expectāns si: waiting to see whether.
6. lure out.

7. Explained by uti... movēret... esset.
8. Explained by the following subjunct. clauses.
9. exhaust.
10. tents.
11. paulō ante: adv., modi
12. contrary to.
13. ut... vidērētur: so tha—
Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, 'Differendum est,' inquit, 'iter in praesentia nōbis et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō simus ad dīmicandum parāti: nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus;' confestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.

**Pompey expects to win with his cavalry.**

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cōgnitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsilīo superiōribus diēbus dixerat, prīusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore uti exercitus Caesāris pellērētur. Id cum essent plērique admirātī, 'Scīō mē,' inquit, 'paene incrēdībilem rem policērī; sed ratiōnem cōnsiliī meī accipite, quō firmōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs (idque mihi factūrōs cōnfīrmāvērant) ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesāris cornū ab latere apertō aggrederentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellērent, quam ā nōbis tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine perīculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus.' Simul dēnūntiāvit, ut essent animō parātī in posterum et, quoniam fieret dīmicandī postestās, ut saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū manūque reliquōrum opiniōnem fallerent.
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND NEPOS

Labienus speaks slightlyingly of Caesar’s troops.

87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompēi cōnsilium summis laudibus efferret,3 ‘Nōli,’ inquit, ‘existimāre, Pompēi,4 hunc esse exercitum, quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvicerit. Omnibus interfuit5 proeliīs neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua6 pars illius exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperīt, quod accidere tot proeliīs fuit necesse, multōs autumnī pestilentia in Ītaliā cōnsūmpsit, multi domum discessērunt, multi sunt relicti in continentī.7 An nōn audistis ex iis, quī per causam valē-tūdīnis remānsērunt, cohortēs esse Brundīsi factās? Hae cōpiāe, quās vidētis, ex dēlēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plērique sunt ex coloniis8 Trānspadānīs. Ac tamen quod fuit rōboris15 duōbus proeliīs Dyrrhachīnīs interiit.9 Haec cum dixisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum reliquōsque, ut idem facetur, hortātus est. Hoc laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquiās fuit quisquam, quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec tum facta sunt in cōnsiliō, magnāque spē et laetitiā10 omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praeceptorēbant,11 quod dē re

dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum; cf. vincō.
dēpereō, -ire, -periī, ——, perish (from among them).
autumnus, -ī, m., autumn.
pestilentia, -ae, f., plague.
dēlēctus, -ūs, m., draft.
rōbor, rōboris, n., oak, vigor, strength.
laudō, 1, praise.

1. followed.
2. cum ..., dēspiceret: while he showed his contempt for.
3. extolled.
4. Vocative.
5. took part.
6. very small.
7. continentī (terrā): continent, i.e. Italy.
8. ex iīs: modifies esse factās.
9. colonies.
10. joy.
11. anticipated.
tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frustrā con-
firmāri vidēbatur.

_Pompey forms his battle line._

88. Caesar, cum Pompēi castris appropinquāsset, ad hunc modum aciem eius īnstruēbat animadvertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trādite ab ā kidnapped into Caesar initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōnsultō; quārum ĩnā prima, altera tertia appellābatur. In eō locō īpse ērat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syria-
cis tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūnctā cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuiōmus, in dextrō cornū erant collocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius existimābat. Reliquās īnter aciem mediam cornuaque interīcerat numerōque cohortēs cx explē-
verat. Haec erant milia xlv, ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriis superiōrum exercitūm ad eum con-
vēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat. Reliquās cohortēs in castrīs propinquīisque castellīs praesidiō disposu-
erat. Dextrum cornū eius rivus quīdam impedītis ripīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūntum equītātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs in sinistrō cornū obiē-
cerat.

_Caesar forms his battle line._

89. Caesar superius īnstitūtum servāns decimam legi-
ōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō collocāverat, tametsi erat Dyrrhachīnis proeliīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta et huic sic adiūnxit octāvam, ut paene ēnam ex duābus

**beneficiārius, -i, m., privileged**  
**attenuō, i, weaken.**

| 1. hās . . . habēre: these were | 3. stream. |
| 2. Sc. milia. | 4. former. |
| 5. although. |
efficeret, atque alteram alteri praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa\(^1\) erat milium XXII; cohortēs II castrīs praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sūllam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Simul hīs rēbus animadversīs, quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitudine equitūm dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās\(^2\) cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex hīs quārtām instituit equitātiūνque opposuit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque eius diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstrāre. Simul tertiae aciē totīque exercitū imperāvit, nē iniuссū suō concurreret: sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō\(^3\) sīgnum datūrum.

_Caesar addresses his army and gives signal for battle._

15 90. Exercitūm cum mīlitāri mōre ad pugnam cohortā-rētur suaque in eum perpetuī\(^4\) temporis officia praedicāret,\(^5\) imprīmis commemorāvit: Testibus sē mīlitibus úti posse, quantō studiō pācem petīssēt; quae per Vatīnium in colloquīis, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset, quibus modis ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgātīs contendissent. Neque sē umquam abūtī mīlitum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū privāre voluisse. Hāc habitā ōrātiōne exposcentibus mīlitibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus tubā sīgnum dedit.

**imprīmis, especially.**

**abūtōr, -ī, -ūsus sum, waste.**

**sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.**

**alteruter, -tra, -trum, either.**

**privō, i, deprive.**

**exposcō; cf. poscō.**

1. total.

2. one from each legion.

3. flag.

4. perpetuī temporis officia: his constant services.

5. related.
Castrinus leads the charge upon Pompey.

91. Erat Crāstinus évocātus in exercitū Caesaris, qui superiōre annō apud eum primum pîlum in legiōne x dûxerat, vir singulāri virtūte. Hic sīgnō datō, ‘Sequi-
mini mē,’ inquit, ‘manipulārēs mei qui fuistis, et vestrō
imperātōri quam cōnstituītis¹ operam date. Ûnum hoc
proelium superest; quō cōnfectō et ille² suam dignitā-
tem³ et nōs nostram libertātem⁴ recuperābimus.’⁵
Simul respiciēns Caesarem, ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘hodīē,
imperātor, ut aut vivō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās.’
10 Haec cum dixisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit,
atque eum élēcti militēs circiter cxx voluntāriī eiusdem
centuriae sunt prōsecūtī.

Pompey awaits the result. Caesar criticizes his tactics.

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatīī, ut
satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pom-
pēius suīs praedixerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent
nēve sē locō movērent aciemque eius distrahī pateren-
tur; idque admonītū C. Triāriī fēcisse dīcēbātur, ut
prīmus excursus visque militūm infringerētur aciēsque
distenderētur atque in suīs ordinibus dispositī⁶ dispersōs

.manipulāris, -e, belonging to a
maniple; as noun, soldier of a
maniple, here comrade.
hodīē; cf. hoc + diē.
ēligō, -ere, -ēgī, -ēctum. pick.
volutāriūsus, -a, -um, volunteer.
centuria, -ae, f., century, company.
praedīcō; cf. dīcō.
distrahō; cf. trahō.

admonitus, -ūs, m.; cf. moneō.
excursus, -ūs, m.; cf. currō.
infringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum,
break.
distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum,
throw into confusion.
dispōnō; cf. pōnō.
dispergō, -ere, -aspersī, -aspersum,
scatter.

2. i.e. Caesar.
3. rank.
4. i.e. from military service.
5. recover.
6. Refers to Pompeys men.
adorírentur; leviusque cásūra píla spērābat in locó re-
tentís militibus, quam sì ipsí immissís télís occurr-
rissent, simul fore,¹ ut duplicátō cursú Caesaris mítōs
exanimárentur et lassítūdine ² cónficerentur. Quod
5 nóbís quidem nüllā ratióne factum á Pompēíō vidētur,
propterea quod ³ est quaedam animī incitātiō atque
alacrītās nāturāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pug-
nae incinditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre im-
perātōrès dēbent; neque frūstrā antiquitās ⁴ īnstitūtum
10 est, ut signa ⁵ undique concinerent clāmōremque ēnū-
versī tollerent: quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs
incitārī existimāvērunt.

Caesar’s men advance halfway, halt, and then attack.

93. Sed nostrī militēs datō signō cum Ínfestīs ⁶ pilīs
prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn ⁷ concurrī ā
15 Pompēiānīs, ūsū perīti ac superiōribus pugnīs exercitātī
suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium fērē
spatium cōnstītērunt, nē cōnsūmptīs vīribus appropinquā-
rent, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūrsus
renovātō cursū pīla misērunt celeriterque, ut erat prae-
ceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strinxērunt. Neque vērō
Pompēiānī huic reī dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa ex-
cēpērunt ⁸ et impetum legiōnūm tulērunt et őrdinēs con
servāvērunt pilīisque missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem

leviter; cf. levis.
incitātiō, incitātiōnis, f.; cf. incitō.
nāturāliter, naturally.
reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum;

1. Depends on spērābat.
2. weariness.
3. Refers to Pompey’s plan of battle.
4. in former days.
5. Nominative.
6. threatening.
7. nōn concurrī: no attack was being made.
8. i.e. on their shields.
tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēī cornū, ut erat im-
perātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multīūdō
sagittāriōrum sē profūdit. Quōrum impetum noster
eyquitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit,
equitēsque Pompēī hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātīm ex-
plīcāre aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circūmīre
coeperunt. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae
aciēi, quam īnstituerat sex cohortium, dedit signum.
Ilī celerīter prōcucurrērunt īnfestīisque signīs tantā vī in
Pompēī equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut eōrum nēmō cōn-
sisteret omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō excēderent,
sed prōtinus incītātī fugā montēs altissīmos pēterent.
Quibus summōtīs omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstī-
tūtī inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem im-
petū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantis etiam tum
ac resistentibus in acī Pompēīānīs circūmīerunt ēōsque
ā tertīō sunt adortī.

The Pompeians are routed. Pompey shows himself a coward.

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae
quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prō-
currere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integri dēfessīs
successissent, alī autem ā tertīō adorīrentur, sustinēre
Pompēīānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt.
Neque vērō Caesarem fēfellit, quīn ab āīs cohortibus,
quae contrā equitātum in quārtā acī collocatae essent,
īnītium victōriae orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandis militibus

profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, turmātīm, by squadrons.

pour forth; with sē, rush explicō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātum
forth. (-itum), spread out.

1. sex cohortium: made up of
six cohorts, modifies quam.
2. dislodged.
3. abandoned.
4. did escape; the subject is
the quīn clause.

*Caesar captures Pompey's camp.*

15 95. Caesar Pompeiānis ex fugā īntrā vāllum compulsīs nūllum spatium perterrītīs dare oportēre existimāns mīlitēs cohortātus est, ut beneficiō fortūnae ēterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū (nam ad meridiem rēs erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parāti imperiō pāruērunt. Castra ā cohortibus, quae ībi præsidiō erant relictae, industriē défendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarīisque auxiliis. Nam quī aciē refugērunt mīlitēs, et animō

**diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, despair of, distrust.**
**clārē, loudly. industriē, actively.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Modifīes inquit.</th>
<th>6. summae reī: the outcome of the battle.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. praetōrium portam: front gate.</td>
<td>7. respīte.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. protect.</td>
<td>8. magnō aestū: abl. abs. introduced by etsī.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, missīs
dē plērīque armis
signīisque militāribus magis
dē reliquā fugā quam
dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant.

Neque
dē vērō diūtius,
quī in vāllō cōnstiterant,
multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinērē

potuērunt,

sed cōnfectī vulneribus locum reliqūerunt
prōtinusque omnēs ducibus
ūsi centurīōnibus tribūnīs-
que militum in altissimōs montēs,
quī ad castra pertīnē-
bant, cōnfugērunt.

Caesar finds the camp luxuriously fitted up. Pompey escapes.

96. In castrīs Pompēī vidēre līcuit trichīlās strūctās,
magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentībus cespitī-
bus tabernācula cōnstrāta, Lucī etiam Lentulī et
nōnnūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta ederā, multaque
praetereā, quae nīmiam lūxuriam et victōriae fidūciam
dēsignārent, ut facile existimārī possit nihil ēōs dē
evēntū eius dīcī timuisse, quī nōn necessāriās conquire-
rent voluptātēs. At hī miserrīmō ac patientissīmō
exercitūī Caesarīs lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia
ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent. Pompēius, iam cum
intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētractīs

insignibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castrīs

1. flung away.
2. neque vērō diūtius: and
in fact not very long.
3. In apposition with centu-
riōnibus and tribūnīs.
4. silver plate.
5. sods.
6. tents.

cover, pave.
edera, -ae, f., ivy.
nimius, -a, -um, too much, exces-
sive.

7. of some others.
8. indicated.
9. nōn necessāriās: unneces-
sary.
10. Cf. quaerō.
11. dētractīs insignibus impe-
rātōris: removing the decorations
that belonged to him as general.
eiexit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārisam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō comitātū equitum trīgintā ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmen-
īn tāriam cōnsendit saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum sē opiniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum vic-
tōriam spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

Pompey's army retires to a hill and treats for peace.

97. Caesar castrīs potūtus ā mīlitibus contendit, nē in praeda occupāti reliquī negotīi gerendi facultātem dimitterent. Quā rē imperātā montem opere circum-
mūnire instituit. Pompeiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi eī locō relictō monte universī iugīs eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē ani-
madversā Caesar cópiās suās divisit partemque legionōm in castrīs Pompēī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, quattuor sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompeiānis occurrere coepit et prōgressus mīlia passuum vi aciem instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen sublüebat. Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus, etsi tōtīus diēi continenti labōre erant cōnfecti noxque iam suberat, tamen mūniōne flūmen ā monte séclūsīt, nē noctū aquārī Pompeiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. paucōs suōs: a few of his own men.</td>
<td>4. Modifies negotīi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tantum... fefellisse: that his expectations had so completely disappointed him.</td>
<td>5. iugīs eius: along its ridges, abl. of means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. earnestly requested of.</td>
<td>6. started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. washed the base of.</td>
<td>8. to get water.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
illī dē dēditione missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Paucī ordinis senātōriī, quī sē cum iīs coniünxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīverunt.

*After surrender, the Pompeians are pardoned by Caesar.*

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs, qui in monte cōn-
5 sēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passīisque palmis prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petīverunt, cōnsolātus cōnsurgere iussit et paуча apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit militibusque suīs com-
mendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī désiderā-
rent. Hāc adhibītā diligentiā ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās, quās sēcum dūxerat, in vicem requīescere atque in castra revertī iussit eōdemque diē Lārisam pervēnīt.

*The losses.*

99. In eō proelīō nōn amplius cc mīlitēs désiderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmisit. Inter-
flectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstīnus, cuius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in suō adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pugnam proficiscēns dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimābat, eō proelīō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstīni fuisse optimē-
que eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat. Ex Pompēiānō exer-

| senātōrius, -a, -um, senatorial. | violō, i, harm. |
| recūsātiō, recūsātiōnis, f., refusal, protest. | in vicem, in turn. |
| commendō, i, intrust, urge upon. | requīescō, -ere, -quiēvi, -quiētum, rest. |

1. lēnitāte suā: his well-known kindness.
2. lose.
3. in ōs adversum: full in the face.
4. Explained by eō fuisse.
citū circiter milia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditōnem vēnrunt amplius milia xxiv (namque etiam cohortēs, quae præsidīō in castellis fuerant, sēśe Sūllae dēdidērunt), multē praeterēa in finitimās civitātēs refugērunt, signaque militāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta clxxx et aquilae ix. L. Domitius ex castrīs in montem refugiēns, cum virēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcis-<br>sent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

Caesar pursues Pompey, who sails away.

102. Caesar omnibus rēbus relictis persequendum sibi Pompēium existimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē rūrsus cópiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset, et quantumcumque itineris equitātū efficere poterat cotidiē prōgredīēbātur legiōnem-que ūnam minōribus itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēi nōmine Amphipoli prōpositum, uti omnēs eius provinciae iūniōrēs, Graeci civēsque Rōmānī, iūrāndi causā convenirent. Sed utrum 1 āvertendae suspiciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset, ut quam diūtis-<br>simē longīorris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an novis dē-lēctibus,2 si nēmō premeret, Macedonianum tenēre cōnārē-tur, existimāri 3 nōn poterat. Ipse ad ancoram ūnā nocte cōnstitit et vocātis ad sē Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs 4 corrogātā cōgnitō Caes-<br>sarīs adventū ex eō locō discēssit et Mytilēnās paucis

quantuscumque, -acumque, -um-cumque, however much.<br>ēdictum, -i, n., proclamation.<br>iuenis, iūniōr, minimus natū,<br>young.<br>ancora, -ae, f., anchor.<br>corrogō, 1, collect by asking, bor-row.<br>1. utrum . . . an . . . cōnārē-tur: double indir. question; sub-<br>ject of existimāri poterat.<br>2. levies.<br>3. determined.<br>4. expense.
diēbus vēnit. Biduum tempestāte retentus nāvibusque aliis additis āctuāriis in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit. Ibi cōgnōscit cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēn-sium civiumque Rōmānorum, qui illic negotiārentur, arcem captam esse excludendī sui causā núntiosequē dissīsōs ad eōs, quī sē ex fugā in finitimās civitātēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antiochiam adīrent: id sī fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis periculō futūrum.

Pompey seeks protection from Ptolemy, king of Egypt.

103. Quibus cōgnitiīs rébus Pompeius dépositō ad-eundae Syriae cōnsiliō pecūniā societātis sublātā et ā quibusdam privātīs sūmptā et aeris magnō pondere ad militārem ēsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque milibus hominum armātis, partim quōs ex familiis societā-tum délēgerat, partim ā negotiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suis quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs existimābat, Pēlusium pervēnit. Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemæus, puer aetāte, magnīs cōpiis cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat: castraque Cleopatrae nonōn longō spatiō ab eius castrīs distābant. Ad eum Pompeius misit, ut prō hospitiō atque amīcīth patris Alexandria recuperētur atque illius opibus in calamitāte tegerētur. Sed qui ab eō missi erant, cōnfectō légā-

negōtior, 1, do business.  negotiātor, negotiātōris, m.; cf. societās, societātis, f., alliance, tax collectors’ company.

ges G 2. concerted action, modifies captam esse.  6. ex suis: of his own
3. magnō . . . periculō: at the risk of their lives.

SECOND YEAR LATIN — II
tōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis colloquī coepē-
runτ eōsque hortāri; ut suum officium Pompēiō praestā-
rent 1 nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant
numero complūrēs Pompēii militēs, quōs ex eius exercitū
5 acceptōs in Syriā Gabinius Alexandriam trādūxerat
bellōque cōnfectō apud Ptolemaeu, patrem pueri,
reliquerat.

But instead he is treacherously murdered.

104. Hīs tunc 2 cōgnitis rēbus amici 3 rēgis, qui propter
aetātem eius in cūrātiōne erant rēgni, sive timōre 4 ad-
ductī, ut posteā praedicābant, sollicitātō 5 exercitū rēgiō
nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret,
sive dēspectā eius fortūna, ut plērumque in calamitāte
ex amicis inimici exsistunt, hīs, qui erant ab eō missi,
palam 6 liberālīter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venire
15 iussērunt; ipsī clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum
rēgium, singulāri hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium,
tribūnum militūm, ad interficiendum Pompēium misē-
runτ. Ab hīs liberālīter 7 ipse 8 appellātus et quādam
nōtitiā 9 Septimii prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum 10
20 apud eum ārdinēm 11 dūxerat, nāviculam 12 parvulam cōn-
scendit cum paucis suīs: ibi ab Achillā et Septimīō
interficiitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge
et in custōdiā 13 necātur.

cūrātiō, cūrātiōnis, f.; cf. cūrō. rēgius, -a, -um; cf. rēx.

1. do.
2. at this time.
3. Subject of respondērunt and
iussērunt.
4. Explained by nē . . . oc-
cupāret.
5. stirred up.
6. openly; contrast with clam.
7. liberālīter appellātus: courteously addressed.
8. i.e. Pompey.
9. acquaintance.
10. pirates.
11. Here = a century.
12. skiff.
13. prison.
Caesar saves the temple of Diana from being plundered. Strange portents happen on the day of the battle of Pharsalus.

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque rei causā senātōres omnēs ex prōvinciā évocāsse, ut his testibus in summā pecūniāe ütērētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris profūgisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniāe Caesar auxilium tulit . . . Item cōnstābat Ėlide in templō Minervae repetiētis atque ēnumerātīs diēbus, quō diē proclium secundum Caesar fēcisset, simulācrum Victōriāe, quod ante ipsam Minervam collocātum esset et ante ad simulācrum Minervae spectāvīsset, ad valvās sē templī limenque convertīssē. Eōdemque diē Antiochiae in Syriā bis tantūs exercitūs clāmor et sīgnōrum sonus exaudītus est, ut in mūrīs armāta civītās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit, Pergamīque in occultūs ac reconditūs templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adīre fās nōn est, quae Graeci ἄνωρα appelīant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallībus in templō

fānum, -i, n., temple. -cursum, run to and fro, run to one's place.
ēnumerō, 1, count. reconditus, -ā, -um, remote.
valvae, -ārum, f., folding doors. sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, m., priest.
limen, līminis, n., entrance. tympanum, -ī, n., drum.
sonus, -i, m., sound. sonō, -ere, sonūi, sonitum, sound.
discurro, -ere, -currī (-curreī), 1. treasures.
2. in summā: as to the amount.
3. prevented.
4. it was ascertained by reckoning.
5. reckoned backward.
6. body of citizens.
7. Locative.
8. occultūs ac reconditūs templī: parts of the temple set aside and remote.
9. (Greek): inner sanctuaries.
Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coagmenta lapidum ex pavīmentō exstītisse ostendēbātur.

Caesar arrives at Alexandria and learns of Pompey’s death.

106. Caesar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus cum audīs-set Pompeium Cypri visum, coniectāns eum Aegyptum\(^1\) iter habēre\(^2\) propter necessitūdīnēs\(^3\) rēgni reliquāsque eius locī opportūnītātēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequī iussērat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q. Fūfō lēgātō ēvōcāverat, equitibusque dccc et nāvibus longis Rhodiis x et Asiāticīs paucīs Alexandriam pervēnit. In hīs erant legiōnibus homīnum mīlia\(^4\) trīa cc; reliquī vulneribus ex proelīs et labōre ac magnītūdine itinerīs cōnfectī cōnsequī nōn potuerant. Sed Caesar cōnfīsus fāmā rērum gestārum īnfirmīs auxiliīs proficīscī nōn dubitāverat aequē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore existimāns. Alexandriāe dē Pompeī morte cōgnōscit.

statua, -ae, f., statue. 
coṇsecrō, i, consecrate. 
palma, -ae, f., palm, palm tree. 
coagmentum, -i, n., joint.

pavīmentum, -ī, pavement. 
coniectō, i, infer. 
aequē; cf. aequus.

\(\begin{align*}
1. \text{The omission of the prep. is unusual.} \\
2. \text{iter habēre: was on the road.} \\
3. \text{necessitūdīnēs rēgni: friendships in the kingdom.} \\
4. \text{mīlia trīa cc: only 3200.}
\end{align*}\)
LIFE AND WORKS OF CORNELIUS NEPOS

Of the life and works of Cornelius Nepos, little is positively known. He was born in the town of Ticinum (Pavia) in Northern Italy, about B.C. 100. He died about B.C. 24. That he was well-to-do is evident from the fact that he was enrolled as a Roman knight, and he seems to have given his attention to literature and learning rather than to politics. Among his intimate friends were Cicero, Catullus, and Atticus.

It is clear that Nepos was a prolific writer, for we learn from various sources that he was the author of (a) an outline of the world’s history; (b) a treatise on Roman customs; (c) a detailed life of Cato the Censor; (d) a life of Cicero; (e) a work on geography; (f) De Viris Illustribus. The last-named was divided into sixteen sections, as follows: — I. De Regibus Exterarum Gentium. II. De Regibus Romanorum. III. De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium. IV. De Excellentibus Ducibus Romanorum. V. De Iuris Consultis Graecis. VI. De Iuris Consultis Romanis. VII. De Oratoribus Graecis. VIII. De Oratoribus Romanis. IX. De Poetis Graecis. X. De Poetis Latinis. XI. De Historicis Graecis. XII. De Historicis Latinis. XIII. De Philosophis Graecis. XIV. De Philosophis Latinis. XV. De Grammaticis Graecis. XVI. De Grammaticis Latinis. Of these, one has been preserved entire — De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium — and parts of two others — De Regibus Exterarum Gentium and De Historicis Latinis. From the first most of the following selections have been chosen and from the last the life of Cato.

The style of Nepos, though of the same period as that of Caesar and Cicero, shows some peculiarities of construction. As a writer he should be considered as an essayist rather than as a historian. His Lives are models of literary form rather than of historical accuracy.
I. MILTIADES

?-488

_He goes to the Chersonesus to establish a colony._

1. MILTIADēs, Cimōnis filius, Athēniēnsis, cum¹ et² antiquitāte³ generis et² glōriā³ maiōrum et² suā mo-
destīa³ ūnus⁴ omnium maximē flōrēret, eāque⁵ esset
aetāte ut nōn⁶ iam sōlum dē eō bene spērāre sed etiam
5 cōnfidere civēs possent suī tālem eum futūrum,⁷ quālem
cōgnitum iūdicārunt, accidit ut Athēniēnsēs Chersonē-
sūm⁸ colōnōs vellent mittere. Cuius⁹ generis cum
magnus numerus esset et multī eius dēmigrātiōnis pete-
rent societātem,¹⁰ ex īs dēlēctī Delphōs dēliberātum¹¹
10 missī sunt, quī cōnsulerent Apollinem, quo¹² potissimum
duce¹³ ēterentur. Namque tum Thrāces ēās regiōnēs
tenēbant, cum¹⁴ quibus armīs erat dimicandum. Hīs

antīquitās, antīquitātis, f., an-
tiquity.
modestia, -ae, f., modesty.
colōnus, -i, m., colonist.

dēmigrātiō, dēmigrātiōnis, f., em-
igration.
potissimum, especially, rather
than any other.

1. Causal.
2. et . . . et . . . et: not
   only . . . and . . . but also.
3. Abl. of cause.
4. ūnus omnium maximē flō-
   rēret: was the most conspicuous
   one of them all.
5. eā aetāte: abl. of description.
6. nōn sōlum . . . iūdicārunt:
   his fellow citizens were able not
   only to hope much from him, but
   even to confidently expect that he
   would turn out to be such a man
   as they thought him (when he

afterward became) known.
7. Sc. esse: depends on cōnfidere.
8. Chersonēsūm: Nepos
treats this word as though it
were the name of a town.
9. cuius generis: of this sort
   (of people); i.e. would-be col-
onists.
10. alliance (with).
11. Supine.
12. Interrogative.
13. Predicate noun.
14. cum quibus: more often
   written quibuscum.
cōnsulentibus nōminātim¹ Pythia praecepi; ut Miltiadem imperatōrem sibi sūmerent; id si fēcissent, incepta prōspera futūra.² Hoc ōrāculi respōnsō³ Miltiadēs cum dēlēctā manū classe⁴ Chersonēsum profectus, cum accessisset Lēmnnum et incolās eius insulae sub potesta-tem redigere vellet Athēniēnsium, idque Lēmnīi suā sponte facerent ⁶ postulāsset, illus irrintidēs respondērunt tum id sē factūros, cum ille domō nāvibus proficiscēns ventō aquilōne vēnisset Lēmnnum. Hic enim ventus ab septentrioniōnibus oriēns adversum ⁶ tenet Athēnis⁷ proficiscentibus.⁸ Miltiadēs morandī tempūs nōn habēns cursum dirēxit, quō tendēbat, pervēnitque Chersonēsum.

Brings Lemnos into the power of Athens.

2. Ibi brevi tempore barbarōrum cōpiis disiectis, tōtā regiōne, quam petierat, potitus, loca castellīs idōnea ⁱ⁵ commūnīt, multitūdīnem, quam sēcum dūxerat, in agrīs collocāvit crēbrisque excursiōnibus locuplētāvit. Neque minus in eā re prūdentiā quam félicitāte adiūtus est. Nam cum virtūte militum dēvīcisset hostium exercītūs, summā⁹ aequitāte rēs cōnstituit atque ipse ibīdem ma- ²⁰ nēre dēcrēvit. Erat ¹⁰ enim inter eōs dignitāte rēgiā,

Tries to free the Greeks from Darius, but fails.

3. Īīsdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārius, ex Asiā in Eurōpam exercītū trāiectō, Scythīs bellum ἰνβέρρων dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in Ἰστρό flūmine, quā copiās trāduceret. Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset, custōdēs reliquit principēs, quōs sēcum ex Iōnīā et Aeolide dūxerat; quibus singulīs suārum urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillimē putāvit sē Graecā linguā boreās, -ae, m., north wind.
loquentēs qui Asiam incoñerent sub suā retentūrum potestāte, si amīcis suis oppida tuenda trādidisset, qui-
bus sē oppressō nūlla spēs salūtis relinquuerētur. In hōc fuit tum numerō Miltiadēs cui illa custōdia crēderētur. 1 5 Hīc cum crēbrī adferrent nūntīi, male rem gerere

Bridge of Boats

Dārium premique à Scythīs, Miltiadēs hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē à fortūnā 2 datam occasiōnem libe-
randae Graeciae dimitterent. Nam sī cum iīs cópiis quās sēcum trānsportārat interisset Dārius, nōn sōlum Eurō-
pam fore tūtām, sed etiam eōs qui Asiam incoñerent Graeci genere liberōs ā Persārum futūrōs dominātīōne et periculō: 3 id et facile effici posse: ponte enim rescissō, rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopīā paucīs die-
bus interitūrum. Ad hoc cōnsilium cum 4 plērique

dominātiō, dominātiōnis, f., control.

1. could be intrusted. 2. Personified, hence ā. 3. danger (arising from it). 4. Concessive.
accēderent, Histiaeus Milēsius nē rēs cōnśicerētur obstītit, dīcēns nōn idem ipsīs quī summās imperīi tenērent expedīre et multitūdīnī, quod Dāriī rēgnō ipsōrūm nīterētur dominātiō: quō extinctō ipsōs potestāte expulsōs civibus suis poenās datūrōs. Itaque adeō sē abhorreōrē a cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsīs uti-
lius quam cōnfīrmāri rēgnōm Persārum. Huīus cum sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miltiādēs, nōn dubitāns tam multīs cōnsciis ad rēgis aurēs cōnsilia sua perversūrā, Chersonēsum reliquit ac rūrus Athēnās dēmigrāvit. Cuius ratiō etsi nōn valuit, tamen magnō opere est laudanda, cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Darius invades Greece.

4. Dārius autem, cum ex Europā in Asiam redīsset, hortantibus amīcis ut Graeciam redigeret in suam pote-
stātēm, classem quingentārum nāvium comparavīt eique Dātim praefēcit et Artaphernem, hisque ducentā peditūm, decem equītum milia dedit, causam interserēns sē hostem esse Athēniēnsibus, quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnēs

obstō, -āre, -stītī, —, oppositely.
abhorreō, -ēre, -horruī, —, shrink from, dissent from.

4. nōn dubitāns: Nepos here uses the infinitive where most writers use quīn with the sub-
junctive.

5. tam . . . cōnsciis: with so many in the secret.

6. ears.

7. Sc. mīla.

8. as a reason.

9. Here as an adj. with the dative.

1. nōn idem . . . multitūdīnī: one and the same (course) was not equally advantageous for those men who held the chief con-
trol and for the great bulk of people.

2. i.e. Darius.

3. ipsōs civibus . . . datūrōs: they themselves would suffer pun-
ishment at the hands of their subjects.
Sardis¹ expugnassent suaque praesidia interfecissent. Illī præfecti² rēgī, classe ad Euboëam appulsā, celeriter Eretriam cēpērunt omnēsque eius gentis civēs abreptōs³ in Asiam ad rēgem misērunt. Inde ad Atticam accessērunt ac suās cōpiās in campum Marathōna dēdukērunt. Is abest ab oppīdō circiter mīlia passuum decem. Hōc tumultū Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō tamque magnō permōtī, auxilium nusquam nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petivērunt Phīdippumque cursōrem eius generis, qui hēmerodromoe vocantur, Lacedaemonem misērunt, ut nūntiāret quam celeri opus esset auxiliō. Domī autem creant decem praetōrēs,⁵ qui exercitui praeessent, in īs Miltiadem. Inter quōs magna fuit contentiō, utrum moenibus sē défenderent, an obviā īrent hostibus aciēque décerne-rent. Ūnus⁶ Miltiādes maxīmē nītēbātur, ut⁷ primō quōque tempore castra fierent; id sī factum esset, et civibus animum accessūrum, cum vidērent dē eōrum virtūte nōn dēspērāri,⁹ et hostēs eādem rē fore tardīōrēs, si animadvertērent audēri⁹ adversus sē tam exiguīs¹⁰ cōpiās dimicāri.⁹

The battle of Marathon.


---

1. Accusative.
2. officers.
3. carried off.
4. quam ... auxiliō: what a need there was of speedy help.
5. generals.
6. Ūnus ... nītēbātur: Miltiades alone was very insistent.
7. ut primō ... fierent: that they take the field at the first instant possible.
8. et ... et: not only ... but also.
10. small.
11. crisis.
accessit. Cum iam in eo esset ut oppidō potūretur, procul in continentī lūcus, qui ex insula cōnspiciēbātur, nesciō quō cāsū nocturnō tempore incēnsus est. Cuius flamma ut ab oppidānis et oppugnātoribus est visa, utrisque vēnin in opiniōnem signum ā classiāriis rēgiūs datum. Quō factum est ut et .Pariī ā dēditioōne dēterre- rentur et Miltiadēs, timēns nē classis rēgia adventāret, incēnsis operibus quae statuerat, cum totidem nāvibus atque erat profectus, Athēnās magnā cum offēnsiōne civium suōrum rediret. Accūsātus ergō est prōditiōnis, quod, cum Parum expugnāre posset, ā rēge corruptus infectis rēbus discississet. Eō tempore aeger erat vulneribus, quae in oppugnandō oppidō accēperat. Itaque cum ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter eius Stēsagorās. Causā cōgnitā, capitis absolūtus pecūniā multātus est, eaque lis quīnquāgintā talentīs aestīmāta est, quantus in classem sūmptus factus erat. Hanc pecūniām quod solvere in praesentiā nōn poterat, in vincula pública coniectus est ibique diem obiūt suprē-

lūcus, -i, m., grove. opposuētor, opposuētōris, m.; cf. opposuē. classiārius, -a, -um; as a substantive in plu., seamen. adventō, 1, arrive. prōditiō, prōditiōnis, f., treason.

1. cum ... potūretur: just as he was on the point of taking the town.
2. continent.
3. nesciō quō = aliquō.
4. utrisque ... opiniōnem: it occurred to both.
5. totidem atque: same number as.
6. infectīs rēbus: with his purpose unaccomplished.
7. capital punishment.
8. pay.
9. met.
Another reason for his imprisonment.


innoxius, -a, -um, harmless, innocent.
innocent.

plectō, -ere, —, —; in passive, suffer punishment.

1. a mere private citizen.
2. erat cōnsecūtus: sc. tyran-

auctōrītās, etc.: sc. eīque erat.

3. considering.
II. THEMISTOCLES

c. 527–c. 460

His early life.

1. THEMISTOCLES, Neoclē filius, Athēniēnsis. Huius vitia\(^1\) ineuntis adulēscentiae magnīs sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, adeō ut anteferātur\(^2\) huic nēmō, paucī parēs putentur. Sed ab initiō est ārdiendus. Pater eius Neoclēs generōsus fuit. Is uxōrem Acarnānam cīvem dūxit,\(^3\) ex quā nātus est Themistoclēs. Qui cum minus\(^4\) esset probātus parentibus, quod et liberīs vivēbat et rem familiārem neglegēbat, ā patre exhērēdātus est. Quae contumēlia nōn frēgit eum, sed ērēxit.\(^5\) Nam cum iūdicāsset sine summā industriā nōn posse eam\(^6\) exstīngui,\(^7\) tōtum sē dēdidit reī publicae, diligentius amīcis fāmaeque\(^8\) serviēns. Multum in iūdicīs\(^9\) privātis versābātur, saepe in cōntīnem\(^10\) populī prōdībat; nūlla rēs maiōr\(^11\) sine eō gerēbātur, celeriter quae opus erant reperiēbat, facile eadem\(^12\) ōrātiōne expīcībat.\(^13\) Neque minus in rēbus gerendis prōmptus\(^14\) quam excōgitandis erat, quod et dē instantibus,\(^15\) ut ait Thūcydidēs,
vērissimē iūdicābat et dē futūris callidissimē coniciēbat. ¹
Quō factum est ut brevī tempore illustrāretur.

Xerxes invades Greece but is defeated. Themistocles interprets an oracle of Apollo.

2. Prīmus autem gradus fuit capessendae rei publicae bellō Corcyraeō; ad quod gerendum praetor a populō factus, nōn sōlum praeentī bellō, sed etiam reliquō tempore ferōciorem reddidit cīvātem. Nam cum pecūnia publica, quae ex metallīs redibat, largītiōne ² magistrātum quotannis interīret, ³ ille persuāsit populō ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificāretur. Quā celeriter effectā prīmum Corcyraeōs frēgit, deinde maritimōs ⁴ praedōnēs cōnsectāndō mare tūtum reddidit. In ⁵ quō cum dīvitiis ōrnāvit, tum etiam perfītissimōs bellī nāvālis fēcit Athēniēnsēs.⁶ Id quantae⁷ salūti fuerit universae Graeciae, bellō cōgnitum est Persicō. ¹⁵ Nam⁸ cum Xerxēs et mari et terrā bellum universae inferret Eurōpae cum tantīs cōpiīs, quantas⁹ neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam: huius enim classis mille et ducentārum nāvium longārum fuit, quam duō mīlia onerāriārum sequēbantur, terrestrēs autem exercitūs septimeingentā peditum, equitum quadringentā milia fuē-

vērē, truly, accurately.
callidē, shrewdly.
illūstrō, ī, make famous.
gradus, -ūs, m., step, stage.
capessō, -ere, capessivi, capessītum, take eagerly, undertake.
ferōx, ferōcis, wild, warlike.
metallum, -i, n., mine.
dīvitiae, -ārum, f., riches.
ōrnō, ī, provide with.
terrestrēs, -e, belonging to the land, land.

1. guessed.
2. lavish giving.
3. was lost.
4. maritimōs praedōnēs: pirates.
5. in quō: in so doing.
6. Obj. of ōrnāvit and fēcit.
7. quantae salūti: how helpful.
8. nam cum, etc.: this clause is not completed but, after the parenthetical huius . . . fuērunt, is taken up in another form.
9. as.
runt: — cuius dē adventū cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta et maximē¹ Athēniēnsēs petit dicerentur propter pugnam Marathōniam, misērunt Delphōs cōnsultum, quidnam facerent dē rēbus suīs. Dēliberantibus² Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneīs sē mūnirent. Id³ respōnsum quō valēret cum intellegēret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit⁴ cōnsilium esse Apollinis ut in nāvēs sē suaque cōnferrent; eum⁵ enim à deō sīgni-
ficārī mūrum līgneum. Tālī cōnsiliō probātō, addunt
ad supēriōrēs⁶ totidem nāvēs trirēmēs suaque omnia quae movērī poterant partim Salamina, partim Troe-
zēna dēportant; arcem sacerdōtibus paucīisque maiōribus
nātū ad sacra prōcūranda trādunt, reliquum oppidum reliquunt.

Battles at Thermopylae and near Artemisium.

15 3. Huius cōnsilium plērisque civitātibus displicēbat et in terrā dīmicārī magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī cum Leōnidā, Lacedaemoniōrum rēge, qui Ther-
moypylās occupārent longiusque barbarōs prōgredī nōn
paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuērunt eōque
locō omnēs interiērunt. At classis commūnīs Graeciae
trecentārum nāvīm, in quā ducentae erant Athēni-
ēnsium, prīmum apud Artemīsium inter Euboeam

ligneus, -a, -um, wooden, made of wood.
trirēmis, -e, with three banks of oars; as substantive, trireme.
dēportō, i; cf. portō.
sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred; here as substantive, sacred rites.
prōcūrō, i, care for, manage.
displaceō, -ère, -plicūi, -plicitum, displease.

¹ lit. the Athenians were said to be aimed at particularly.
² 2. seeking advice.
³ 3. id ... valēret: what this reply meant.
⁴ 4. convinced; note the infinitive with this verb.
⁵ 5. eum ... ligneum: that kind of wooden wall was indicated by the god.
⁶ 6. the former ones.
continentemque terram cum classiāriīs rēgiōs cōnfluxit. Angustiās enim Themistoclēs quaeōbat nē multitudine circumīrētur. Hinc etsi pari proeliō discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat periculum, nē, sī pars nāvium adversāriōrum Euboeam superāssé, anticipī premeretur periculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemísio discēderent et exadversum Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōnstituērent.

Xerxes seizes and destroys Athens. Battle of Salamis.

4. At Xerxes, Thermopylēs expugnātās, prōtīnus accessit astū idque, nūllīs dēfendentibus, interfecēt sacerdōtibus, quōs in arce invēnerat, incendiō dēlēvit. Cuius flammā perterritā classiāriī cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs suās discēderent moenibusque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit et universōs parēs esse posse aīēbat, dispersōs testābātur peritūrōs, idque Eurybiadī, rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, qui tum summae imperii praerat, fore adfirmābat. Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servī suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit, ut eī nūntiāret, suīs verbīs, adversāriōs eius in fugā esse; quī si discessissent, maiōre cum labōre et longinquiōre tempore bellum cōnfectūrum, cum singulōs cōnectāri cōgerētur; quōs sī statim aggrederētur, breviūniversōs

exadversum, prep., opposite.
estor, i, bear witness, assert.
astū, indeclin., n., city.
adfirmō, i; cf. cōnfirmō.

1. undecided.
2. sailed past.
3. if united.
4. equal to the occasion.
5. Subject of fore.
7. dē servī suis: sc. eum.
8 i.e. Xerxes.
9. suīs verbīs: i.e. speaking for Themistocles.
10. i.e. Xerxes.
11. = brevi tempore.
oppressūrum. Hoc\(^1\) eō valēbat, ut ingrātiis ad dēpug-
nandum omnēs cōgerentur. Hāc rē audītā barbarus,
nihil doli subesse crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō sibi locō,

contrā opportūnissimō hostibus, adeō angustō marī cōn-

5

flixit, ut eius multitūdō nāvium explicāri\(^2\) nōn potuerit.
Victus ergō est magis etiam cōnsiliō Themistoclī quam
armis Graeciae.

_Xerxes returns to Asia on the advice of Themistocles._

5. Hic\(^3\) etsi male rem gesserat, tamen tantās habēbat
reliquiās cōpiārum, ut etiam tum īs opprimere posset

---

1. hoc eō valēbat: _the plan of this was._
2. spread out.
3. Adverb.
hostēs. Iterum ab eōdem gradū dépulsus est. Nam Themistoclēs, verēns nē bellāre perseverāret certōrem eum fēcit id agī, ut pōns, quem ille in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur ac rēditū in Asia exclūderētur; idque eī persuāsit. Itaque, quā sex mēnsibus iter fēcerat, eādem minus diēbus trigintā in Asia reversus est sēque ā Themistoclē nōn superātum, sed cōnservātum iūdicāvit. Sic ūnīs virī prūdentī Graecia liberātā est Europaeque succubuit Asia. Haec est altera victōria quae cum Marathōnīō possit comparārī tropaeō. Nam pārī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium maxima post hominum memoriam classis est dévicta.

The Spartans object to the rebuilding of Athens. Themistocles goes to them as an ambassador.


1. Abl. of agent.
2. gradū dépulsus est : he was deprived of his advantage.
3. id agī : this plan was being considered.
4. cut down.
5. Sc. Xerēs.
derent, Athēniēnsēs aedificantēs prohibēre sunt cōnātī. Hoc longē\(^1\) aliō spectābat atque vidēri volēbant. Athēniēnsēs enim duābus victōriis, Marathōniā et Salamōniā, tantam glōriam apud omnēs gentēs erant cōnsecūtī, ut intellegearent Lacedaemonii dē princi-
pātū sibi cum iīs certāmen fore. Quārē eōs quam ἰνήμισσιμός esse volēbant. Post-
quam autem audīērunt mūrōs struī,\(^2\) lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī id fieri vetārent. Ἅis
praesentibus dēsiē-
runτ\(^3\) ac sē dē cā rē lēgātōs ad eōs missūrōs dixērunt. Hanc lēgātiōnem suscēpit Themistoclēs et sōlus prīmō
profectus est; reliquī\(^4\) lēgātī ut tum exīrēnt, cum satis
altī tuendō\(^5\) mūrī extrūctī vidērentur, praecēpit: inte-
rim omnēs, servi atque liberī, opus facerent neque ūlli
locō parcerent, sīve sacer sīve profānus, sīve privātus
essim sive publicus, et undique, quod idōneum ad mūn-
endum putārent, congererent. Quō factum est ut Athē-
iēnsium mūri ex sacellīs sepulcrīisque cōnstaērent.\(^6\)

\[\text{profānus, -a, -um, profane, unholy.} \]
\[\text{sacellum, -i, n., shrine.} \]
\[\text{sepulcrum, -i, n., tomb.} \]

1. longē... spectābat atque: had quite a different meaning than.
2. being built.
4. reliquī... ut... exīrēnt: depends on praecēpit.
5. for defense.
6. consisted of (material); substantive result.
He outwits the Spartans and Athens is rebuilt.

7. Themistoclēs autem, ut Lacedaemonem vēnit, adire ad magistrātūs nōluit et dedit\textsuperscript{1} operam, ut quam longissimē tempus dūceret, causam interpōnēns sē col·lēgās exspectāre. Cum Lacedaemonii querentur opus nihilō minus fieri eumque in eā rē cōnāri fallere, interim reliquī légāti sunt cōnsecūti. Ā quibus cum audīset nōn multum superesse müniṭiōnis, ad ephorōs Lacedaemoniōrum accessit, penes quōs summum erat imperium, atque apud eōs contendit falsa\textsuperscript{2} iīs esse dēlāta; quārē aequum esse illōs\textsuperscript{3} virōs bonōs nōbilēsque mittere, quibus fidēs habērētur, qui rem explōrārent; intereā sē obsidem retinērent. Gestus\textsuperscript{4} est eī mōs, trēsque légāti functī summīs honōribus Athēnās missī sunt. Cum his collēgās suōs Themistoclēs iussit proficiscī iīisque prae-

\textsuperscript{1} dīxit ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum légātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātūs senātumque Lacedaemoniōrum adīt et apud eōs liberrīmē professus\textsuperscript{5} est: Athēniēnsēs suō\textsuperscript{6} cōnsiliō, quod\textsuperscript{7} commūnī iūre gentium facere possent, deōs\textsuperscript{8} públicōs suōsque patriōs ac pēnātēs, quō facilius ab hoste possent défendere, müris saep-

---

1. dedit operam: took pains. 2. falsa...dēlāta: false reports had been brought to them. 3. Subject of mittere, which has virōs for object. Refers to the ephors. 4. gestus...mōs: his wish was carried out. 5. professus est: talked. 6. suō cōnsiliō: by his advice. 7. a thing which. 8. Object of saepsisse.
sisse, neque in eō quod inūtile esset Graeciae fēcisse. Nam illōrum urbem ut prōpugnāculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam iam bis classēs rēgiās fēcisse naufragium. Lacedaemoniōs autem male et iniūstē facere, quī id potius intuērentur, quod ipsōrum dominātiōni quam quod ūniversalē Graeciae ūtile esset. Quārē, si suōs lēgātōs recipere vellent, quōs Athēnās miserant, sē remitterent, cum aliter illōs numquam in patriam essent receptūri.

Themistocles is banished.

8. Tamen nōn effūgit civium suōrum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timōrem quō damnātus erat Mīliadēs, testulārum suffrāgiis c civitātē ēiectus, Argōs habitātum concessit. Hīc cum propter multās virtūtēs magnā cum dignitāte viēveret, Lacedaemoniī lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī eam absentem accūsārent, quod societātem cum rēge Persē ad Graeciam opprimēdam fēcisset. Hōc crīmine absēns prōditiōnis damnātus est. Id ut audīvit, quod nōn satis tūtum sē Argīs vidēbat, Corcyrām dēmigrāvit. Ibi cum eius principēs animadvertisset timēre, nē propter sē bellum ēs Lacedaemoniī et Athēniēnsēs indicerent, ad Admētum, Molossīūm rēgem, cum quō eī hospitium erat, cōfūgit. Hūc

prōpugnāculum, -i, n., barrier. effugīō; cf. fugīō.
naufragium, -i, n., shipwreck. testula, -ae, f., voting tablet.
inīūstē, unjustly. ēiciō; cf. iaciō.

1. in eō: thereby.
2. ut prōpugnāculum: as an outpost: pred. noun after esse.
3. built against.
4. apud quam = et apud eam.
5. ill will.
6. because of which.
7. testulārum suffrāgiis: i.e. votes written on bits of pottery.
8. Acc. plural.
9. alliance.
10. Greek for Persā.
11. Modifies damnātus est.
13. guest-friendship.

He writes to King Artaxerxes tendering his aid.

9. Sciō plērosque ita scripsisse, Themistoclēn Xerxe régnaunte in Asiam trānsisse. Sed ego potissimum Thūcydīdi crēdō, quod et aetāte proximus dē iīs, qui

arripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, seize. ēscendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsum, embarking.
sacrārium, -i, n., sanctuary. salum, -i, n., deep sea.
caerimōnia, -ae, f., sacred rite, reverence.

1. fear of the gods.
2. sē receptum tuērētur: he (the king) might receive and guard him.
3. made good.
4. -que: but.
5. Adverb.
6. pity.
7. ruling.
8. in point of time.
illorum temporum historiam reliquērunt, et eiusdem civitātis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxēn eum vēnisse atque ħis verbīs epistulam mīsisse: "Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē, quī plurīma mala omnium Grāiōrum 1 in domum 2 tuam intuli, quam 3 diū mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum bellāre patriamque meam dēfendere. Idem multō plūra bona fēcī, postquam in tūtō ipse 4 et ille in periculō esse coepit. Nam cum in Asia vertī vellet, proelīō apud Salamīna factō litterīs eum certīorem fēcī id a ģī 10 ut pōns, quem in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissipērētur atque ab hostibus circumīrētur; 5 quō nūntīō ille periculō est liberātus. Nunc autem cōnfügi ad tē exagitātus ā cūntā Graeciā, tuam petēns amīcitiam: quam si erēd adeptus, 6 nōn minus mē bonum amīcum habēbis quam fortem 15 inimicum ille expertus est. Tē autem rogō, ut dē īs rēbus, quās tēcum colloqui vōlō, annuum 7 mihi tempus dēs eōque trānsāctō ad tē venīre patriāris."

Themistocles is well received in Persia by the king. He dies there.

10. Huius rēx animī magnitūdinem admirāns cupiēnsque tālem virum sibi conciliāri veniam dedit. Ille 20 omne illud temporū litterīs sermōnīquē 8 Persārum sē dēdidit; quibus adeō ēruditus est ut multō commodius dicātur apud rēgem verba fēcisse quam ī poterant quī in Perside erant nāti. Hic cum multa rēgī esset pollicitus grātissīmumque 9 illud, sī suis ĭūti cōnsiliīs vellet, illum

| historia, -ae, f., history. | venia, -ae, f., indulgence, permission. |
| trānsīgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, drive through, finish. | ērudiō, 4, instruct. |
| 1. Partit. gen. with qui. | 7. annuum tempus: a year's time. |
| 2. house, line. | 8. spoken language. |
| 3. quam diū: as long as. | 9. grātissimum illud: and as the most welcome the following, that. |
| 4. Sc. esse coepī. |  |
NEPOS, LIVES

Graeciam bellō oppressūrum, magnīs mūneribus Artaxerxe dōnātus, in Asia1 rediit domicilium Magnēsiae sibi cōnstituit. Namque hanc urbem e dōnārat, his2 quidem verbīs, quae3 ei pānem prael 5 (ex quā regiōne quinquāgēna talenta quotannis bant4); Lampsacum autem, unde vinum sūm Myunta, ex quā obsōnium habēret.

Huius ad nostram memoriam monumenta mānsē duo; sepulum prope oppidum, in quō est sepulta statua in forō Magnēsiae. Dē cuius morte multis n apud plerōque scriptum est, sed nōs eundem po mum Thūcydīdem auctōrem probāmus, qui illum Magnēsiae morbō5 mortuum neque negat fūris fār venēnum suā sponte sūmpsisse, cum sē, quae rēg 15 Graeciā opprimēndā pollicitus esset, praestāre p désērēret. Ídem ossa eius clam in Atticā ab ai sepulta,6 quoniam lēgibus nōn concēderētur, quod ditiōnis esset damnātus, memoriae prōdidit.

III. CIMON

?-449

Cimon is delivered from prison by his sister.

1. Cīmōn, Miltiadis filius, Athēniēnis, dūrō ac 20 dūm7 initiō ūsus8 est adulēscentiē. Nam cum 1

1. Sc. minōrem.
2. his verbīs: on just these
3. = ut ea: make corresponding changes in unde and ex quā.
4. were returned (in tax)
5. disease.
7. very.
8. ūsus est: experienced.
eius litem¹ aestimātam² populō solvere nōn potuisset ob eamque causam in vincis publicis dēcessisset,³ Cīmōn eādem custōdiā tenēbatur neque lēgibus Athēniēnsium ēmittī poterat, nisi pecūniām, quā pater multitūs erat, ⁵ solvisset. Habēbat autem in mātrimōnīō sorōrem germānam suam, nōmine Elpinīcēn, nōn magis amore quam mōre ductus: namque Athēniēnsibus licet eōdem patre nātās uxorēs dūcere.⁴ Huius⁵ coniugī cupidus Calliās quīdam, nōn tam generōsus⁶ quam pecūniōsus, quī mag- ¹⁰ nās pecūniās ex metallīs fēcerat, ēgit cum Cīmōne ut eam sibi uxorēm daret: id sī impetrāisset, sē prō illō pecūniām solūtūrum. Is cum⁷ tālem condicionem āspernāētur, Elpinīcē negāvit sē passūram Miltiādīs prōgeniem in vincīs publicīs interīre, quoniam prohibi- ¹⁵ bēre posset, sēque Calliāe nūptūram, sī ea quae pollicērētur praestitissēt.

He becomes famous as a statesman and general.

2. Tāli modō custōdiā liberātus Cīmōn celeriter ad princīpātum pervēnit. Habēbat enim sātis eloquentiae, summam liberalitātem, magnam prūdentiām cum iūris ⁲⁰ civilīs tum rei militāris, quod cum patre a puerō⁸ in exercitūs fuerat⁹ versātus. Itaque hic et populum ur-

germinānus, -a, -um, own; here used with sorōrem for half sister.
coniugium, -i, n., marriage.
pecūniōsus, -a, -um, moneyed, wealthy.
aspernor, i, scorn.
prōgeniēs, acc. -em, abl. -ē, f., descendant.
eloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence.
civilis, -e, civil.
urbānus, -a, -um, of the city.

1. fine.
2. imposed.
3. = mortuus est.
4. marry.
5. with her.
6. = nōbilis.
7. Concessive.
8. a puerō: from boyhood.
9. fuerat versātus: fui and fueram are often used by Nepos to form the perf. and pluperf. tenses.
bānum in suā tenuit potestāte et apud exercitum plūri-
num valuit auctōritāte. Prīnum imperātor apud flūmen
Stryōna magnās cōpiās Thrācum fugāvit, oppidum
Amphipolim cōnstituit, eōque decem mīlia Athēniēnsium
5 in colōniam mīsit. Īdem iterum apud Mycalēn, Cypriō-
rum et Phoenīcum ducentārum nāvium classem dēvic-
10 tam 1 cēpit eōdemque diē parī fortūnā in terrā ūsus est.
Namque, hostium nāvibus captīs, statim ex classe cōpiās
suās ēdūxit barbarōrumque maximam vim ūnō concursū
prōstrāvit. 2 Quā victōriā magnā praedā potitus, cum
domum reverterētur, quod iam nōnnūllae īnsulae propter
acerbītātem imperii dēfēcerant, bene animātās cōnfirma-
vit, aliēnātās ad officium redire coēgit. Scyrum, quam
eō tempore Dolopes incolēbant, quod contumācius sē
gesserant, vacuēfēcit, sessōrēs veterēs urbe īnsulāque
eīēcit, agrōs civibus divīsit. Thasiōs opulentīā frētōs
15 suō adventū frēgit. Hīs ex manubiīs 4 arx Athēnārum,
quā ad meridiem vergit, est ōrnāta.

He is banished, recalled, restores peace, dies.

3. Quibus rēbus cum 5 ūnus in civitāte maximē
flōrēret, incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus
cēterīque Athēniēnsium principēs: nam testārum suf-
frāgiis, quod 6 illī δοστρακισμον vocant, decem annōrum
exsilīō multātus est. 7 Cuius factī celerius Athēniēnsēs

acerbitās, acerbītātis, f., severity. vacuēfaciō; cf. vacuus + faciō.
animātus, -a, -um, disposed. sessor, sessōris, m., inhabitant.
aliēnātus, -a, -um, estranged. opulentia, -ae, f., wealth.
contumāciter, with insubordina-
tion. testa, -ae; cf. testula.

1. dēvictam cēpit = dēvicit et
cēpit.
2. vanquished.
3. relying on.
4. spoils.
5. Causal.
6. (a proceeding) which.
7. was punished.
quam ipsum paenituit. Nam cum ille animō fortī invidiae ingrātōrum cīvium cessisset bellumque Lacedaemonii Athēniēnsibus indīxissent, cōnfēstim nōtae eius virtūtis dēsiderium cōnsecūtum est. Itaque post anum quintum quam expulsus erat, in patriam revocātus est. Ille, quod hospitiō Lacedaemoniōrum ūtēbātur, satius existimāns concēdere quam armīs contendere, Lacedaemonem suā sponte est profectus pācemque inter duās potentissimās cīvitātēs conciliāvit. Post, neque ita multō, Cyprum cum ducentīs nāvibus imperātor missus, cum eius maiōrem partem īnsulae dēvīcisset, in morbum implicitus in oppidō Citiō est mortuus.

4. Hunc Athēniēnsēs non sōlum in bellō sed etiam in pāce diū dēsiderāvērunt. Fuit enim tantā liberālitātē, cum complūribus locīs praeida hortōsque habēret, ut numquam in īs custōdem imposuerit frūctūs servandī grātiā, nē quis impedīrētur quō minus eis rēbus, quibus quisque vellet fruerētur. Semper eum pedisequi

---

paenitet, -ēre, paenituit, imper- 
personal, repent.
graatūs, -a, -um, ungrateful.
nōtus, -a, -um, well-known.
dēsiderium, -ī, n., loss, need. 
dēsiderō, ī, regret, need. 
praeedium, -ī, n., farm. 
hortus, -ī, m., garden. 
fruor, -ī, fructūs sum, delight in, enjoy. 
pedisequus, -ī, m., footman, attendant.

1. Takes acc. of person and gen. of the cause of the feeling. 
2. Indir. obj. of cessisset. 
3. post . . . quam: five years after. 
4. better. 
5. arranged. 
6. post . . . multō: later, but not much so. 
7. in morbum implicitus: seised by illness. 
8. Translate this word before the cum concessive clause. 
9. = causā. 
10. quō minus fruerētur: from enjoying. 
11. Abl. with fruī, understood with vellet.
cum nummīs sunt secūti, ut, si quis opis eius indigēret, habēret, quod statim dare, nē differendō videāretur negāre. Saepe, cum aliquem offensus fortuitō videāret minus bene vestītum, suum amicum dedit. Cotidiē sic cēna eī coquēbātur, ut, quōs invocātōs vidisset in forō, omnēs dēvocāret: quod facere nūllō die praetermittēbat. Nūlli fidēs eius, nūlli opera, nūlli rēs familiāris dēfuit: multōs locupletāvit, complūrēs pauperēs mortuōs, quī unde efferrentur non reliquisresent, suō sumptū exultāt. Sic sē gerendō minimē est mirandum si et vita eius fuit sēcūra et mors acerba.

IV. EPAMINONDAS

c. 418–362

Differences between the customs of the Greeks and the Romans.

1. Epaminōndas, Polynnidis filius, Thēbānus. Dē hōc priusquam scribimus, haec praecipienda videntur lēctōribus, nē aliēnōs mōrēs ad suōs referant, nēve ea,

indigeō, -ēre, -digui, —, need. dēvocō, i; cf. vocō.
fortuitō, by chance. praetermittō, -ere, -misē, -missum, let pass, omit.
amicum, -i, n., mantle. pauper, pauperis, poor.
coquō, -ere, coxi, coctum, cook. secūrus, -a, -um, free from care.
invocātus, -a, -um; cf. in (not) + acerbus, -a, -um, bitter.
vocō. lēctor, lēctōris, m., reader.
forum, -i, n., forum.

1. pieces of money.
2. aid.
3. by putting him off.
4. found.
5. dinner.
6. protection.
7. enriched.
8. unde efferrentur: with which they might be buried.
9. sic sē gerendō = cum sē gereret.
10. i.e. to his fellow citizens.
11. nē... referent: that they shall not refer the customs of others to their own (as a standard).
quae ipsīs leviōrā sunt, parī modō apud cēterōs fuisset arbitrentur. Scīmus enim músicēn nostrīs mōribus abesse ā prīncipis persōnā, saltāre vērō etiam in vitīis pōnī; quae omnia apud Graecōs et grāta et laude digna dūcuntur. Cum autem exprimere imāginem cōnsuētūdinis atque vitae velīmus Epaminōndae, nihil vidēmur dēbēre praetermittere quod pertineat ad eam déclārandam. Quārē dīcēmus prīnum dē genere eius; deinde quibus disciplīnis et ā quibus sit ēruditus; tum dē mōribus ingeniōque facultātibus et si qua alia memoriā digna erunt; postrēmō dē rēbus gestīs, quae ā plurīmis animī antepōnuntur virtūtibus:

The education of Epaminondas.

2. Nātus igitur patre, quō diximus, genere honestō, pauper iam ā maiōribus relictus est, ēruditus autem sic, ut nēmō Thēbānus magis. Nam et citharīzāre et can-tāre ad chordārum sonum doctus est ā Dionysīō, qui nōn minōre fuit in músicīs glōriā quam Dāmōn aut

música, -ae, and músicē, acc. -ēn, f., músic (including poētry).
persōnā, -ae, f., mask, part, char-
acter.
saltō, 1, dance.
dignus, -a, -um, worthy.
ingenuous, -i, n., talent.
antepōnō; cf. pōnō.

igitur, therefore, then.
citharīzō, -āre, —, —, play on the lyre.
cantō, 1, sing, play.
chordā, -ae, f., string.
música, -a, -um, musical; masc.
as subst., musician; neut. as subst., music.

1. in their own eyes.
2. quite trivial.
4. for example.
5. is inconsistent with.
6. Trans. as a participial noun, the subject of pōnī.
7. exprimere imāginem: to write a sketch.
8. vidēmur dēbēre: it seems that we ought.
9. ad eam déclārandam: to make it clear.
10. ingeniō facultātibus: na-tive ability.
11. si qua: whatever.
Lamprus, quorum pervulgāta sunt nōmina, cantāre tībis ab Olympiodōrō, saltāre ā Calliphrone. At philosophiae praecceptōrem habuit Lýsim Tarentinum, Pýthagorēum; cui quidem sic fuit dēditus ut adulēscēns 1 trīstem ac sevērum senem omnibus aequālibus suis in familiāritāte anteposuerit; neque prius eum ā sē dimi-sit quam in doctrīnis tantō antecessit condiscipulōs, ut facile intellegī posset parī modō superātūrum omnēs in cēteris artibus. Atque haec ad nostram cōnsuētūdinem sunt levia et potius contemnenda; at in Graeciā, uti-que 2 ōlim, magnae laudi erant. Postquam ephēbus est factus et palaestrae dare operam coepit, nōn tam magni-tūdini vírium servīvit 3 quam vēlocitātī; illam enim ad āthlētārum usum, hanc ad bellī existimābat utilitātem pertinēre. Itaque exercēbātur 4 plūrimum currendo et luctandō ad eum finem, quoad 5 stāns completī posset atque contendere. In armīs vēro plūrimum studii cōnsūmēbat.

doctrina, -ae, f., study, wisdom.  
condiscipulus, -i, m., fellow student.  
ars, artis, f., art, skill.  
ephēbus, -i, m., youth.  
palaestra, -ae, f., wrestling.  
āthlēta, -ae, m., athlete.  
currō, -ere cucerri, cursum, run.  
luctor, -i, wrestle.  

1. Concessive.  
2. utique ōlim: formerly at any rate.  
3. labore for.  
4. he used to train himself.  
5. quoad . . . contendere: until he could grapple and struggle while standing.
His characteristics.

3. Ad hanc corporis firmitātem plūra etiam animī bona accesserant. Erat enim modestus, prūdēns, gravis, temporibus sapienter ūtēns, perītus belli, fortis manū, animō maximō, adeō vēritātis diligēns ut nē iocō quidem mentirētur. Īdem continēns, clēmēns patiēnsque admirandum in modum, nōn sōlum populī sed etiam amicōrum fērēns iniūriās, in prīmīs commissa cēlāns, quod interdum nōn minus prōdest quam disertē dicere, studiōsus audiendi; ex hōc enim facillimē discī arbitrā-bātur. Itaque cum in circulum vēnisset in quō aut dē rē pūblicant disputerētur aut dē philosophiā sermō habērētur, numquam inde prius discessit quam ad finem sermō esset adductus. Paupertātem adeō facile per- pessus est, ut dē rē pūblicant nihil praeter glōriam cē- perit. Amicōrum in sē tuendō caruit facultātibus, fidē ad aliōs sublevandōs saepe sic ūsus est, ut iūdicāri possit omnia eī cum amīcis fuisse commūnia. Nam cum aut civium suōrum aliquis ab hostibus esset captus,

modestus, -a, -um, modest.
prūdēns, prūdentis, shrewd.
sapienter, wisely.

vēritās, vēritātis, f., truth.
diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, be fond of.

iōcus, -i, m., jest.

mentor, 4, lie.
clēmēns, clēmentis, kind.

admirandus, -a, -um; cf. admiror.
commissum, -i, n., something in-
trusted, secret.
disertē, clearly.
circulus, -i, m., circle, group.

1. were added.
2. chances.
3. self-controlled.
4. is useful.
5. that one learned.
6. a question was being dis-
cussed.

7. suffered.
8. in sē tuendō: in protecting himself.
9. he did without.
10. = opibus.
11. eī cum amīcis: between his friends and himself.
aut virgo amici nubilis, quae propter paupertatem collo-
cari non possit, amicorum consilium habebat et, quantum quisque daret, pro facultatibus imperabat. Eam-
que summam cum confecerat, priusquam acciperet pecuniam, adducebat eum qui quaequebat ad eos qui
conferebant, eique ut ipsi numerarent faciebat ut ille
ad quem ea perveniiebat sciret quantum debeiret.

_His incorruptibility._

4. Tentata autem eius est abstinentia à Diomedonte
Cyziceno; namque is, rogatū Artaxerxis rēgis, Epaminondam pecuniā corrupendum susceperat. Hic magnō
cum pondere aurī Thēbās vēnit et Micythum adulēscent-
tulum quinque talentīs ad suam perdūxit voluntātem,
 quem tum Epaminondas plūrimum diligebat. Micythus
Epaminondam convenit et causam adventūs Diomedontis
ostendit. At ille Diomedonte cōram: "nihil," inquit,
"opus pecuniā est; nam si rēx ea vult quae Thēbānīs
sunt utilia, grātiis facere sum parātus, sin autem con-
trāria, nōn habet aurī atque argentī satis. Namque
orbis terrārum divitias accipere nōlo prō patriae cāritāte.
Tū quod mē incōgnitum tentasti tuique similem existi-
māstī, nōn mīrō tibique ignōscō; sed ēgradere properē,
nē aliōs corrupas, cum mē nōn potueris. Et tū, Micy-

---

nūbilis, -e, marriageable.
apupertās, paupertātis, f.; cf.
apuper.
numerō, 1, count out.
tentō, 1, test.
abstinence, -ae, f., self-restraint.

rogatū, only in abl., m., by request.
aurum, -i, n., gold.
grātiis, for nothing.
cāritas, cāritātis, f., love.
properē, in a hurry.

1. be given in marriage.
2. amount.
3. bribe; the gerundive con-
struction with Epaminondam.
4. in the presence of; a post-
positive prep. with the abl. case.
the, argentum huic redde, aut, nisi id cōnfēstim facis, ego tē trādam magistrātui." Hunc Diomedōn cum rogāret ut tūtō exīret suaque quae attulerat licēret efferre; "istud quidem," inquit, "faciam, neque tuā causā, sed meā, nē, si tibi sit pecūnia adēmpta, aliquis dicit id ad mē ēreptum pervēnisse, quod dēlātum accipere nōlussem." Ἄquō cum quaeśīset quō sē dē-ducī vellet, et ille Athēnās dixisset, praesidium dedit, ut tūtō perveniret. Neque vērō id satis habuit, sed etiam, ut inviolātus in nāvem escenderet, per Chabriam Athēnīensem, dē quō suprā mentions fēcimus, effēcit. Abstinentiae erit hoc satis testimōnium. Plūrima quidem prōferre possimus, sed modus adhibendus est, quoniam ūnō hoc volūmine vītam excellēntium virōrum complū-rium conclūdere cōnstituimus, quōrum sēparātim multis milibus versuum complūrēs scriptōrēs ante nōs explica-runt. His ready repartee and his eloquence.

5. Fuit etiam disertus, ut nēmō eī Thēbānus pār eset eloquentiā, neque minus concinnus in brevītāte respōn-
dendi quam in perpetuā ēratiōne ornātus. Habuit ob-
trēctātōrem Menelcidēn quendam, indidem Thēbis, et

inviolātus, -a, -um, unharmed.
volumen, voluminis, n., book.
conclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, include.
versus, -ūs, m., line.
scriptor, scriptōris, m., writer.
disertus, -a, -um, fluent.

concinnus, -a, -um, well adjusted, concise.
ornātus, -a, -um, elegant.
obrēctātōr, obrēctātōris, m., disparager, rival.
indidem, from the same place, likewise.

1. neque tuā causā: but not for your sake.
2. Dat. of separation.
3. by seizure.
4. when offered.
5. be escorted.
7. Abl. of means.
8. described.
9. set.

Further evidence of his readiness.

6. Ídem cum in conventum vēnisset Arcadum, petēns ut societātem cum Thēbānis et Argīvis facerent, contrāque

| insum ; cf. sum. | insolentia, -ae, f., haughtiness, arrogance. |
| ávocō, i ; cf. vocō. | aemulor, i, rival. |
| ōtium, -ī, n., inactivity, peace. | |

1. ut Thēbānum scilicet: that is, for a Thēban.  
2. by means of that word (i.e. pācem).  
3. is brought about.  
4. long.  
5. ūniversā Graeciā: with all Greece united.  
6. contrā . . . nostrā: on the other hand with this one city of ours.

7. Ídem cum, etc.; the main verb of the sentence is dīxit, line 11, page 198. The subject is repeated in Epaminōndās, l. 9, page 198.

8. -que, connects vēnisset and postulāret.
Callistratus, Athēnīēnsium lēgātus, qui eloquentiā omnēs eō praestābat tempore, postulāret ut potius amīcitiam sequerentur Atticōrum, et in črātiōne suā multa invectus esset in Thēbānōs et Argīvōs, in iisque hoc posuisset, animadvertere dēbēre. Arcades quālēs utraque civitās civēs prōcreāsset, ex quibus dē cēterīs possent īūdicāre; Argīvōs enim fuisse Orestem et Alcmaeonem mātricidās, Thēbis Oedipum nātum esse, qui patrem suum interfēcisset; huic in respondendō Epamīnōndās, cum dē cēterīs perōrāsset, postquam ad illa duo opprobria pervēnit, admirāri sē dixit stultitiam rhētoris Atticī, quī nōn animadverterit, innocentēs illōs nātōs domī, scelere admissō cum patriā essent expulsi, receptōs esse ab Athēniēnsibus. Sed maximē eius eloquentia ēlūxīt Spartae lēgātī ante pugnam Leuctricam. Quō cum omnium sociōrum convēnissent lēgātī, cōram frequentissimō lēgātiōnum conventū sic Lacedaemoniōrum tyrannidem coarguit, ut nōn minus illā ārātiōne opēs eōrum concussērīt quam Leuctricā pugnā. Tum enim perfēcit, quod post appārūit, ut auxiliō Lacedaemonii sociōrum privārentur.

invehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry against; in pass. with reflexive force, make an attack.
prōcreō, 1, produce.
mātricīdā, -ae, m., one who murders his mother, matri- cide.
perōrō, 1, finish.
oppōbrium, -ī, n., reproach.
rhētor, rhētoris, m., orator;

(implying contempt) talker, speechifier.
ēlūceō, -ēre, -lūxi, ——, shine out, be conspicuous.
coarguō, -ere, -arguī, -argūtum, prove, expose.
concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, disturb, crush.
appāreō, -ēre, -pārui, -pāritum, appear.

1. in iis hoc posuisset: had inserted among these attacks this statement.
2. Depend on verb of say-
ing implied in in . . . posuisset.
3. stupidity.
4. Sc. esse.
5. Appositive with eius.
7. Fuiisse¹ patientem suōrumque iniūriās ferentem cīvium, quod sē patriae ĭrăscī nefās esse dūceret, haec sunt testimōnia. Cum eum propter invidiam civēs suī praeficere exercituī nōluissent, duxque esset dēlēctus belli imperitus, cuius errore eō esset dēducta illa multitūdō militum ut omnēs dē salūte pertimēscerent, quod locŏrum angustiis clausi ab hostibus obsidēbantur, dēsiderārī coepta est Epaminŏndae diligentia; erat enim ibi privātus numerō² militis. A quō cum peterent opem, nūllam adhibit memoriām contumēliae et exercitum obsidiōne liberātum domum redūxīt incolumem. Nec vērō hoc semel fēcit, sed saeptius. Maximē autem fuit illūstre,³ cum in Peloponnēsum exercitum dūxisset adversus Lacedaemoniōs habēretque collēgās duōs, quŏrum alter 15 erat Pelopidās, vir fortis ac strēnuus. Hī cum crīminibus adversāriōrum omnēs in invidiam vēnissent, ob eamque rem imperium iis⁴ esset abrogātum, atque in eōrum locum alīi praeātōres successissent, Epaminŏndās populī scitō nŏn pāruit, idemque ut facerent persuāsit collēgīs, et belolum quod suscēperat gessit. Namque animadvertēbat, nisi id fēcisset, tōtum exercitum propter praeātōrum imprudentiam inscitiamque belli perītūrum. Lēx erat Thēbis quae morte multābat, sī⁶ quis imperium diūtius

---

1. Sc. Epaminŏndam as subject.
2. with the rank.
3. famous.
4. Dat. of separation.
5. sī quis: whoever.
retinuisset, quam lēge praefiniētum foret. Hanc Epaminondas, cum rei publicae cōnservandae causā lātam vidēret, ad pernicem civitātis cōnferre nōluit et quattuor mēnsibus diūtius, quam populus iussērat, gessit imperium.

*He ingeniously defends his act and escapes the penalty.*

5 8. Postquam domum reditum est, collēgāe eius hōc crīmine accūsābantur. Quibus ille permīsit, ut omnem causam in sē trānsferrent, suāque operā factum contendorent ut lēgi nōn oboedīrent. Quā dēfēnsiōne illis perīculō liberātīs, nēmō Epaminondam respōnsūrum putābat, quod quid dīceret nōn habēret. At ille in iūdicium vēnit, nihil eōrum negāvit quae adversārii crīmini dabant, omniaque quae collēgāe dīxerant cōnfalse est, neque recūsāvit quō minus lēgis poenam subīret, sed ūnum ab īis petīvit ut in sepulcrō suō īnscīberent: "Epaminondas ā Thēbānīs morte multātus est, quod eōs coēgit apud Leuctra superāre Lacedaemoniōs, quōs ante sē imperātōrem nēmō Boeōtiōrum ausus sit aspicere in aciē, quodque ūnō proeliō nōn sōlum Thēbās ab interitu retrāxit, sed etiam ūniversam Graeciam in libertātem vendicāvit, eōque rēs utrōrumque perdūxit ut Thēbānī Spartam oppugnārent, Lacedaemoniī satis habērent, si salvi esse possent, neque prius bellāre dēstitit quam Messēnē restitūtā urbem eōrum

praefiniō, 4, prescribe.
oboedīō, 4, obey.
īnscīribō; cf. scribō.

aspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum;
cf. perspicīō.
salvus, -a, -um, safe.

1. = esset.
2. Sc. esse: had been passed.
3. apply.
4. instrumentality.
5. offer a defense.
6. as a charge.

7. ante sē imperātōrem: before he was general.
8. in libertātem vendicāvit: set free.
9. eō ... perdūxit: so managed the fortunes of both.
obsidio ne clausit." Haec cum dixisset, risus omnium cum hilaritati coortus est, neque quisquam iudex ausus est de e o ferre suffragium. Sic a iudicio\textsuperscript{1} capitis maximae discissit gloriae.

His death.

5 9. Hic extrinem\textsuperscript{2} tempore imperator apud Mantinea, cum acie instricta audacius instaret hostibus, cognitus a Lacedaemoniis, quod in unius\textsuperscript{3} pernicie eius patriae sitam\textsuperscript{4} putabant salutem, universi in\textsuperscript{5} unum impetum fecerunt, neque prius abscesserunt quam magnae caede factae, multisque occisae, fortissimae ipsum Epaminondam pugnantem, sparoe e minus percussum,\textsuperscript{6} concidere videreunt. Huius casu aliquantum retardati sunt Boeotiae, neque tamen prius pugna excesserunt quam repugnantes\textsuperscript{7} profligarent. At Epaminondas, cum animadverteret mortiferum se vulner accepisse, simulque si ferrum, quod ex hastili in corpore remanerat, extraxisset, animam statim emissurum,\textsuperscript{8} usque\textsuperscript{9} eo retinuit,\textsuperscript{10} quoad renuntiatum est vicisse Boeotiae. Id postquam audivit, "satis," inquit, "vixi; invictus enim morior." Tum ferr\textsuperscript{o} extracto confestim examinatus est.

risus, -us, m., laughter.
 hilaritas, hilaritatis, f., gayety.
iudex, iudicis, m., judge.
 abscedo; cf. cedo.
sparus, -i, m., small spear.
 eminus, from a distance.

aliquantum, somewhat.
 retardo, i, keep back.
mortiferus, -a, -um; cf. mors + ferre.
hastile, hastilis, m., spear shaft.
 extraho; cf. traho.

\begin{tabular}{ll}
1. iudicio capitis & trial for \\
his life. & 2. extrimum tempore: \at last. \\
2. & 3. unius eius: \of this one \\
man. & 4. depended on. \\
4. & 5. in unum: sc. Epaminondam.
\end{tabular}
Anecdotes. The decline of Thebes after his death.

10. Hic uxōrem numquam dūxit. In 1 quō cum reprehenderētur (quod liberōs nōn relinquueret) ā Pelopīdā, qui filiōm habēbat īnāmēm, maleque 2 eum in 3 eō patriae cōnsulere diceret, 4 "vidē," inquit, "nē tū 5 peius cōnsulās, quī tālem ex tē nātum relictūrus sis. Neque vērō stirps potest mihi deesse; namque ex 6 mē nātam relinquō pugnam Leuctricam, quae nōn modo mihi superstes, sed etiam immortālis sit necesse est." Quō 8 tempore, duce Pelopīdā, exsulēs Thēbās occupārunt 10 et praesidium Lacedaemoniōrum ex arce expulērunt, Epaminōndās, quamdiū 7 facta est caedes civium, domō sē tenuit quod neque malōs 8 dēfendere volēbat neque impugnāre, nē manūs suōrum 9 sanguine cruēnāret; namque omnem civīlem 10 victoriam fūnestam putābat. 15 Īdem, postquam apud Cadmēam cum Lacedaemoniīs pugnāri coeptum est, in 11 prīmis stetit.

Huius dē virtūtibus vitāque satis erit dictum, si hoc ūnum adiūnxerō, quod nēmō ibit īnftiās, Thēbās 12 et ante Epaminōndam nātum et post eiusdem interītum perpetuō 13 aliēnō pāruisse imperiō; contrā ea, quam diū

infāmis, -e, disreputable.
1stirps, stirpis, f., stock, progeny.
superstes, superstīsis, surviving.
exsul, exsulis, m., exile.
cruentō, i, stain.
fūnestus, -a, -um, fatal, disastrous.

īnftiās, acc. only; with ire, deny.

1. in quō: on this point.
2. male cōnsulere: had no proper regard for.
3. in eō: in this matter.
5. ex mē nātam: as my daughter.
6. quō tempore: at the time when.
7. quamdiū: as long as.
8. traitors.
9. of his fellow citizens.
10. over his fellow citizens.
11. in prīmis: among the first.
12. Subject of pāruisse and fuisse.
ille praefuerit reii publicae, caput fuisset totius Graeciae. Ex quod intellegi potest unum hominem pluirsquam civitate fuisse.

V. HANNIBAL

247-183

Hannibal's greatness as a general. His hatred of the Romans.

1. HANNIBAL, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis. Si 5 vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est inftiantum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prudentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitūdine cūncēs nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque cum eō progressus est in Italīā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse.4 Sed multōrum obtrēctātiō dēvīcit ūnius virtūtem.

Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odio paternum 15 ergā Rōmānōs sic conservāvit, ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit; quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānis.

infītior, i, deny. quotiēscumque, as often as. dēbilitō, i, weaken. obtrēctātiō, obtrēctātiōnis, f., jealousy.

odium, -i, n., hatred, grudge, animosity.
paternus, -a, -um, of a father; here, his father's.

ergā, towards.

1. of more consequence. 5. velut hērēditāte: by inheritance, as it were.
2. i.e. populu Rōmānō. 6. i.e. odium.
3. quod nisi: unless then.
4. would have been able. 7. needed.
2. Nam ut 1 omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit 3 bellandī, ut usque ā rubrō mari arma cōnāitus sit īnferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, qui dē eius voluntāte explōrārent darentque 3 operam cōnsiliis clandestīnīs, ut Hannibal in suspicīōnem rēgī 4 ad- dūcerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptus alia 6 atque anteā sentīret, neque id frŭstrā fēcissent, idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliīs sē- 15 gregārī vidisset, tempore 4 datō adīt ad rēgem, eique cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hoc adīnxit. "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, 7 in His- pāniam imperātor proficiscēns Karthāgīne, Iōvī optimō 20 maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs dum cōnfi- ciēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere 8 coeipissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit,

ruber, rubra, rubrum, red.  sēgregō, 1, separate, exclude.
clandestīnus, -a, -um, hidden.  puerulus, -ī, m., little boy.
estīret.  utpote, namely, as being.
tamquam, as if.  hostia, -ae, f., victim.

1. ut omittam: to omit.  felt differently than before.
3. darent operam: try.  7. Agrees with mē.
4. in the king's eyes.  8. petere nē dubitāret: beg
5. alia atque anteā sentīret: him not to hesitate.
'si mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre īnstituerat, eamque cēteris remōtīs tenentem iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in amicitā cum Rōmānis fore. Id ego īusiūrandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī, ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānis cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum fruāstrāberis sī nōn mē in cō principem posueris.

His campaign in Spain, and his advance over the Alps into Italy.

3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātuī omni praeĀuit. Hoc quoque interfecētō, exercitus summam imperii ad eum dēstulit. Id Karthāginēm dēlātum pūblicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vigintī annīs nātus imperātor factus proximō triennīō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit; Saguntum, foederātum civitātem, vi expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex his ānum in Africam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispānīa reliquit, tertium in Ítaliam sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pyrēnaeum trānsīvit. Quācumque iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs cōnflīxīt; nēminem nisi victum

āra, -ae, f., altar.
sacrificō, 1, sacrifice.
amīcē, adv.; cf. amīcus.
imprūdenter; cf. in (not) + prū-
dentia.
fruāstrō, 1, deceive, disappoint,
trick.
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, ap-
point instead.
comprobō, 1, approve.
trιennium, -i, n.; cf. trēs + annus.
foederātus, -a, -um, allied.
quīcumque, quae cumque, quod-
cumque, whoever, whatever.

1. from me.
2. i.e. his appointment.
3. subdued.
4. mountain range.
dimísit. Ad Alpês postec quàm vénit, quae Ítalion ab Gallíâ séiungunt, quás némô umquam cum exercitiú ante eum praeter Herculem Gráium tránsierat (quó factó is hodíē saltus Gráius appellávit), Alpicós cónantés prohi-
bère tránsitú concidit, loca patefécit, itinera múniit,\(^1\) effécit ut eá\(^2\) elefantus órnátus\(^3\) ire posset, quá anteá únus homó inermis vix poterat répere. Hác cópiás tráđúxit in Ítalianque pervénit.

\textit{Hís victóriés in Italy.}

4. Cônsìxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornélió Scipióné cónsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hóc éodem Clastidíi\(^4\) apud Padum décernit sauciumque inde ac fugátum dimitit. Tertió idem Scipió cum cóllégá Ti-
berió Longó apud Trebiam adversus eum vénit. Cum iús manum cónseruit; utrósque próflígávit. Inde per Ligurés
15 Appennínnum tránsiit, petēns Etrúriam. Hóc itinere
adeó grávi morbó adficitur oculórum, ut posteá numquam
dextró aequé bene úsus sit. Quá valétúdine cum etiam-
tum premerētur lectícaque ferrētur, C. Fláminium cón-
sulem apud Trasumennum cum exercitiú insidiís circum-
ventum occidit, neque multó post C. Centéniúm prae-
tórem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in
Ápuliam pervénit. Ibi obviam\(^5\) eī vēnērunt duo cón-
sulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Útrúsque exerci-
tús únó proelió fugāvīt, Paulum cónsulem occidit e

---

\(1\) séiungō, -ere, -iünxī, -iünctum, separate.  
\(2\) tránsitus, -ús; cf. eō.  
\(3\) répō, -ere, répsī, réptum, creep.  
\(4\) cónserō, -ere, -serūi, -sertum, join with manum, join battle.  
\(5\) lectíca, -ae, f., couch, sedan.

---

1. built.  
2. eā . . . quà: there . . .  
3. with its load.  
4. Locative.  
5. to meet.
aliquot praetereā cōnsulārēs, in ēs Cn. Serviālīm Geminum, quī superiore annō fuerat cōnsul.

He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals.


iuvencus, -i, m., bullock.
dispensālor, 1, wander about.
visūs, -ūs, m., sight.

magister, magistrī, m., master,
commander.
quīnquiēs, five times.

1. several.
2. Objective gen. with dētrīmentō.
3. dedit verba: deceived.
4. obductā nocte: under the cover of night.
5. twigs.
7. ac dictātōrem: to that of dictator.
8. in Lūcānīs modifies sustulit.
9. though not in command personally.
Ítaliā fuit, nēmō ei in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem pugnam in campō castra posuit.

He retires from Italy and is defeated by Scipio at Zama.


As chief magistrate, he manages home affairs well, but finally flees to Antiochus.

7. Cum in apparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Kar-thāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercitūi posteā praefuit rēsque in Africā gessit itemque Māgo frāter eius usque ad P. Sulpicium. C. Aurēlium cōnsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī senātūi populōque

| impraesentiārum, for the present. | insidior, 1, lie in wait for. |
| compŏnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, | dēlēctus, -ūs, m.; cf. dēligō. |
| settle, end. | apparō, 1, preparē. |

1. field.  
2. Supine.  
3. drained.  
4. were agreed upon.  
5. to the time of.  
6. his magistrātibus: abl. abs-

foedus, foederis, n., treaty.  publicō, i, confiscate.
aerarium, -i, n., treasury.  fundamentum, -i, n., foundation, groundwork.
repōnō; cf. pōnō.

1. golden.
2. at Fregellae.
3. quod Hannibalem, etc.: because they even then kept
Hannibal . . . in command of
the army.
4. as.
5. in accordance with.
6. hearing before the senate.
7. palam factā = nūntiātā.

**excieō (or excīō), -ēre (-īre), -cīvī (-ī), -citum (-citum), call out, summon.**

**vēlum, -i, n., sail.**

**servulus, -i, m., a little slave, slave.**

1. (to see) if.
2. Antiochī . . . fidūciāque: because of the faith and hope (they had) in Antiochus.
3. they could be drawn into.
4. i.e. Hannibal and Mago.
5. Cf. nāvis + frangō.
6. scriptum reliquērunt: have a record to the effect that.
7. i.e. Hannibalīs.
8. quam . . . instituerat: he had done in beginning it.
9. Dat. with propius.
10. i.e. Antiochus.
11. foolishly.
13. Concessive.
14. his forces.
He goes to Crete and there saves his money by a ruse.


cōnsiderō, 1, look at carefully, consider.  
apherō, -ire, -perī, -pertum, cover.  
amphora, -ae, f., a two-handled jar.  
aēneus, -a, -um, bronze.  
prōpatulum, -i, n., courtyard.

1. sī . . . potestātem: if he had given them a chance at him.  
2. nisi . . . prōvidisset: unless he should take some precau-
tion.  
3. lead.  
5. As though they were of no value.
10. Sic conservatís suis rēbus Poenus, illúsīs Crētēnsi-
bus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervénit. Apud quem ēōdēm animō fuit ergā Ītaliam, neque aliud quic-
quam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus
Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus
esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat
bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō² Pergamēnus rēx
Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amicissimus, bellumque inter eōs
gerēbātur et mari et terrā; quo magis cupiēbat eum
Hannibal opprimi. Sed utrobiqve Eumenēs plūs valēbat,
propter Rōmānōrum societātem: quem si remōvisset,
faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc inter-
erant³ dēcrētūri. Superābātur nāvium multitudine;
dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Im-
perāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vivās colligī
cāsque in vāsa fictilia conici. Hārum cum effēcisset
magnum multitūdinem, diē ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvāle
proelium, classiāriōs convocat iisque praecipit, omnēs ut
in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tan-
tum satis⁴ habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpent-
tium multitūdine cōnsecūtūrōs. Rēx autēm in quā nāve

illéō, -ere, -läsi, -läsum, deceive.
robustus, -a, -um, powerful.
dissideō, -ère, -sēđi, -sēssum, differ.
utothroque, on both sides; here,
on land and sea.
vēnēnātus, -a, -um, filled with poison, poisonous.
erpēns, serpentis, f., snake.
vās, vāsis, n., plu. vāsa, vāsōr
fictilis, -e, earthen.

1. not very.
2. i.e. Prūsias.
3. sunt dēcrētūri: they were going to fight.
4. satis habeant: shoul
veherētur ut\textsuperscript{1} scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iis pollicētur praemiō fore.

By this strategy, he defeats Eumenes.

\textbf{11. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrīisque in proelium dēducitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūtā, priusquam sīgnum pugnāe darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs, quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellāriōn in scaphā\textsuperscript{2} cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus\textsuperscript{3} est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quin aliquīd dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius ducīs nāve dēclarātā suīs,\textsuperscript{4} eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā\textsuperscript{5} epistulā nihil in eā repperit, nisi quae ad irīdendum eum pertinērent. Cuius etsī causam mīrābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithyniī Hannibalīs praeceptō\textsuperscript{6} ūniversī nāvem Eumenīs adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit; quam\textsuperscript{7} cōnsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā suā praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proxi-mō litore erant collocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta

\begin{tabular}{l}
\textbf{tabellārius,} -ī, m., messenger, & \textbf{cādūceōs,} -ī, m., herald's staff, & \\
\textbf{herald.} & \textbf{the token of a peace envoy.} & \\
\textbf{1. ut . . . factūrum:} he would & \textbf{5. opened.} & \\
\textbf{see to it that they should know.} & \textbf{6. in accordance with the command.} & \\
\textbf{2. small boat.} & \textbf{7. quam . . . esset:} he would & \\
\textbf{3. professus est:} stated. & \textbf{not have reached safety.} & \\
\textbf{4. to his own men.} & & \\
\end{tabular}
sunt. Quae\textsuperscript{1} iacta initiō risum pugnantibus concitārunt, neque quārē id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem nāvēs suas opplētās cōnspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterrīti cum quid\textsuperscript{2} potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica retulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiis pari prūdentīā pepulit adversāriōs.

\textit{His death by poison.}

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgāti Prūsiae Rōmae apud\textsuperscript{3} T. Quintium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibile mentiōne factā ex iis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātui dētulit. Patrēs\textsuperscript{4} cōnscriptī, qui Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiās futūrōs exísti-mārent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam mīsērunt, in iis Flāminīnum, qui ab rēge ptererent nē\textsuperscript{6} inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique\textsuperscript{6} dēderet.\textsuperscript{7} Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud\textsuperscript{8} recūsāvit, nē id sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitii esset; ipsi, si possent, com-prehenderent;\textsuperscript{9} locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō, quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat ut in

\begin{tabular}{ll}
1. \textit{quae iacta:} & the throwing of these. \\
2. quid & what \\
3. at the house of. \\
4. patrēs cōnscriptī & senators. \\
5. nē & that he should not keep their greatest \\
6. -que: & but. \\
7. Sc. ut. \\
8. illud recūsāvit nē, etc.: & but he did object to this that \\
\end{tabular}
omnia partibus aedificii exitus habēret, scilicet verēns nē ēus veniret quod accidit. Huc cum légāti Rōmānorum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Qui imperāvit ei ut omnēs forēs aedificii circumiret, ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāset omnēsque exitūs occupātūs ostendīset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memori pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quōd semper sēcum ha-bēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

His historians and his own writings.


iānuā, -ae, f., door. form.
foris, foris, f., door. adquīēscō, -ere, -quīēvi, -quīētum,
memor, memoris, mindful. go to rest, die.
perfūngor, -ī, -fūntus sum, per-
annālia, annāliā, m., record.

1. evidently.
2. nē ... veniēret: lest that
3. appeared.
4. = celeriter.
5. whether.
6. neque retinendam: could
not be preserved.
7. i.e. vitam.
8. poison.
9. quibus ... interiērit: indirect question.
10. nōn convent: it is not agreed.
11. mortuum (esse): sc.
eum; depends on scriptum reli-
quit.
12. and yet.
hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nōnnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius libri sunt, Graecō sermōne confecti, in iis ad\(^1\) Rhodiōs dē\(^2\) Cn. Manliī Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Huius\(^3\) belli\(^4\) gesta 5 multitā memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex his duo\(^5\) quī cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vixērunt, quamdiū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum usus est doctōre.

Sed nōs\(^6\) tempus est huius libri facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius collātīs utrōrumque\(^7\) factīs, qui virī praeferendi sint, possit iūdicāri.

VI. CATO

234–149

Cato’s life up to his consulship.

1. M. Catō, ortus municipīō Tusculō, adulēscentulus, priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est\(^8\) in Sabīnīs, quod ibi hērēdium ā patre relictum habēbat. Inde hortātū\(^9\) L. Valerī Flacci, quem in cōnsulātū cēnsūrāque habuit collēgām, ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre
distringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, draw apart, engage.
liber, librī, m., book.
doctor, doctōris, m.; cf. doceō.
municipium, -ī, n., a free town, i.e. with its own laws.
adulēscentulus, -ī, m., a very young man.
hērēdium, -ī, n., an inherited estate.
cēnsūra, -ae, f., censorship.
cēnsōrius, -ī, m., ex-consul.

---

1. ad Rhodiōs: i.e. liber ad Rhodiōs.
2. Governs rēbus gestīs.
3. i.e. Hannibal.
4. belli gesta: deeds of war.
5. Sc. sunt.
6. nōs facere finem: for me to make an end.
7. i.e. Roman and Greek generals.
8. versātus est = vixit.
9. at the suggestion.
solitus est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in forōque esse coepit. Primum stipendium¹ meruit annōrum decem septemque. Q. Fabiō M. Claudiō cōnsulibus tribūnus militum in Siciliā fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudi 5 Nerōnis, magnīque opera eius existimāta est in proeliō apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor obtigit P. Āfricānō cōnsulī, cum quō nōn prō² sortis necessitūdine vīxit; namque ab eō perpetūā dissēnsit vītā. Aedīlis plēbī³ factus est cum C. Helviō. 10 Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiore tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns Q. Ennium poē- tam dēdūxerat, quod nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēnsem triumphum.

*His consulship and censorship. His sternness.*

2. Cōnsulātum gessit cum L. Valerīō Flaccō; sorte prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem, exque eā triumphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō Āfricānus cōnsul iterum, cuius in priōri cōnsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere, neque hoc per senātum efficere potuit, cum⁴ quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā,⁵ sed iūre rēs pūblīca administrā- bātur. Quā ex rē rātus senātiū, cōnsulātū perāctō pri- vātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō, cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, severē praefuit eī potestātī. Nam et in

obtingō, -ere, -tīgī, —, fall to the lot of.
asedīlia, aedīlis, m., aedile.
poēta, -ae, m., poet.

quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet any.
sevērē, strictly, with sternness, rigorously.

1. stipendium meruit: served of this assignment.
a campaign.
2. prō sortis necessitūdine: in accordance with the usual terms
3. Genitive.
5. personal influence.
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND ... complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit, et multās rēs novās in ēdictum addidit, quā rē lūxuria reprimerētur, quae iam tum incipiēbat pullulāre. Circiter annōs octōgintā, usque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulēscentiā, rei pūblicae causā suspicere inimiciitiās nōn dēstitit. Ā multis tentā\textsuperscript{1} nōn modo nūllum dētrimentum existimātiōnis fēcit,\textsuperscript{4} sed, quoad vīxit, virtūtum laude crēvit.

\textit{His versatility. His writings.}

3. In omnibus rēbus singulāri fuit industriā; nam et agricola sollers et perītus iūris cōnsultus et magnus im- perātor et probābilis ōrātor et cupidissimus litterārum fuit. Quārum studium etsi senior arrippuerat,\textsuperscript{5} tamen tantum prōgressum fēcit ut nōn facile reperiērī possit, neque dē Graecis neque dē Ītalicīs rēbus, quod ei fuerit incōgnitum. Ab adulēscentiā cōnfēcit ōrātiōnēs. Senex historiās scribere instituit. Eārum sunt librī septem. Primus continet rēs gestās rēgum populī Rōmānī, se- condus et tertius unde quaeque civitās orta sit Ītica, ob quam rem omnēs Originēs vidētur appellāsse. In quārtō autem bellum Poenicum est primum, in quīntō secundum; atque haec omnia capitulātim sunt dicta. Reliqua quoque bella pari modō persecūtus est usque ad praetūram Servi Galbae, qui dīripuit Lūsitānōs; atque hōrum bellōrum dūcēs nōn nōmināvit, sed sine nōmini- bus rēs notāvit.\textsuperscript{6} In īisdem exposuit quae in Ītaliā Īspāniīisque aut fierent aut vidērentur admirānda; in

\begin{tabular}{ll}
pullūlō, i, & increase.\
agricola, -ae, m., & farmer.\
sollers, sollertis, & expert.\
iūris cōnsultus, -i, m., & lawyer.\
probābilis, -e, & pleasing.\
capitulātim, & briefly.\
\end{tabular}

\textbf{1.} proclamation. \\
\textbf{2.} attacked. \\
\textbf{3.} reputation. \\
\textbf{4.} sustained. \\
\textbf{5.} had taken up. \\
\textbf{6.} set down.
quibus multa industria et diligentia comparét, nūlla doctrina.

Huius dē vitā et mōribus plūra in eō librō persecūtī sumus, quem sēparātim dē eō fēcimus rogātū T. Pom-pōnī Attici. Quārerē studiōsōs Catōnis ad illud volūmen dēlēgāmus.

1. are found. 2. those interested.
WORD FORMATION

Many Latin words are made up from other words:

A. By appending certain endings;
B. By joining one word to another.

A. BY APPENDING CERTAIN ENDINGS

1. Nouns derived from verb stems by adding:
   a. -tor (-sor), denoting agency; as vic (vincō, conquer) + -tor (denoting agent) = victor, one who conquers, conqueror.
   b. -tiō (-siō) and -tus (-sus), gen. -tūs, denoting an action going on; as, profec (proficiscor, start out) + -tiō (denoting action) = profectiō, a starting out, departure; and as, adven (adveniō, approach) + -tus (denoting action) = adventus, coming, arrival.

2. Nouns derived from nouns and adjectives by adding:
   -ia, -itia, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, denoting abstract quality; as,
      audāc (audāx, bold) + -ia (denoting quality) = audācia, boldness.
      amīc (amicus, friendly) + -itia (denoting quality) = amīcitia, friendship.
      liber (liber, free) + -tās (denoting quality) = libertās, freedom.
      vir (vir, man) + -tūs (denoting quality) = virtūs, manliness, courage.
      magn(i) (magnus, great) + -tūdō (denoting quality) = magnitūdō, greatness.

B. BY JOINING ONE WORD WITH ANOTHER

1. Words with prefixes which have a meaning of their own:
   ā, ab, abs, away, from; as, ā-mittō, send away.
   ad (ac, ā, ap, at), to, toward, at, on, near; as, ad-dūcō, lead toward.
   ante, before; as, ante-ferō, carry before, prefer.
   circum, around; as, circum-dūcō, lead or carry around.

221
cum (com, con, col, co), together, with; as, com-portō, bring together: completely, thoroughly; as, com-moveō, move thoroughly.

dē, from; as, dē-cēdō, go away from.

ē, ex (ef), out from, forth: as, ē-dūcō, lead forth: completely; as, ef-ficiō, do completely.

in (im, ir, il), in, into, at, on, against; as, in-colō, live in; in-ferō, bring against.

inter, between; as, inter-pōnō, put between.

ob (o, obs, oc, of, og, op), against; as, oc-currō, run against.

per, through; as, per-dūcō, lead through: thoroughly; as, per-terreō, frighten thoroughly.

praē, in front of; as, praē-ficiō, place at the head of.

prō (prōd), forth, before; as, prō-cēdō, go forth.

sub (su, subs, suc, suf, sup), under, down; as, sub-eō, go under.

trāns (trān, trā), across; as, trā-dūcō, lead across.

2. Words with prefixes which have not an independent meaning:

dis (dī, dif, dir), apart, between; as, dī-mittō, send apart.

red (re), back, again; as, re-mittō, send back.

3. Nouns and adjectives with prefixes which have not an independent meaning:

in, not, un-: as, in-crēdibilis, unbelievable.

Frequentative or Intensive Verbs denote repeated or earnest action. They are formed by adding -tō (-sō) to supine stems; as, iac (iacio, throw) + -tō (denoting repetition) = iactō, throw often.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

A., abb. for Aulus, a Roman given name.
Acarnāna, -ae, f., a woman of Acarnania.
Acarnānia, -ae, f., a province of Greece.
Achāia, -ae, f., a Roman province in Greece.
Achillās, -ae, m., one of Pompey's murderers.
Adbucillus, -i, m., an Allobrogian.
Admētus, -i, m., a king of the Molossians in Epirus.
Aduatuca, -ae, f., a stronghold of the Eburones.
Aduatući, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians in northern Gaul, originally German.
Aeduus, -a, -um, Aeduans; as a subs. Aeduus, -i, m., generally plu., the Aeduans, a tribe in central Gaul, allies of Rome.
Aeginium, -ni, n., a stronghold in Epirus.
Aegyptius, -a, -um, Egyptian.
Aegyptus, -i, f., Egypt, a country in northern Africa.
Aemilius, -ii, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. See Paulus. 2. Lucius Aemilius, an officer in Caesar's cavalry.
Aeolis, Aeolidis, f., a country in Asia Minor.
Aetōlia, -ae, f., a province of Greece.
Afrānius, -nī, m., a lieutenant of Pompey.
Āfrica, -ae, f., the continent of Africa.
Āfricānus, -i, m., a title.
Agamemnōn, Agamemnonis, m., a king of Mycenae.
Alcmaēn, Alcmaeonis, m., a Greek.
Alesia, -ae, f., a town in eastern Gaul.
Alexandria, -ae, f., Alexandria, the capital of Egypt.
Allobroχ, Allobrogis, m., generally plu., the Allobroges, a tribe of southwestern Gaul.
Alpēs, Alpium, f., the Alps, mountains in Europe.
Alpīcī, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of the Alps.
Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul, clients of the Aedui.
Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul
Ambibarī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
Ambiorīx, Ambiorīgis, m., a king of the Eburones.
Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Amphiopolis, Amphiopolis, f., a city in Thrace.
Amphius, -pi, m., Titus Amphius, a follower of Pompey.
Anartēs, Anartium, m., a German tribe.
Andebrogius, -gi, m., an ambassador of the Remi.

223
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Andès, Andium, m., a tribe of western Gaul.
Androstenès, Androthenis, m., a governor of Thessaly.
Antiochēnès, -ium, m., inhabitants of Antioch.
Antiochia, -ae, f., the capital of Syria.
Antiochus, -i, m., a king of Syria.
Antistius, -i, m., Gaius Antistius Reginus, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Antōnius, -ni, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. Marcus Antonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. 2. Gaius Antonius, brother of the above.
Apollō, -inis, m., god of prophecy.
Apollōnia, -ae, f., a city in Macedonia.
Apollōniātēs, -ium, m., the inhabitants of Appollonia.
Appennīnus, -i, m., the Apennines, mountains in Italy.
Apsus, -i, m., a river of Macedonia.
Āpulia, -ae, f., a country in southeastern Italy.
Aquīleia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul.
Aquītānia, -ae, f., a country in southwestern Gaul.
Aquītānus, -a, -um, Aquitanian; generally plu., the Aquitaniāns.
Arar, Araris, m., a river of eastern Gaul; the modern Sabne.
Arcas, Arcadis, Arcadian.
Aremoricus, -a, -um, Aremoricān, applied to the seacoast states of northwestern Gaul.
Argī, -orum (Argōs, -eos), m., the capital of Argolis, in the Peloponnesus.
Argivus, -a, -um, belonging to Argos.
Ariovistus, -i, m., a king of the Germans.
Arpinēius, -ēī, m., Gaius Arpinetus, a follower of Caesar.
Arṭaphermēs, -is, m., a commander of the Persians at Marathon.
Artaxerxēs, -is, m., king of Persia.
Artemisinium, -sī, n., a promontory on the northeastern coast of Euboea.
Arvernum, -a, -um, Arvernian, generally plu., a tribe of central Gaul; rivals of the Aedui.
Asia, -ae, f. 1. Asia, the continent. 2. Asia Minor.
Asiāticus, -a, -um, Asiatic.
Asparāgium, -gī, n., a town in Illyricum.
Athēnaiēs, -ārum, f., the capital of Attica.
Athēnēnēsia, -is, Athenian; generally masc. plu., the Athenians.
Atrebās, Atrebātis, m., Atrebatian; generally plu., the Atrebatisnas, a tribe of northern Gaul.
Attica, -ae, f., a country of Greece.
Attīcī, -um, belonging to Attica.
Atticus, ī, m., Titus Pomponius Atticus, friend of Nepos and Cicero.
Aulerći, -ōrum, m., a strong tribe of central Gaul, divided into four branches.
Aurelius, -iī, m., C. Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul.
Aurunculēius, -ēī, m., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Auscī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Avaricum, -i, m., a stronghold of the Bituriges.
Axona, -ae, m., a river of northern Gaul; the modern Aisne.

Baculus, -i, m., Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion.
Baebius, -bi, m., see Tamphilus.
Balbus, -i, m., the name of a Roman family. Lucius Cornelius Balbus, a friend of Atticus.
Baleáris, -e, belonging to the Balearic Islands, off the eastern coast of Spain.
Balventius, -ti, m., Titus Balventius, one of Caesar's centurions.
Basilus, -i, m., Lucius Minucius Basilus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
Belgae, -árum, m., the Belgians, a people in northeastern Gaul, occupying one of the three parts into which Gaul was divided.
Belgium, -gí, n., the country of the Belgians in northeastern Gaul.
Bellovaci, -órum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgians in northern Gaul.
Bibracte, -is, n., a town in eastern Gaul, chief city of the Aedui.
Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi in northern Gaul.
Bigerríones, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.
Bithýnia, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor.
Bithynii, -órum, m., the inhabitants of Bithynia.
Bituriges, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Blithó, -onis, m., Sulpicius Blitho, a Roman historian.
Boduógnátus, -i, m., a leader of the Nervii.
Boeótus, -a, -um, Boeotian, of Boeotia, a province of central Greece; generally as a subs., masc. plu., the Boeotians.
Boii, -órum, m., a tribe in central Gaul; a nomadic people, who fought with the Helvetians against Caesar, and were placed by him among the Aedui.
Brannovicès, -um, m., a branch of the Aulerci.
Brátusplantium, -ti, n., a town of the Bellovaci in northern Gaul.
BritANNí, -órum, m., the inhabitants of Britain.
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.
Brundisium, -si, n., a town in southeastern Italy.
Brütus, -i, m., the name of a Roman family. Junius Brutus, one of Caesar's officers.

C., abb. for Gaius (Caius), a Roman given name.
Cabúrus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Cabúrus, a Gaul who had been presented with Roman citizenship.
Cadméa, -ae, f., the citadel of Thebes.
Cadúrici, -órum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.
Caemáni, -órum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.
Caerósi, -órum, m., a Belgic tribe in northeastern Gaul.
Caesar, Caesaries, m., a Roman family name of the Julian gens. Gaius

Julius Caesar, general, writer, and statesman.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Calēnus, -ī, m., a Roman family name, see Fūlius.
Calēti, -ōrum (Caletēs, -um), m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
Calliās, -ae, m., an Athenian.
Calliphrōn, -ōnis, m., a teacher of dancing.
Callistratus, -ī, m., an Athenian orator.
Candāvia, -ae, f., a district in Macedonia.
Canīnius, -nī, m. See Rebilus.
Cannēnais, -e, belonging to Canna, a town in Apulia.
Cantabrī, -ōrum, m., a warlike tribe in the north of Spain.
Cantium, -tī, n., a district in southeastern Britain.
Canulēius, -ēī, m., the name of a Roman family. Lucius Canuleius, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Capua, -ae, f., a city of Campania.
Car, Cāris, m., an inhabitant of Caria.
Cāria, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor.
Carnutēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Cassiānus, -a, -um, of Cassius.
Cassius, -siī, m., the name of a Roman gens. Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul, B.C. 107; killed in battle with the Tigurini.
Casticus, -ī, m., a prominent Sequanian.
Catamantaloédis, -is, m., a chieftain of the Sequaniens.
Catō, Catōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. Marcus Cato, the censor.
Caturīgēs, -um, m., a tribe of the western Alps.
Catuvolcus, -i, m., a chieftain of the Eburones.
Cavillōnūm, -i, n., a town of the Aedui.
Coltae, -ārum, m., the people in central Gaul, occupying the largest of the three divisions of Gaul.
Cēnomanī, -ōrum, m., a branch of the Aulerci.
Centēnius, -nī, m., a Roman general.
Cēthēgus, -ī, m., Publius Cornelius Cethegus, consul, B.C. 181.
Cētronēs, -um, m. 1. A tribe of the western Alps. 2. A Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
Chabrīās, -ae, m., an Athenian general.
Chersonēsus, -ī, m., a peninsula of Thrace.
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the famous orator; a lieutenant of Caesar.
Cilicia, -ae, f., a district in southeastern Asia Minor.
Ciliciōnīs, -e, Cilician.
Cimberius, -rī, m., a chieftain of the Suebi.
Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany; invaded southern Europe, and were defeated by Marius.
Cimōn, -ōnis, m. 1. The father of Miltiades. 2. An Athenian general.
Citium, -tī, n., a town on the coast of Cyprus.
Clastidium, -dī, n., a stronghold of Cisalpine Gaul.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Claudius, -dī, m., the name of a Roman patrician gens. 1. See Nerō. 2 & 3. See Mārcellus. 4. Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul, b.C. 54.

Cleopatra, -ae, f., a queen of Egypt.

Clōdius, -dī, m., the name of a Roman plebeian gens. 1. Aulus Clodius, a follower of Caesar. 2. Publius Clodius Pulcher, murdered by Milo, b.C. 52.

Cn., abb. for Gnaeus (Cnaeus), a Roman given name.

Cocosātēs, -um, m., a people of Aquitania.

Colōnai, -ārum, f., a town in Asia Minor.

Commius, -mi, m., a chieftain of the Atrebates.

Condresī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.

Considius, -dī, m., the name of a Roman gens. Publius Considius, an officer of Caesar.

Cōpōnius, -ni, m., the name of a Roman gens. Gaius Coponius, a commander of Pompey’s fleet.

Corcēyra, -ae, f., an island off Epirus.

Corcēyraeus, -a, -um, Corcyrean.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

Cornēlius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. Lucius Cornelius, consul, b.C. 193. 2, 3, 4, 5. See Balbus, Cethēgus, Lentulus, Scipio.

Cotta, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family; see Aurunculēius and Aurēlius.

Crassus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. Marcus Licinius Crassus, consul; father both of 2. Marcus Licinius Crassus, a quaestor of Caesar; and of 3. Publius Licinius Crassus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Crāstinius, -ī, m., a veteran in Caesar’s army.

Crēta, -ae, f., Crete, an island in the Mediterranean.

Crētēnsēs, -ium, m., inhabitants of Crete.

Crētēs, -um, m., inhabitants of Crete.

Criticāntūs, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Arverni.

Cyclades, -um, f., group of islands in the Aegean Sea.

Cyprus, -a, -um, of Cyprus, Cyprian.

Cyprus, -ī, f., an island in the eastern Mediterranean.

Cyrēnai, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Cyrene, a city in northern Africa.

Cyzicēnus, -a, -um, of Cyzicus, a city in Asia Minor.

D., abb. for Decimus, a Roman given name.

Dāći, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.

Dāmōn, -ōnis, m., an Athenian poet and musician.

Dānuvius, -vī, m., the Danube.

Dārīus, -rī, m., a king of the Persians.

Dātis, Dātīdis, m., a Persian general.

Delphī, -ōrum, m., a town in Phocis.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Dēmētrius, -rī, m., *Demetrius* of Phalereum, a famous Greek orator and statesman.

Diāna, -ae, f., the goddess of hunting.

Diomedēn, -ontis, m., an inhabitant of Cyzicus.

Dionyśius, -sī, m., a Theban musician.

Dis, Dītis, m., *Pluto*, the god of the lower world.

Dīviciācus, -ī, m. 1. A chieftain of the Aedui, and friend of Caesar. 2. A chieftain of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetii.

Dolope, -um, m., *the Dolopians*, a people of Thessaly.

Domitius, -tī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul, B.C. 54, an officer of Pompey. 2. Gnaeus Domitius Calvinus, an officer of Caesar.

Dubis, -is, m., a river in eastern Gaul, branch of the Arar.

Dumnorix, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Aedui, brother of Diviciacus.

Dyrhrachius, -a, -um, of *Dyrrhachium*.

Dyrrhachium, -chī, n., a town of Illyricum.

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

Eburovicēs, -um, m., a branch of the Aulerici.

Egus, -i, m., an Allobrogan.

Eleutētī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.

Elis, Elīdis, f., a city in the Peloponnesus.

Elpinicē, -ēs, f., half sister of Cimon.

Elusātēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Ennius, -nī, m., one of the first Roman poets.

Epaminondās, -ae, m., a famous Theban general.

Ephēsus, -a, -um, of Ephesus.

Ephesus, -i, f., a town of Ionia in Asia Minor.

Ēpirus, -i, f., a country in western Greece.

Eperēdorix, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Aedui.

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., a Greek geographer.

Eretria, -ae, f., a city in Euboea.

Esvii, -ōrum, m., a tribe in northwestern Gaul.

Etvāria, -ae, f., a country on the west coast of Italy.

Euboea, -ae, f., an island off the east coast of Greece.

Eumēnēs, -is, m., a king of Pergamum.

Europā, -ae, f., the continent of *Europe*.

Eurybiadēs, -is, m., a Spartan general.

Fabius, -bī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus (Cunctator); consul, B.C. 214, opponent of Hannibal. Han. 5. 2. Quintus Fabius Labeo, consul, B.C. 183. Han. 13. 3. Gaius Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. B. G., V. 24.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Falernus, -a, -um, of Falernus, a district in Campania.

Flaccus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. Lucius Valerius Flaccus, a patrician and consul with Cato. 2. Gaius Valerius Flaccus, praetor in Gaul. 3. Valerius Flaccus, his son.

Flamininus, -ī, m., Titus Quintius Flamininus, sent to King Prusias.

Flaminius, -ni, m., Gaius Flaminius, consul.

Fleginās, -ātis, m., the name of a Roman family. Gaius Fleginās, a knight.

Fregellae, -ārum, f., a city of Latium.

Fufius, -fi, m., the name of a Roman gens. Quintus Fufius Calenus, a supporter of Caesar.

Fulvius, -vi, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Postumus.

Fürius, -ri, m., Lucius Fürius, a consul.

Gabali, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.

Gabinius, -ni, m., Aulus Gabinius, a consul.

Gaius; see C., abb.

Galba, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. A king of the Sue- siones. 2. Servius Sulpicius Galba, a praetor. 3. Publius Sulpicius Galba, consul, B.C. 200.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, corresponding in general to France.

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.

Gallus, -ī, m., Tuticanus Gallas, one of Caesar's men.

Garumna, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul.

Garumnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Gatēs, Gatum, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Geidūmnī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northeastern Gaul.

Geminius, -ī, m., see Servilius.

Genava, -ae, f., the city of Geneva.

Genusus, -ī, m., a river in western Macedonia.

Gergovia, -ae, f., chief city of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae, f., Germany.

Germānus, -a, -um, German; generally a subs. in plu., the Germans.

Germēnicī, -ōrum, m., a people on the coast of Epirus.

Gompēnsia, -e, of Gomphi.

Gomphi, -ōrum, m., a town in western Thessaly.

Gortēnī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Gortyna, a city in Crete.

Gracchus, -ī, m., Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul.

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.

Grāioceļā, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

Graius, -a, -um, Grecian.

Grānius, -ni, m., the name of a Roman gens. Aulus Granius, a knight.

Grudīi, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Hadrumētum, -ī, n., a seacoast town south of Carthage.
Hamilcar, -aris, m., the father of Hannibal.
Hannibal, -alis, m., a famous Carthaginian general.
Harūdēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Germany.
Haadrubal, -alis, m. 1. Hamilcar’s son-in-law and successor. 2. Brother of Hannibal.
Hellēspontus, -ī, m., the strait between Europe and Asia.
Helvētius, -a, -um, Helvetic; as a subs. Helvētius, -ī, m., generally plu., the Helvetians, a tribe in the eastern part of Gaul, in modern Switzerland.
Helviō, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Roman Province.
Helvius, -vī, m., a colleague of Cato.
Hēraclia, -ae, f., a city of Macedonia.
Herculis, -is, m., the national hero of Greece.
Hercynia (silva), the Hercynian forest, in southern Germany.
Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland.
Hirrus, -ī, the name of a Roman family. Gaius Lucilius Hirrus, a follower of Pompey.
Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.
Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish.
Hister, -trī, m., the river Danube.
Histiaeus, -ī, m., tyrant of Miletus.

Icicius, -cī, m., a chieftain of the Remi.
Illyricum, -ī, n., a Roman province on the east shore of the Adriatic.
Indutiomarūs, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Treveri.
Iōnēs, -um, m., Ionians; the Greeks in Asia Minor.
Iōnia, -ae, f., part of the western coast of Asia Minor.
Itālia, -ae, f., Italy.
Italicus, -a, -um, Italian.
Iūlius, -ī, m., Julius; the name of a Roman gens. See Caesar.
Iūnius, -ī, m., Jūnius; the name of a Roman gens. 1. Quintus Jūnius, a Spaniard in the service of Caesar. 2. See Brūtus.
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans, king of the gods.
Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains, northwest of Helvetia.

Karthāginiēnsis, -e, Carthaginian.
Karthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city on the northern coast of Africa.

L., abb. for Lucius, a Roman given name.
Labeō, -ōnis, m., see Fabius.
Labienus, -ī, m., Titus Atilius Labienus, a faithful lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, but a follower of Pompey in the civil war.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Lacedaemōn, -onis, f., Sparta, the chief city of Laconia, in southern Greece.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Spartan.

Lamprus, -i, m., a Greek musician.

Lampsacus, -i, f., a town on the Hellespont.

Lārisa, -ae, f., a town of Thessaly.

Lārisaei, -ōrum, m., the people of Larisa.

Latinus, -a, -um, Latin.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in western Germany.

Lemannus, -i, m., Lake Geneva.

Lēmnii, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of the island of Lemnos.

Lēmnus (os), -i, f., an island in the northern part of the Aegean Sea.

Lemovīcēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Lentulus, -i, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. Lucius Cornelius Lentulus, consul, opponent of Caesar. 2. Publius Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus, one of Caesar's quaestors. 3. Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther, consul, follower of Pompey.

Leōnidās, -ae, m., a king of Sparta.

Leucī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

Leuctra, -ōrum, n., a town in Boeotia.

Leuctricus, -a, -um, of Leuctra.

Levācī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.

Lexoviī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in northern Gaul.

Libō, Libōnis, m., a Roman family name. Lucius Scribonius Libo, a commander in Pompey's fleet.

Ligurēs, -um, m., a tribe on the northwest coast of Italy.

Lingonēs, -um, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.

Liscus, -i, m., a magistrate of the Aeduī.

Lissiūs, -i, m., a town in Illyricum.

Longus, -i, m., Tiberius Sempronius Longus, consul.

Lūcānius, -ni, m., Quintus Lucanius, a centurion.

Lūcānus, -i, m., Lucanian, an inhabitant of Lucania, a province in southwestern Italy.

Lūcēlius, -iī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Hirrus.

Lūna, -ae, f., the moon.

Lūsitānī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of modern Portugal.

Lysis, Lysīs, m., a native of Tarentum.

M., abb. for Marcus, a Roman given name.

Macedonia, -ae, f., a country of northern Greece.

Magetobriga, -ae, f., a town in central Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.

Magneśia, -ae, f., a city in Lydia.

Māgō, Māgōnis, m., Hannibal's brother.

Mandubii, -ōrum, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Manlius, -li, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Torquatus, Vulsô.
Mantinéa, -ae, f., a city of Arcadia, in Greece.
Marathôn, -ônís (acc. -à), f., a plain and a town on the eastern coast of Attica.
Marathônìus, -a, -um, of Marathon.
Márcellinus, -i, m., see Lentulus.
Márcellus, -i, m., Marcus Claudius Marcellus. 1. A famous Roman general; defeated Hannibal; conquered Syracuse; consul five times. 2. Consul, B.C. 183.
Marcomanni, -ôrum, m., a tribe of Germany.
Marius, -rí, m., Gaius Marius, a famous Roman general; defeated the Cimbri and Teutoni.
Márs, Mártis, m., god of war.
Matiscô, -ônís, m., a town of the Aedui.
Matrona, -ae, f., a river in northern Gaul, now the Marne.
Maximus, -i, m., see Fabius.
Mediomatriçî, -ôrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
Menapiî, -ôrum, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul.
Meneclidès, -is, m., a Theban orator.
Mercurius, -rí, m., the god Mercury.
Messâla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. Marcus Valerius Messe- sala, consul, B.C. 61.
Messêné, -és, f., a city of Sicily.
Métius, -tî, m., Marcus Metius, a friend of Ariovistus.
Mêtropolis, -is, f., a city of Thessaly.
Mêtropolitae, -árum (ầum), m., the inhabitants of Metropolis.
Micythus, -i, m., a Theban youth.
Milésius, -a, -um, of Miletus, a city of Ionia.
Miltiädès, -is, m. 1. A famous Athenian general. 2. Founder of colony in the Chersonesus. Nepos confused the two.
Minerva, -ae, f., goddess of war and wisdom.
Minucius, -cî, m. 1. Quintus Minucius, consul. 2. See Rûfus. 3. See Basilus.
Molossi, -ôrum (ầum), m., a tribe in Epirus.
Monâ, -ae, f., an island off the coast of Britain.
Morini, -ôrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.
Mosa, -ae, m., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse.
Munâtius, -tî, m., see Plancus.
Mycalê, -ès (acc. -ê̄n), f., a promontory on the coast of Asia Minor.
Mytilênae, -árum, f., a city on the island of Lesbos.
Myûs, Myuntis, f., a city of Ionia.

Namnêius, -êi, m., a prominent Helvetician.
Namnetês, -um, a tribe of western Gaul.
Nantuâtês, -ium, m., a tribe south of Lake Gêneva.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Nasua, -ae, m., a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Cimerius.
Naxus (os), -i, f., an island in the Aegean Sea.
Nemētēs, -um, m., a tribe living on the border of Germany and Gaul.
Neoclēs, -is (-ī) m., the father of Themistocles.
Nērō, -ōnīs, m., *Gaius Claudius Nero*, consul, B.C. 207, conquered Hasdrubal.
Nervicus, -ā, -um, Nervian.
Nervius, -vi, m., a Nervian, one of a tribe living in Belgic Gaul.
Nitobroges, -um, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.
Norīcia, -ae, f., a town of the Norici.
Noricus, -ā, -um, Norican; generally masc. plu., *the Norici*, a tribe in modern western Austria.
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Suessiones in Belgic Gaul.
Numidae, -ārum, m., a tribe of barbarians in northern Africa.
Nymphaeum, -ē, n., a town in Illyricum.

Oceanus, -ī, m., *the ocean*.
Ocelum, -ī, n., a town in western Cisalpine Gaul.
Octōdūrus, -ī, m., a town of the Veragri in the Alps.
Oedipus, -i (-ōdīs), m., son of the king and queen of Thebes.
Olympiodōrus, -ī, m., a musician.
Orcynia, -ae, f., the Greek name for Hercynia.
Orestēs, -is (-ae), m., son of Agamemnon and Clytemnестra.
Orgetorix, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetii.
Ōricum, -ī, n., a town in Epirus.
Originēs, -um, f., the title of a work written by Cato the Censor.
Osismī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in extreme western Gaul.

P., abb. for *Publius*, a Roman given name.
Padus, -ī, m., the river *Po* in Italy.
Palaestē, -es, f., a town of Epirus.
Pamphylius, -ā, -um, Pamphylian, of Pamphylia, a province of Asia Minor.
Parīsii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.
Parīsios, -a, -um, of Paros; generally masc. plu., *the Parians*.
Parthē, -ōrum, m., a tribe southeast of the Caspian Sea, in Asia.
Parthīnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Greeks in Illyricum.
Parus (os), -ī, f., one of the Cyclades Islands in the Aegean.
Paulus, -ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius Paulus*, a Roman consul, killed in the battle of Cannae.
Pedius, -di, m., *Quintus Pedius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Pelopōdīas, -ae, m., a Theban general.
Peloponnesus, -ī, f., a large peninsula, forming the southern part of Greece.
Pēlūsium, -sī, n., a city in Egypt.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Pergamēnus, -a, -um, of Pergamum; generally masc. plu., the inhabitants of Pergamum.
Pergamum, -ā, n., a city of Mysia, in Asia Minor.
Perpenna, -ae, m., a Roman consul, B.C. 92.
Persae, -ārum, m., the inhabitants of Persis, east of the Persian Gulf.
Persēs, -ae, m., sing. of Persis.
Persicus, -a, -um, Persian.
Persis, -īdis, f., the chief province of the Persian empire.
Petra, -ae, f., a hill in Illyricum.
Petrocoriū, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.
Petrosidius, -ō, m., Lucius Petrosidius, a standard bearer.
Phalēreus, -eos (-ei), m., of Phalerum, the oldest harbor of Athens, and a city near by.
Phalēricus, -a, -um, of Phalerum.
Phidippus, -i, m., an Athenian courier.
Philippus, -i, m., a king of Macedonia.
Phoenīcē, -ēs, f., Phoenicia, a district on the coast of Syria.
Phoenīces, -um, Phoenicians.
Pictonēs, -um, m., a tribe of western Gaul.
Piraeus, -i, m., the principal port of Athens.
Pisistratus, -i, m., a tyrant of Athens.
Placentia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul.
Plancus, -i, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus, an officer of Caesar.
Plataēnēs, -iūm, m., the inhabitants of Plataea, a town in Boeotia.
Plumoxiū, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
Plōtius, -tī, m., Marcus Plotius, one of Caesar’s followers.
Poeclē, -ēs, f., a celebrated portico in Athens.
Poenicus, -a, -um, Carthaginian.
Poenus, -i, m., an inhabitant of Carthage.
Polybius, -bī, m., a Greek historian.
Polymnis, -īdis (-ī), m., the father of Epaminondas.
Pompēiānus, -a, -um, Pompeian.
Pompēius, -ī, m. 1. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, a triumvir and a rival of Caesar. 2. Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter.
Pompōnius, -nī, m., see Atticus.
Pontus, -ī, m., a country of Asia Minor.
Postumus, -i, m., the name of a Roman family. Fulvius Postumus, one of Caesar’s soldiers.
Procilius, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Procilius, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus.
Prūsia or Prūsiās, -ae, m., a king of Bithynia.
Ptiānii, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.
Ptolemaeus, -i, m. 1. Ptolemy, king of Egypt, father of Cleopatra. 2. Son of preceding.
Ptolemāis, -īdis, f., a city of Phoenicia.
Pūliō, -ōnis, m., one of Pompey’s officers.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Pūllō, -ōnis, m., Titus Pullo, a centurion in Caesar's army.
Puteoli, -ōrum, m., a city of Campania.
Pydna, -ae, f., a city of Macedonia.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, of the Pyrenees (mountains); between Gaul and Spain.
Pythagorēus, -ī, m., a follower of the philosopher Pythagoras.
Pythia, -ae, f., the priestess of Apollo.

Q., abb. for Quintus, a Roman given name.
Quintius, -tī, m., see Flāmininus.

Raucillus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Allobroges.
Raurācī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
Rebilus, -ī, m., Caius Caninius Rebilus, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Redōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of western Gaul.
Rēmus, -a, -um, Rēman; generally masc. plu., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the river Rhine.
Rhōdanus, -ī, m., the river Rhone.
Rhōdius, -a, -um, Rhōdian; generally masc. plu., the inhabitants of the island of Rhodes in the Aegean Sea.
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman.
Rōscius, -cī, m., Lucius Roscius, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Rūfus, -ī, m. 1. Publius Sulpicius Rufus, a lieutenant of Caesar.
2. Marcus Minu-ius Rufus, a master of horse under Fabius Maximus.
Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.
Rutilus, -ī, m., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

S., abb. for Sextus, a Roman given name.
Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., an ancient tribe of central Italy.
Sabinus, -ī, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Sabis, Sabis, m., a river in northern Gaul.
Sacrātivir, -vīri, m., Marcus Sacrātivir, a knight in Caesar's army.
Saguntum, -ī, n., a city of Spain.
Salamānius, -a, -um, of Salamis.
Salamis, -inis (acc. -a), f., an island off the coast of Attica.
Samarobrīva, -ae, f., a city in Belgic Gaul.
Santōni, -ōrum (Santōnēs, -um), m., a tribe of western Gaul.
Sardēs (-is), -um (acc. -is), f., a city of Lydia, in Asia Minor.
Sardinia, -ae, f., an island west of Italy.
Sardinēnīs, -e, Sardinian.
Scæva, -ae, m., a centurion of Caesar.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Scythus, -i, f., an island in the Aegean Sea.

Scythēs, -ae, m., generally plu., the Scythians, a tribe living north of the Caspian and Euxine Seas.

Sedulus, -ii, m., a chieftain of the Lemovices.

Sedūni, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Alps.

Sedusii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Germany.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Sempronius, -ni, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Rutilius, Gracchus, Longus.

Sena, -ae, f., a town on the coast of Umbria, in Italy.

Senonēs, -um, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.

Septimius, -mi, m., Lucius Septimius, a military tribune.

Sēquana, -ae, m., a river in Gaul, the modern Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, Sequanian; in plu., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

Ser., abb. for Servius, a Roman given name.

Sertōrius, -ri, m., the name of a Roman gens. Quintus Sertorius, a par- tisan of Marius and commander in Spain.


Sextius, -ti, m. 1. See Baculus. 2. Titus Sextius, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Sibusātēs, -um, m., a tribe of extreme southwestern Gaul.

Sicilia, -ae, f., an island at the southern end of Italy.

Silēnus, -i, m., a Greek historian.

Sōl, Sōlis, m., the sun.

Sōsilus, -i, m., a Spartan historian.

Sparta, -ae, f., the capital of Laconia, in southern Greece.

Staberius, -ri, m., a commander in Pompey’s army.

Stēsagoras, -ae, m., a brother of Miltiades.

Strēmōn, -onis, m., a river of Thrace.

Suēbus, -a, -um, of the Suebi; generally masc. plu., a tribe of central Germany.

Suessisōnēs, -um, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

Sugambri, -ōrum, a tribe of eastern Germany.

Sūlla, -ae, m. 1. Lucius Sulla, Roman dictator. 2. Publius Sulla, nephew of the preceding; a lieutenant of Caesar.

Sulpicius, -ci, m., see Rūfus, Galba, Blithō.

Syria, -ae, f., a country in Asia, southeast of Asia Minor.

Syriacus, -a, -um, Syrian.

T., abb. for Titus, a Roman given name.


Tarbellii, -ōrum, m., a tribe in extreme southwestern Gaul.

Tarentinus, -a, -um, of Tarentum, a town of southern Italy.

Tarusātēs, -ium, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Tasgetius, -tī, m., chieftain of the Carnutes.
Tectosagēs, -um, m., a tribe of southern Gaul; a branch of the Volcae.
Tencterī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Germany.
Terentius, -tī, m., see Varrō.
Teutoni, -ōrum (Teutonēs, -um), m., a tribe of northern Germany.
Thasiī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Thasos, an island in the Aegean Sea.
Thēbae, -ārum, f., the chief city of Boeotia.
Thēbānus, -ī, m., a Theban, an inhabitant of Thebes in Boeotia.
Themistoclēs, -is (-ī), acc. -ēm, -ēn, m., a famous Athenian statesman and general.
Thermopylae, -ārum, f., a narrow pass on the coast of Thessaly.
Thessalia, -ae, f., a country in northern Greece.
Thrāx, Thrācis, m., a Thracian, an inhabitant of Thrace, in northeastern Greece.
Thūcysidēs, -is, m., a Greek historian.
Tiī, abb. for Tiberius, a Roman given name.
Tiberis, -is, m., a river of Italy,
Tiburtius, -tī, m., Lucius Tiburtius, a follower of Caesar.
Tigurīnus, -a, -ūm, of the Tigurini; generally masc. plu., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
Tillius, -īi, m., Quintus Tillius, a follower of Caesar.
Titīrius, -rī, m., see Sabinus.
Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.
Torquātus, -ī, m., Lucius Manlius Torquatus, a commander of Caesar’s forces.
Trallēs, -ium, a town of Lydia, in Asia Minor.
Trānpadānus, -a, -um, across the River Po.
Trasumennus, -ī, m., a lake in Etruria, in Italy.
Trebia, -ae, f., a river in northern Italy.
Trebōnii, -nī, m.  1. Gaius Trebonius, a lieutenant of Caesar.  2. Gaius Trebonius, a Roman knight, B. G., VI, 40.
Trēveri, -ōrum, a tribe of northeastern Gaul.
Triārius, -rī, m., a commander under Pompey.
Triboci, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germans in Belgic Gaul.
Troezen, Troezēnia, (acc. -a), f., a city in the Peloponnesus.
Troucillus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a Gallic interpreter.
Tulingi, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.
Tullius, -īi, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Cicerō.
Turonī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Tusculum, -ī, n., a city of Latium.
Tūticānus, -ī, m., Tūticānus Gallus, one of Caesar’s followers.
Ubiī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.
Usipētēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the lower Rhine.
Valerius, -rī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Troucius, Flaccus, Caburis, Procilius, Messala.
Vangiones, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.
Varrō, -onis, m. 1. Gaius Terentius Varro, consul, b.c. 216. 2. Aulus Terentius Varro, a soldier of Pompey.
Vatinius, -nī, m., Publius Vatinius, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Velociassēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
Vellavi, -orum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.
Venellī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.
Veneti, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme western Gaul.
Veneticus, -a, -um, of the Veneti.
Venusia, -ae, f., a town of Apulia, in southern Italy.
Veragri, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the Alps.
Verbigenus, -i, m., a district of Helvetia.
Vercassivellaunus, -i, m., a chieftain of the Arverni.
Vercingetorix, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Arverni, and leader of the Gauls.
Verticō, -ōnis, m., one of the Nervii.
Verucloetius, -tī, m., an ambassador of the Helvetii.
Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., a town of the Sequani.
Victoria, -ae, f., the goddess of victory.
Viridomārus, -i, m., a chief of the Aedui.
Viridovix, -īcis, m., a chief of the Venelli.
Viromandui, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
Vocâtēs, -iūm, m., a people of Aquitania.
Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum.
Vocontii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme southeastern Gaul.
Volcae, -ārum, m., see Tectosages.
Volusēnus, -ī, m., Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, a military tribune.
Vorēnus, -ī, m., Lucius Vorenus, a centurion in Caesar's army.
Vulcānus, -ī, m., the god of fire.
Vulsē, -ōnis, m., Gnaeus Manlius Vulso, consul, b.c. 189.

Xerxes, -is, m., a king of Persia.

Zama, -ae, f., a town of Numidia in Africa.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For distinction in meaning, consult Latin-English Vocabulary.

A
able: be able, possum.
abstain, mihi, etc., temperō, abstineō.
accept, accipiō; recipiō.
account: (on this) account, quam
   ob rem; (on) account of, prop-
   ter; ob.
accustomed: become accustomed,
   consuēscō.
across, tràns.
additional: (there is the) addi-
   tional (fact), accēdit.
advance, prōcēdō; prōgredior.
Aeduan, Aeduus.
afraid: be afraid, timēō.
after (conjunction), postquam.
afterwards, posteā.
again, iterum.
against, in (with accusative).
aid, auxilium.
all, omnīs.
allow, patior.
ally, socius.
almost, paene.
alone, sōlus.
Alps, Alpēs.
already, iam.
also, eiam; quoque.
although, etsī; cum.
am, sum.
amassador, légātus.
among, apud.
amount, cópia.
and, atque; et; -que.
and so, itaque.
announce, nūntiō.
another, alius.
any, aliquis; āllus.
approach (noun), aditus.
approach (verb), accēdō; appropin-
quō.
arise, orior.
arms, arma.
army, exercitus.
arouse, commoveō.
arrange, cōnstituō.
arival, adventus.
arrive, perveniō.
ascend, ascendō.
ask, quaerō; rogō.
as soon as, ubi.
attack (noun), impetus.
attack (verb), impetum faciō; op-
pugnō.
attempt, temptō.
auxiliary, auxilia.
away: be away, absūm.

B
baggage, impedīmenta.
bank, ripa.
barbarian, barbarus.
battle, proelium.
battle line, acīēs.
bear, ferō.
because, quod.
become of, propter; ob.
before (prep.), ante; (adv.), anteā.
begin, incipiō; began, coepī.
beginning, initium.
Belgian, Belgica.
boat, nāvis.
body, corpus.
booty, praedia.
both, uterque, sing.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bound, continēō.
brave, fortis.
bravery, virtūs.
bray (camp), moveō.
bridge, pōns.
brief, brevis.
bring, dūcō; addūcō; comportō.
bring together, condūcō; coniungō.
bring to pass, efficiō.
brather, frāter.
build, faciō.
building, aedificium.
but, sed.
but that, quin.

C
call, appellō.
call together, convocō.
camp, castrum.
canton, pāgus.
capture, capiō.
cart, carrus.
cause, causa.
cavalry (noun), equitātus; (adjective), equester.
cease, désistō.
centurion, centūriō.
certain (one), quidam.
chain, calina.

character, nātūra.
check, impediō.
chief, princeps.
chieftain, princeps.
child, puer.
children (free), liberī.
choose, dēligō.
citizens, cīvītās.
client, cliēns.
collect, cōgō.
come, veniō.
command, imperō; iubeō.
command: (be in) command (of), praecum; (place in) command, praeciciō.
commander, imperātor.
compact, cōnfertus.
complete, cōnfixō.
concerning, ē.
conference, colloquium.
conquer, vincō.
consent, voluntās.
consider, habēō.
conspiracy, coniūratiō.
conspire, coniūrō.
construct, perdūcō.
consul, cōnsul.
consult, cōnsulō.
control, imperium.
council, concilium.
courage, virtūs.
cowardice, timor.
cowardly, timidus.
crisis: (at a) crisis, in angustō.
critical, necessarius.
cross, trānseō.
crush, opprimō.
custom, mōs.

daily (adjective), cotidiānus.
danger, periculum.
dare, audeō.
daughter, filia.
day, diēs; (within two) days, bīduō.
daybreak: (at) daybreak, primă lūce.
death, mors.
decide, cōnstituō.
deep, altus.
defeat, superō; suffer defeat, superō.
defend, défendō.
delay, moror; (with quīn) cunctor.
deliver (a speech), habēō.
demand, postulō.
depart, discēdō.
departure, proiectō.
deprive, prīvō.
desert, aēserō.
desire, cupidō; studeō.
desirous, cupidus.
differ, differō.
direction, pars.
discuss, agō.
dismiss, dīmitō.
display, ostendō.
disposition, animus.
disturb, perturbō.
ditch, fossa.
do, faciō.
doubt, dubitō.
draw up, instruō.
drive, pellō.
drive back, repellō.
drive out, expellō.
duty, officium.

easy, facilis.
embassy, legātiō.
employ, ūtor.
encourage, cohortor.
engage (in), committō.
enjoy, ūtor.
enough, satis.
enroll, cōnscribō.
entire, tōtus.
equal, adaequō.
escape, mé, etc., éripō.
especially, maximē.
establish, cōnfirmō.
even, etiam.
everything, omnia.
except, praeter.
exhaust, cōnfinō.
extraordinary, insignis.

F

fact, rēs.
fall, cadō.
far, longē.
farther, ullerior.
farthest, extrēmus.
father, pater.
favor, favēō.
fear (noun), timor.
fear (verb), timeō; vereor.
fertile, frūmentārius.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fierce, ācer.
fiercely, acriter.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fight, pugnō.
fight a decisive battle, dēcertō.
fight it out, dēcertō.
fill, compleō.
finally, tandem.
find (come to meet), occurrō; find
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wage (war)</td>
<td><em>gerō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td><em>exspectō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall</td>
<td><em>mūrus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want</td>
<td><em>volō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war</td>
<td><em>bellum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warn</td>
<td><em>moneō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch, vigilia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weapon</td>
<td><em>tēlum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well-known</td>
<td><em>nōbilis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what, quis, quae, quid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when</td>
<td><em>cum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td><em>ubi</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whether</td>
<td><em>num</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whichever</td>
<td><em>quicumque</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while</td>
<td><em>dum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who (interrogative)</td>
<td><em>quis</em>; (relative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why</td>
<td><em>cūr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td><em>lātus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width</td>
<td><em>lātūdō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>willing: (am) willing</td>
<td><em>volō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>willingness</td>
<td><em>voluntās</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td><em>conciliō</em>; <em>potior</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wing</td>
<td><em>cornū</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winter quarters</td>
<td><em>hiberna</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wisdom</td>
<td><em>cōnsilium</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
<td><em>volō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td><em>cum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdraw</td>
<td><em>discēdō</em>; <em>mē</em>, etc., <em>recipiō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without</td>
<td><em>sine</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withstand</td>
<td><em>sustineō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td><em>mulier</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonder</td>
<td><em>admīror</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woods</td>
<td><em>silva</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word</td>
<td><em>verbum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td><em>vulnus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong</td>
<td><em>iniūria</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrongdoing</td>
<td><em>iniūriā</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrongfully</td>
<td><em>iniūriā</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>year</td>
<td><em>annus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yield</td>
<td><em>concēdō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td><em>tū</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young man</td>
<td><em>adulēscēns</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your (of one person)</td>
<td><em>tuus</em>; (of several)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
nder (noun), dēditīō.
nder (verb), trādō; dēdō.
und, circumveniō.
und (with), circumdō.
ve, supersum.
ct, suspicor.
cion, suspiciō.
in (loss), accipīō.
r, iūrō.
d, gladius.

T
cāpiō.
away, removeō.
loquor.
lacrima.
ītō.
lecem.
, decimus.
ory, finēs.
quam.
is; (conjunction), ut, quīn.
selves: (of) themselves, suī.
(deinde; tum.
(in that place), tbi; (to that ce), eō.
fore, quam ob rem.
, rēs.
, arbitrōr.
, tertius.
hic.
gh, cum; etsī.
and, mille.
, trēs.
gh, per.
ghout, per.
r, iaciō; coniciō.
ita.
tempus.	rēs.
uoque.
top, summus (adjective).
toward, ad.
tower, turris.
training, exercitātiō.
treachery, insidiaē.
tree, arbor.
trial, iūdicum.
tribe, gēns.
tribune, tribūnus.
tribute, stipendium.
troops, cōpiae.
trust, cōnfidō.
try, cōnor; templō.
turn away, iter āvertō.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, viginti.
two, duo.
two hundred, ducentī.

U
undergo, subeō.
understand, intellegō.
undertake, suspiciō.
unencumbered, expeditus.
unfavorable, inīquus.
unfriendly, inimicus.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis.
until, dum.
unwilling: (am) unwilling, nōtō.
urge, cohortō.
use (noun), ūsus.
use (verb), ūtōr.

V
various, varius.
very (adj.), ipse.
victor, victor.
victory, victōria.
village, vicus.
violence, viōs.
W
wage (war), gerō.
wait, exspectō.
wall, mūrus.
want, volū.
war, bellum.
warn, moneō.
watch, vigilia.
weapon, tēlum.
well-known, nōbilis.
what, quis, quae, quid.
when, cum.
where, ubi.
whether, num.
whichever, quicumque.
while, dum.
who (interrogative), quis; (relative), quī.
why, cūr.
wide, lātus.
width, lāttīdō.
willing: (am) willing, volū.
willingness, voluntās.
win, conciliō; potior.
wing, cornū.
winter quarters, hiberna.
wisdom, cōnsilium.
wish, volū.
with, cum.
withdraw, discēdō; mē, etc., recipiō.
without, sine.
withstand, sustineō.
woman, mulier.
wonder, admiror.
woods, silva.
word, verbum.
wound, vulnus.
wrong, iniūria.
wrongdoing, iniūria.
wrongfully, iniūriā.

Y
year, annus.
yield, concēdō.
you, tū.
young man, adulēscēns.
your (of one person), tūus; (of several), vester.
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Principal parts of regular verbs are indicated by the number of the conjugation.

A
a., abbr. for ante.
A., abbr. for Aulus.
ä, prep. with abl., from, away from; by, on.
abdō, -ere, abdīdī, abditum (dō, give, put), put away; hide; with sē, withdraw.
abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (ducō, lead), lead away, carry off.
absēns, absentis (pres. part. of absūm, be away), absent
abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (tenēō, hold), hold one's self from, refrain, abstain.
absūm, abesse, āfuī, — (sum, be), be away from, be lacking; be of no use to.
ac, see atque.
accēō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēō, go), go or come to; be added.
acceptus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of accipīō, receive), pleasing to, popular with.
accidō, -ere, accidi, — (cadō, fall), fall to, happen to, befall, happen.
accipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (cāpiō, take), take to one's self, accept, receive; endure.
acclīvis, -e, adj., sloping upward.
acclīvitās, acclīvitātis, f. (acclīvis, sloping upward'), upward slope.
accommodō, i, fīt, put on.
accurrō, -ere, -cūrrī or -currī, -curr-sum, run to, hurry up to.
accūsō, i, accuse, blame, upbraid.
acervus, -i, m., pile, heap.
aciēs, -ēī, f. (cf. ācer, keen), keenness, edge; line of battle.
ācrīter, ācrius, ācerrīmē, adv. (ācer, keen), sharply; vigorously.
ad, prep. with acc., to, towards; near; for, in order to; about; according to.
adaequō, i (aequō, make equal), make equal to, equal.
adamō, i (amō, love), love strongly, become much attached to.
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (ducō, lead), lead to, lead up, bring; influence.
adeō, -ere, adīi, adītum (eō, go), go to, reach; get at.
adequitā, i, ride to.
adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hībitum (habeō, have), have present; bring in, summon.
adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum (agō, drive), drive at, hurl, cast.
aditus, -ūs, m. (adeō, go to), a going to, approach; right of approach.
adīuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum (iuvō, help), help, aid.
Admagetobriga, -ae, f., a town in central Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.
arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum, summon, invite.
arduus, -a, -um, adj., steep, difficult.
ariēs, arietis, m., battering ram.
Ariovistus, -ī, m., a king among the Germans.
arma, -ōrum, n., arms, weapons.
armātūra, -ae, f. (armō, arm), armor, equipment.
armātus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of armō, arm), armed.
arrogrant, adv., haughtily.
arrograntia, -ae, f., haughtiness, insolence.
Arverni, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul, rivals of the Aeduan.
armō, f., fortress, citadel.
ascendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsum, climb up, climb to.
ascēnsum, -ús, m. (ascendō, climb up), ascent, way up; approach.
asciscō, -ere, -scivi, -scītum, approve, receive.
at, conj., but, at least.
atque and ac, conjs., and, and also; after words denoting identity or comparison, as, than.
Atrebātēs, -um, m., a tribe of northeastern Gaul.
attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctum (tangō, touch), border on; approach, reach.
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f. (augeō, increase), influence, prestige.
auctus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of augeō, increase), increased, improved.
audācia, -ae, f. (audāx, bold), daring, boldness.
audācker, adv. (audāx, bold), boldly.
audeō, -ère, ausus sum, dare, venture.
audiō, 4, hear, hear of; audīens, audientia, pres. part., hearing, obedient.
augeō, -ère, auxī, auctum, increase, add to.
Aulerci, -ōrum, m., a strong tribe of central Gaul, divided into four branches.
Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.
Aurunculeius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a lieutenant of Caesar.
aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
autem, conj., but, on the other hand, besides, moreover.
auxillium, -ī, n. (augeō, increase), help; pl., auxiliary troops.
avāritia, -ae, f., greed.
avertō, -ere, -verti, -versum (vertō, turn), turn away from.
avus, -ī, m., grandfather.
Axona, -ae, m., a river of northern Gaul; the modern Aisne.

B
Baculus, -ī, m., Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion.
Baleāres, -īum, m., inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, off the eastern coast of Spain.
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., strange; savage, uncivilized.
Belgae, -ārum, m., the Belgians, a people of northeastern Gaul, occupying one of the three parts of Gaul.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. (bellum, war), warlike.
bellō, i, wage war.
Bellovaci, -ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgians.
bellum, -i, n., war.
bene, melius, optimē, adv. (bonus, good), well, properly.
beneficium, -i, n. (bene, well + faciō, do), kindness, favor.
Bibracte, Bibractis, n., a town in eastern Gaul, chief city of the Aeduans.
Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi in northern Gaul.
biduum, -i, n. (bis, twice + diēs, day), period of two days.
biennium, -i, n. (bis, twice + annus, year), period of two years.
bipartītō, adv. (bis, twice + partīor, divide), in two divisions.
Biturigēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Boduōgnātus, -i, m., a leader of the Nervii.
Bōli, -ōrum, m., a tribe in central Gaul; a nomadic people, who fought with the Helvetians against Caesar and were placed by him among the Aeduans.
bonitās, bonitātis, f. (bonus, good), goodness, fertility.
bonus, -a, -um, adj.; comp., melior; superl., optimus, good, loyal; neut. as a noun, good, profit; pl., property.
bracchium, -i, n., forearm, arm.
Bratuspantium, -i, n., a town of the Bellovaci in northern Gaul.
brevis, -e, adj., short.
brevitās, brevitātis, f. (brevis, short), shortness.
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.

C
C., abbr. for Gaius (Caius).
Cabūrus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul who had been presented with Roman citizenship.
cadāver, cadāveris, n., dead body.
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, fall; be slain.
Caemānī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.
Caerośi, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.
Caesar, Caesaris, m., a Roman family name of the Julian gens. Gaius Julius Caesar, general, writer, and statesman.
calamītās, calamītātis, f., loss, disaster, defeat.
Caletī, -ōrum (Caletēs, -um), m., a tribe of the Belgians.
cālō, cālōnis, m., officer's servant, camp follower.
capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum, take, capture, seize; deceive.
captīvus, -i, m. (capiō, take), prisoner.
caput, capitis, n., head; person.
Carnutēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
carrus, -i, m., cart, wagon.
Cassianus, -a, -um, adj., of Cassius.
Cassius, -i, the name of a Roman gens. Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul, B.C. 107; killed in battle with the Tigurini.
castellum, -i, n., fort, stronghold.
Casticus, -i, m., a prominent Sequanian.
castra, -ōrum, n., fortified camp, camp.
cāsus, -ūs, m. (cadō, fall), chance, situation; disaster.

Catamantaloedis, Catamantaloedis, m., a chieftain of the Sequaniens.

cētēna, -ae, f., chain.

Caturīgēs, -um, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, motive; case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of.

caveō, -ere, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, go, go away; give way.

celerītās, celerītāts, f. (celer, swift), speed, quickness.

celerīter, adv. (celer, swift), swiftly, speedily.

cēlō, 1, hide.

Celtae, -ārum, m., the people in central Gaul, occupying the largest of the three divisions of Gaul.

cēnseō, -ere, cēnsui, cēnsum, estimate, decide, decree.

cēnsum, -ūs, m. (cēnseō, estimate), enumeration, census.

centum, indecl. num. adj., one hundred.

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., centurion.

certus, -a, -um, adj., decided, sure, reliable; certiōrem facere, to inform; certior fieri, to be informed.

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., the remaining; as noun, the rest.

Ceutorōnēs, -um, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

cibāria, -ūrum, n. (cibus, food), provisions; molita cibāria, meal, flour.

Cimberius, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Nasua.

Cimbri, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany; invaded southern Europe and were defeated by Marius.

cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum, surround.

circinus, -ī, m., a pair of compasses.

circiter, adv., round about, nearly.

circuitus, -ūs, m. (cf. circumēs, go around), winding path, roundabout way, circumference.

circum, prep. with acc., around, about, near.

circumdō, -dare, -dēdī, -datum (dō, put), place around, surround.

circumducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum (ducō, lead), lead or draw around.

circumiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (iacō, throw), throw or place around.

circummuōniō, 4 (muōniō, fortify), fortify on all sides.

circumsistō, -ere, circumstiti, — (sistō, stand), stand around, surround.

circumveniō, -ère, -vēni, -ventum (veniō, come), come around, surround, outflank.

cis, prep. with acc., on this side of.

citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (cis, on this side of), nearer, hither.

citā, prep. with acc., on this side of.

citō, adv. (citā, on this side of), to this side; ūltrō citrōque, back and forth.

civitās, civitātis, f., citizenship; community, state; citizens.

clāmor, clāmōris, m., shout, outcry; din.

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close; agmen claudere, bring up (the rear).

clémentia, -ae, f., gentleness, mercy.
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

cliēns, clientia, m. and f., dependent, vassal, adherent.
coacervō, 1, pile up.
coāctus, -a, -um, perf. part. of cōgō.
coēmō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēmptum (emō, buy), purchase.
coēpī, coeppisse, defective, began.
coērcē, 2, restrain.
cōgitō, 1, consider carefully, think, plan.
cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, learn, examine.
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum (agō, drive), drive together, gather; compel.
cohors, cohorts, f., cohort, guard; praetōria cohors, bodyguard.
cohortātiō, cohortātiōnis, f. (cohortor, urge), urging, encouragement.
cohortor, 1, urge on, cheer.
colligō, 1, bind together.
collis, collis, m., hill.
colloquium, -ī, n. (colloquor, talk with), conference.
colloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum (loquor, talk), converse, discuss.
combūrō, -ere, -bussī, -bustum, burn up.
commeātus, -ūs, m., provisions, supplies.
commemorō, 1, recall, mention, tell.
commīō, 1, go back and forth, visit.
commīnus, adv. (manus, hand), hand to hand.
committō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum (mittō, send), bring together, engage; intrust, commit, cause.
commōdē, adv. (commōdus, convenient), conveniently, easily, advantageously.
commōdum, -ī, n. (commōdus, convenient), advantage.
commōdus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable.
commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (moneō, remind + faciō, make), remind forcibly.
commovere, -e, -mōvī, -mōtum (moveō, move), move greatly, influence, alarm.
commūniō, 4 (mūniō, fortify), fortify strongly.
commūnis, -e, adj., common, general.
commutātiō, commutātiōnis, f. (commūtō, change completely), complete change, change.
commutō, 1, change completely.
1. comparō, 1 (parō, prepare), prepare thoroughly; collect.
2. comparō, 1 (par, equal), compare.
compellō, -ere, compulsī, compulsum (pellō, drive), drive together, collect; force.
comperiō, -ere, comperti, compactum, find out, learn.
complector, -ā, -plexus sum, embrace.
compleō, -ere, -plēvī, -plētum, fill completely, fill up; cover, crowd.
complūres, -a or -ia, adj. (plūs, more), a great many, several.
comportō, 1 (portō, carry), carry together, collect, bring.
cūnātum, -ī, n. (cūnōr, try), attempt.
cūnātus, -ūs, m. (cūnōr, try), attempt.
cūcēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (cēdō, go), go away; yield, allow.
cūcīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (caedō, cut), cut down; kill, destroy.
cūciliō, 1 (concilium, assembly), bring together; win, gain.
concilium, -ī, n., assembly.
conclámô, 1, cry out together, shout.
concurrô, -ere, -cúrri or -currî, -currusum (currô, run), run together, hurry, rally.
concursus, -ús, m. (concurrô, run together), a running together, rally, attack.
condíciô, condíciônís, f., condition; agreement, terms.
condônô, 1 (dônô, give), give up; pardon.
Condrûsî, -ôrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.
condúcô, -ere, -dûxi, -ductum (dûcô, lead), lead together, collect; hire.
cônférô, cônferre, contulî, collátum (ferô, bring), bring together; compare; ascribe to; postpone; sê cônferre, betake one’s self.
cônfertus, -a, -um, adj., dense, compact.
cônficiô, -ere, -fécî, -fectum (faciô, do), complete, make; prepare; muster; wear out.
cônfidô, -ere, -fîsus sum, trust completely, believe.
cônfírmô, 1, make strong, establish, encourage; state.
cônfígô, -ere, -fîxi, -fîctum, contend, fight.
congedior, congedî, -gressus sum, meet, fight.
conicio, -ere, -iécî, -iectum (iaciô, throw), throw together, hurl, drive.
coniungô, -ere, -iûnxi, -iûctum (iungô, join), join together, unite.
coniûrâtîo, coniûrâtîonis, f. (coniûrô, swear together), conspiracy.
coniûrô, 1, swear together, conspire.
cônor, 1, try.
conquîrô, -ere, -quisâvî, -quisîtum (quaerô, seek), seek for carefully, search out.
cônsanguineus, -a, -um, adj., of the same blood; masc. as noun, kinsman.
cônsiscô, -ere, -scivî, -scîtum, approve, decide upon; sibî mortem cônsiscere, commit suicide.
cônsicius, -a, -um, adj. (scîô, know), conscious, aware.
cônscribô, -ere, -scripiâ, -scriptum (scribô, write), write together, enroll.
cônsenâsus, -ús, m. (cônsentiô, agree), agreement, consent.
cônsentiô, -îre, -sênsî, -sênsum (sentîô, feel), feel with, sympathize; agree.
côsequor, -î, secûtus sum (sequor, follow), follow up; attain, gain.
cônservô, 1 (servô, keep), save, spare.
Cônsidius, -î, m., the name of a Roman gens. Publius Considius, an officer of Caesar.
cônsidô, -ere, -sêdî, -sessum, sit down together, settle, encamp.
cônsilium, -î, n., council, design, plan, advice; prudence.
cônsimilis, -e, adj. (similis, like), quite similar.
cônsistô, -ere, constîtî, — (sistô, stand), take a stand, halt, rally; depend upon.
cônsôlor, 1, comfort.
cônspectus, -ús, m. (cônspicîô, look at), sight.
cônspicîo, -ere, -spêxi, -spectum, look at, perceive.
côspicor, 1, observe, see.
côstanter, adv., uniformly.
côstantia, -ae, f., firmness.
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituí, -stitūtum (statuō, set up), construct, appoint, decide, draw up, halt.
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, accustom one's self; in perf. tenses, be accustomed.
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, f. (cōnsuēscō, accustom one's self), custom, habit.
cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., consul, one of two chief magistrates chosen annually by the Romans.
cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. (cōnsul, consul), consulsiphip.
cōnsulō, -ere, -sului, -sultum, consul, deliberate.
cōnsultum, -i, n. (cōnsulō, consuli), decree, decision.
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmpustum (sūmō, take), use up, consume.
contemptus, -ūs, m., contempt, scorn.
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, push forward, hasten; struggle, fight.
contentiō, contentiōnis, f. (contendō, struggle), struggle, fight.
continenter, adv. (continēns, continuous), constantly.
contineō, -ère, -tinui, -tentum (teneō, hold), hold together, hem in; restrain, keep; occupy.
contingō, -ere, contigi, -tactum, touch upon, border; happen to.
continuus, -a, -um, adj. (contineō, hold together), successive.
contrā, adv., against, on the other hand; prep. with acc., opposite, against.
contrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum (trahō, draw), gather together; assemble, collect.
contrārius, -a, -um, adj. (contrā, against), opposite, facing.
contumēlia, -ae, f., indignity, insult.
conveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum (venīō, come), come together, meet; impers., be agreed upon.
conventus, -ūs, m. (conveniō, come together), assembly, conference; court (of justice).
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum (vertō, turn), turn about, turn; with signa, reverse, i.e. wheel about.
convincō, -ere, -vicī, -victum (vincō, conquer), prove.
convocō, i (vocō, call), call together, summon.
cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, supply; in pl., forces, wealth, resources.
cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. (cōpia, abundance), well-supplied, rich.
cōram, adv., in person.
Coriosolītēs, -um, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing (of an army).
corpus, corporis, n., body, person, dead body.
cortex, corticis, m. and f, bark (of a tree).
cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. (cotidiē, daily), daily; usual.
cotidiē, adv. (cf. diēs, day), daily.
Cotta, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family; see Auruncūlēius.
Crassus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of the first triumvirates; father of Publius Licinius Crassus (adulīscēns), a lieutenant of Caesar.
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., numerous.
cōdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum, believe, feel sure.
crēmō, 1, burn.
crēō, 1, create; choose, elect.
crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētum, grow; grow powerful.
Crētēs, -um (acc. Crētae), m., inhabitants of the island of Crete.
crucītus, -ūs, m., cruelty, torture.
crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis, f., cruelty.
crūdēlīter, adv., cruelly.
cultus, -ūs, m., cultivation, refinement.
cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, with (against), furnished with.
cum, conj.; of time, when, while, after; cum prīnum, as soon as; of cause, since, as; of concession, although; cum . . . tum, both . . . and; not only . . . but also.
cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., all together, all.
cupīdē, adv. (cupīdus, eager), eagerly.
cupīdītās, cupīdītātis, f. (cupīdus, eager), eagerness, desire.
cupīdus, -a, -um, adj. (cupīō, be eager), eager, desirous.
cupīō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, be eager; wish well to.
cūr, adv., why.
cūra, -ae, f., care, concern.
cūrō, 1 (cūra, care), care for, arrange, cause.
cursus, -ūs, m. (currō, run), running, speed.
cūstōdia, -ae, f. (cūstōs, guard), guard; protection.
cūstōs, cūstōdis, m., guard, watchman.  

D
dā., abbr. for diem.
damnō, 1, condemn, convict.
dē, prep. with abl., from, down from; during; about; of; in regard to, for; with sūmēre, upon; dē imprōvisō, suddenly.
dēbeō, 2, owe; ought, must.
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, go), go from or away, withdraw.
decem, indecl. num. adj., ten; decem novem, nineteen.
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, decide, decree.
dēcertō, 1, fight a decisive battle.
dēcidō, -ere, -dēcīdī, — (cadō, fall), fall from or off.
decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (decem, ten), tenth.
dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (capiō, take), catch; deceive.
dēclārō, 1, disclose, set forth, announce.
dēclīvis, -e, adj., sloping downward.
decumānus, -a, -um, adj.; with porta, rear.
decuriō, decurīonis, m., decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of ten men.
dēcurrō, -ere, -curre or -currī, -cursum (currō, run), run down, hurry down.
dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. (dēdō, surrender), surrendered; masc. as noun, subject, prisoner.
dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f. (dēdō, surrender), surrender.
dēdō, -ere, dēdīdī, dēditum (dō, give), give up or away, surrender.
dēdūcō, -ere, -düxi, -ductum (dücō, lead), lead off, withdraw; bring.
défatigō, i, tire out completely, exhaust.
défendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnum, keep off; defend, protect.
défensō, défensōnis, f. (défendō, keep off), defense, protection.
défensor, défensōris, m. (défendō, keep off), defender.
déferō, -ferre, dētuli, dēlātum (ferō, bear), bring down or from; carry, announce, report, bestow.
défessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied, worn out.
déficīō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (faciō, do), fail, give out; revolt from, forsake.
déficīō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, throw), throw down; dislodge; disappoint.
dējectus, -ūs, m. (dēiciō, throw down), slope, declivity.
deinde, adv. (inde, thence), from there; then, in the next place.
dēleō, -ere, -lēvī, -lētum, wipe out, destroy.
dēliberō, i, consider carefully, deliberate.
dēligō, i, bind fast, fasten.
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select.
dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtum, take away, lessen, diminish.
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (mittō, send), send or let down; bow.
dēmōnstrō, i, show, point out, mention.
dēmum, adv., at length, finally.
dēnegō, i (negō, deny), deny, refuse.
dēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. decem, ten), ten each.
dēnique, adv., at length, at least, finally.
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., dense, close.
dēnūntiō, i (nuntiō, announce), announce; threaten.
dēperdō, -ere, -perdidi, -perditum, lose.
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (pōnō, place), put away, lay aside; place in safety.
dēpopolur, i (populor, lay waste), lay waste, pillage.
dēprecātor, dēprecātoris, m. (dēprecor, plead for), mediator, intercessor.
dēprecor, i (cf. prex, prayer), beg off, petition against.
dēserō, -ere, -serui, -sertum, abandon, desert.
dēsignō, i, mark out, point out; mean.
dēsistō, -ere, dēstīti, dēstitutum, abandon, cease, desist from.
dēspērō, i (spērō, hope), give up hope, despair; give up.
dēspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum, look down upon, despise.
dēspoliō, i, rob, deprive.
dēstitūō, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum (statuō, set up), set aside, abandon, forsake.
dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, draw, unsheathe.
dēsum, deesse, dēfui, — (sum, be), be lacking, fail.
dēsuper, adv., from above.
deterior, -ius, comp. adj., worse; less.
dēterreō, 2, frighten off, deter, prevent.
dētrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum (trahō, draw), draw off, remove.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dētrimentum, -i, n., loss, harm.</td>
<td>discenda, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (cēdō, go), go apart or away, depart, withdraw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deus, -i; nom. pl., dii; dat. and abl. pl., dies, m., god.</td>
<td>discensus, -ūs, m. (discēdō, go away), departure, withdrawal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum (vehō, carry), bring down.</td>
<td>disciplina, -ae, f. (cf. discō, learn), training.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum (veniō, come), come down; come so, reach.</td>
<td>discō, -ere, didicī, —, learn, be taught.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right hand; fem. as noun, right hand.</td>
<td>disiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (iaciō, throw), scatter; break.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō, -ere, dīxi, dīctum, say, speak, tell; appoint; plead.</td>
<td>dispergo, -ere, -spersī, -aspersum, scatter, disperse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīctō, dīctōnis, f. (dīcō, say), with causae, pleading.</td>
<td>dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (pōnō, place), place at intervals, distribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīctum, -ī, n. (dīcō, say), saying, word; command.</td>
<td>dissipō, i, scatter, break up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīēs, -ēī, m. and f., day; time; ad diem, punctually.</td>
<td>distineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum (teneō, hold), keep apart, separate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīfer-, ferre, distulī, dilātum (ferō, bear), bear apart; differ.</td>
<td>diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; diūtius, longer, too long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e; superl., difficillimus, adj. (facilis, easy), difficult.</td>
<td>diurnus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. diēs, day), of the day, by day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficultās, difficultātis, f. (difficilis, difficult), difficulty, trouble.</td>
<td>diūturnitās, diūturnitātis, f. (diū-turnus, long), long duration, length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dignitās, dignitātis, f., worthiness, standing, dignity.</td>
<td>diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. (diū, long), long, lasting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diligenter, adv., carefully, scrupulously.</td>
<td>diversus, -a, -um, adj., turned away; separated; different.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diligentia, -ae, f., carefulness, pains-taking, care.</td>
<td>dives, divitis, adj., wealthy, rich; superl., divīsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimētior, -īri, -mēnus sum (mētior, measure), measure out or off.</td>
<td>Diviciācus, -i, m. 1. A chieftain of the Aeduan and friend of Caesar. 2. A chieftain of the Suessiones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimicō, i, fight, contend.</td>
<td>Divicō, Divicioānis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetians.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimittō, -ere, -misī, -missum (mittō, send), send in different directions, dispatch; send away, dismiss, adjourn.</td>
<td>dividō, -ere, -visi, -visum, divide, separate; divisus, -a, -um, perf. part. as adj., divided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirimō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēemptum (emō, take), break off.</td>
<td>diripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -rep tum, tear in pieces, plunder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
divinus, -a, -um, adj., of the gods, divine.
dō, dare, dēdī, datum, give, deliver, offer, concede, grant; with inter sē, exchange.
doceō, -ere, docuī, doctum, show, instruct, teach, explain.
doleō, 2, suffer, grieve; be annoyed.
dolor, dolōris, m. (doleō, suffer), distress, grief; vexation.
dolus, -i, m., deception, cunning, trickery.
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. (domus, home), of home, native.
domicilium, -i, n. (domus, home), dwelling place, residence.
dominor, 1, lord it, be master.
domus, -ūs, f., house, home; domī, at home; domō, from home.
dōnō, 1, give, present.
Dubis, Dubis, m., a river in eastern Gaul, branch of the Arar.
dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f. (dubitō, doubt), doubt; hesitation.
dubitō, 1 (dubius, doubtful), doubt, be uncertain; hesitate.
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.
ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. (duo, two + centum, hundred), two hundred.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead, conduct, bring; draw, put off, prolong; think; with in mātrīmōnium, marry.
dum, conj., while, until.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīgis, m., a chief-tain of the Aeduaus, brother of Diviciacus.
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two.
duodecim, indecl. num. adj. (duo, two + decem, ten), twelve.
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (duodecim, twelve), twelfth.
duodevīnti, indecl. num. adj. (duo, two + dē, from + viginti, twenty), eighteen.
duplex, duplicis, adj., twofold, double.
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult.
dux, ducis, m. and f. (dūcō, lead), leader, commander, guide.

E
ē, ex, prep. with abl., from, out of, after, on, as a result of, according to.
Eburōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
edūtus, -a, -um, adj. (ēdō, set forth), elevated, lofty.
edō, -ere, edīdī, edītum (dō, give), set forth, give out; inflict.
edūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, lead), lead out or forth.
effēminō, 1, make feeble, enervate.
efferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum (ferō, bear), carry out, take along; disclose.
efficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum (faciō, do), work out, bring about, make.
egō, mei, pers. pron., I; pl., nōs, nostrum or nostrī, we.
egredior, ēgrediēī, ēgressus sum, go out, depart, make a sally.
egregiēs, adv. (ēgregius, extraordinary), remarkably.
egregius, -a, -um, adj., extraordinary, unusual.
eligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, pick, choose.
emigrō, 1, go away, move away.
ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum (mittō, send), send forth, throw away; cast, hurl.
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēemptum, buy, purchase.
ēnāscor, -ī, -nātus sum (nāscor, be born), grow out, sprout forth.
ēnim, conj., for, in fact.
ēnūntiō, 1 (nūntiō, tell), disclose, make known; give out information.
eō, adv. (is, this, that), there, to that place.
eō, īre, īvi or īī, ītum, go, march, advance.
eōdem, adv. (īdem, the same), to the same place or point.
eques, equitium, m. (equus, horse), horseman, cavalryman; knight.
equester, -tris, -tre, adj. (eques, horseman), of cavalry, cavalry.
equītātus, -ūs, m. (cf. equus, horse), cavalry.
equus, -ī, m., horse.
ēripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, snatch away, take away; save.
ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, f., a bursting forth, sally, sortie.
Ēsuvii, -orum, m., a tribe in northwestern Gaul.
et, conj., and; et ... et, both ... and.
etiam, conj., and also, even, yet, furthermore; nōn sōlum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also.
eti, conj. (et, and + sī, if), even if, although.
ēvelliō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, pull out.
ēventus, -ūs, m. (cf. veniō, come), outcome, result.
ex, sec ē.
exagitō, 1 (agitō, frequentative of agō, drive), drive out; disturb, harass.
exanimō, 1, exhaust.
exaudiō, 4 (audiō, hear), hear from a distance; hear distinctly.
excēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (cēdō, go), go out or away, withdraw.
excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (capiō, take), take out; receive; sustain.
excursiō, excursiōnis, f. (cf. currō, run), a running out, sally, sortie.
exemplum, -īn, example, precedent.
exeō, -ēre, exīi, exītum (eō, go), go out, withdraw.
exercēō, 2, train, exercise.
exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis, f. (cf. exercēō, train), training, practice; skill.
exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. exercēō, train), trained, skilled.
exercitus, -ūs, m. (exercēō, train), trained body of men, army.
exiguitās, exiguitātis, f., scantiness, shortness.
eximius, -a, -um, adj., choice, excellent.
eximītātiō, existimātiōnis, f. (eximītō, estimate), judgment, opinion.
eximītō, 1, estimate, judge, deem, think, believe.
expeditus, -a, -um, adj. (expediō, set free), unencumbered, in light marching order; easy; disengaged.
expelē, -ere, expulē, expulsum (pelleō, drive), drive out, banish.
expeor, -īrī, -pertus sum, try, test.
explorātōr, explorātōris, m. (explorō, search), searcher, scout, spy.
explorō, 1, search, investigate, reconnoiter.
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY
V 25

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum (premō, press), press out, extort.
expugnō, i (pugnō, fight), take by storm, capture.
exquirō, -ere, -quisīvī, -quisītum (quaerō, search), search out; learn by inquiry.
exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum (sequor, follow), follow out; enforce.
exspectō, i (spectō, look at), look out for, expect, await.
extruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctum, pile up, build, rear.
extrā, prep. with acc., outside of, beyond.
extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of exterus, exterior; outermost, farthest, last; end of.
exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, burn up.

F

Fabius, -i, m., the name of a Roman gens. Quintus Fabius Maximus, conqueror of the Gauls in B.C. 121.
facile, facilius, facillimē, adv. (faciliis, easy), easily.
facilia, -e, faciliōr, faciliimus, adj. (faciō, do), easy to do, easy.
facinus, facinoris, n. (faciō, do), deed; misdeed, crime.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; pass. fiō, fieri, factus sum, do, make, build, perform; cause, furnish; fight; certiorēm facere, inform; facere verba, speak; vim facere, offer violence.
factiō, factiōnis, f., party, faction.
factum, -i, n. (faciō, do), deed, act, action.

facultās, facultātis, f., power, chance; resources.
fαllō, -ere, fēfellī, falsum, cheat, deceive, disappoint.
famēs, famia, f., hunger, famine.
familia, -ae, f., household; body of servants or retainers.
familīaris, -e, adj. (familia, household), personal, private; as a noun, close friend; with rēs, private property.
fās, n., indecl., right, divine right.
fastigātus, -a, -um, adj., sloping.
fātum, -i, n., lot, fate.
faveō, -ere, fāvī, faustum, favor.
felicitās, felicitātia, f., good fortune, success.
ferō, ferācis, adj. (ferō, bear), fruitful, fertile.
ferē, adv., almost, about.
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, bring; carry; endure; inflict; with molestē, be vexed; signa ferre, advance.
ferrum, -i, n., iron, spear point.
fertilitās, fertilitātis, f. (fertilis, fruitful), fruitfulness, fertility.
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, fierce, savage.
fidēs, -ei, f., trust, confidence; fidelity; promise; protection.
filia, -ae, dat. and abl. pl., filiābus, f., daughter.
filius, -ī, m., son.
fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum, form, shape, devise; control.
finis, finīs, m., end, limit; pl., borders, territory.
finītīmus, -a, -um, adj., neighboring, adjoining; masc. as noun, neighbor.
fiō, fieri, factus sum, see faciō, be made, be done, be brought about; happen; become.
firmus, -ā, -um, adj., strong, sturdy, brave.
Flaccus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. Gaius Valerius Flaccus, propraetor of the province of Gaul, b.c. 83.
flāgitō, ī, demand.
flēō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep.
flētus, -ūs, m. (flēō, weep), weeping.
flōrens, flōrentis, adj., blooming, flourishing.
flūmen, flūminis, n. (flūō, flow), river.
flō, -ere, flūxī, fluxum, flow.
fore = futūrus esse, see sum.
forō, fortis, f., chance; abl. as adv., by chance.
fortis, -ē, adj., brave, strong.
fortiter, adv. (fortis, brave), bravely.
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. (fortis, brave), bravery, courage.
fortūna, -ae, f. (fortis, chance), fortune, luck, chance; lot, condition; property.
fossa, -ae, f., ditch, trench, moat.
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break; crush, discourage.
frāter, frātris, m., brother.
frāternus, -ā, -um, adj. (frāter, brother), brotherly, of brother.
fremitus, -ūs, m., uproar, din.
frigus, frigoris, n., cold, frost.
frōns, frontis, f., forehead, front.
frūctuōsus, -ā, -um, adj. (cf. frūx, fruit), fruitful, productive.
frūmentarius, -ā, -um, adj. (frūmentum, grain), of grain; productive; with rés, grain supply.
frūmentum, -ī, n., grain, corn; pl., standing grain.
frūx, frūgis, f., fruit; pl., crops.
fuga, -ae, f., flight, retreat.
fugīō, -ere, fūgī, — (fuga, flight), flee.
fugītīvus, -ā, -um, adj. (fugīō, fēc), fleeing; masc. as noun, deserter.
fūmus, -ī, m., smoke.
funditōr, funditōris, m., slinger.
fūrōr, fūrōris, m., rage, madness.
futūrus, fut. part. of sum.

G
Gabōnius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. Aulus Gabōnius, a consul.
Gaius, -ī, m., a Roman given name.
Galba, -ae, m., a king of the Sues-
Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, corresponding in general to France.
Gállica, -ae, f., Gallia.
Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.
Garumna, -ae, m., a river of south-western Gaul.
Genava, -ae, f., the city of Geneva.
generātīm, adv. (genus, tribe), by tribes.
gēns, gentis, f., tribe, race, clan.
genius, generis, n., tribe, race; kind, nature.
Germānus, -ā, -um, German; generally masc. pl., the Germans.
gerū, -ere, gessi, gestum, bear, carry; carry on, wage; manage; pass., be done, occur; rēs gestae, achievements.
gladius, -ī, m., sword.
glōria, -ae, f., fame, reputation, glory.
glória, fame), boast, glory.
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek.
Grāioceli, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the
western Alps.
grandis, -e, adj., large.
grātia, -ae, f. (grātus, pleasing),
favor, good will, popularity; grā-
tiam referre, show gratitude;
gratiās agere, thank.
grātulātiō, grātulātiōnis, f. (grātu-
lor, show joy), a show of joy, re-
joicing, thanksgiving.
grātulor, r (grātus, pleasing), show
joy; congratulate.
grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, ac-
ceptable; neut. as noun, favor.
gravis, -e, adj., heavy, severe.
graviter, adv. (gravis, heavy), heav-
ily, seriously, bitterly.
gravor, r (gravis, heavy), be bur-
dened; be unwilling.

honōris, -a, -um (honōs, honor
+ faciō, make), conferring honor.
honōs, honōris, m., honor, respect;
 honorable position.
hōra, -ae, f., hour.
horreō, -ēre, horruī, —, tremble at,
shudder at.
hortor, r, encourage, urge.
hospes, hospītis, m. and f., host;
friend, guest-friend.
hospitium, -i, n. (hospes, host), feel-
ing of hospitality, friendship.
hostis, hostīs, m. and f., public
enemy, foe.
hūc, adv. (cf. hīc, this), to this place.
hūmanitās, hūmanītātis, f., hu-
manity; refinement, culture.

I
iacō, -ēre, iacuī, —, lie, lie dead.
ialī, -ēre, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl;
throw up, construct.
ialtus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Remi.
icius, -i, m., generally
its, -i, m., blow, stroke.
īdēs, see Īdūs.
īdem, eadem, idem, demonstr. pron.
(is, this, that), this same, the same.
idemidem, adv. (idem, the same),
repeatedly.
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable,
proper.
Īdūs, Īduum, f. pl., the Ides, the 15th
of March, May, July, and October;
the 13th of the other months.
ignis, ignis, m., fire.
IGNORO, I, not know, be ignorant; overlook.
IGNOREO, -ERE, -NOVI, -NUTUM, forgive, pardon.
ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, demonst. pron., that, that one; he, she, it.
ILLIC, adv. (ille, that), in that place, there.
ILLYRICUM, -I, n., a Roman province on the east shore of the Adriatic.
IMMORTALIS, -I, adj. (cf. mors, death), immortal.
IMPEDIMENTUM, -I, n. (impedito, hinder), hindrance; pl., baggage (of an army), baggage train.
IMPEDITO, 4 (cf. pes, foot), hinder, obstruct, delay.
IMPEDITUS, -A, -UM, adj. (perf. part. of impedito, hinder), hindered, delayed, burdened; at a disadvantage.
IMPELLO, -ERE, IMPULSI, IMPULSUM (pellō, drive), drive on, incite, impel, influence.
IMPENDEO, -ERE, —, —, overhang.
IMPERATOR, IMPERATORIS, m. (impero, command), commander in chief, general.
IMPERATUM, -I, n. (impero, command), command, order.
IMPERITUS, -A, -UM (peritus, experienced), inexperienced, ignorant.
IMPERIUM, -I, n. (impero, command), command, dictation; authority, supreme power; supremacy, dominion.
IMPERO, 1, demand from, enjoin upon; command, order, instruct.
IMPETRO, 1, obtain, obtain one's request, gain.
IMPETUS, -US, m., attack, charge; fury, force.
IMPLORO, 1, beseech, beg, entreat.
IMPONO, -ERE, -POSUI, -POSITUM (ponō, place), place on, place; impose.
IMPORTO, 1 (portō, carry), bring in, import.
IMPROMIS, adv. (prīmus, first), particularly, especially.
IMPROBUS, -A, -UM, adj., wicked, malicious.
IMPROVISIO, IMPROVISUS, unex-
expected, suddenly.
IMPROVISUS, -A, -UM, adj. (prōvideo, foresee), unforeseen, unexpected; dē improviso, unexpectedly.
IMPNIO, 1 (pugnō, fight), fight against, attack.
IMPUNE, adv. (cf. poena, punishment), without punishment.
IMPUNITAS, IMPUNITAS, f. (cf. poena, punishment), freedom from punishment, impunity.
in, prep. with acc. and abl.; with acc., (a) with verbs of motion, into, to; against; among; into the country of, towards; (b) with expressions of time, for, during; (c) other uses, toward, with regard to, over; with abl., in, within, on, among, over, in the case of.
INCENDO, -ERE, INCENDI, -CENSUM, set on fire.
INCIDO, -ERE, INCIDI, — (cadō, fall), fall upon, fall in with, meet; happen.
INCIDO, -ERE, INCIDI, -CISUM (cadō, cut), cut into, notch.
INCIPIO, -ERE, -CÆPI, -CEPTUM (capio, take), undertake, begin, commence.
INCITO, 1, arouse, urge on.
incolō, -ere, -coluī, —, inhabit, live in; live, dwell.
incolūmis, -e, adj., unhurt, unharmed, safe.
incommodum, -ī, n., inconvenience; disaster, loss, defeat.
incrēdibilis, -e, adj. (cf. crēdō, believe), incredible, extraordinary.
increpitō, i, blame, upbraid, abuse.
icursor, -ūs, m., attack, onset.
icusō, i (cf. causa, case, charge), bring a charge against; reproach, blame.
inde, adv., from that place, from there; then.
indicium, -īn, n., information; per dicium, through spies.
indicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum (dīcō, say), proclaim, appoint.
indignitās, indignitātis, f. (dignitas, worth), unworthiness; insult, outrage.
indiligenter, adv. (diligenter, carefully), carelessly.
dūcō, -ere, -duxi, -ductum (ducō, lead), lead on, influence; cover.
dulugeō, -ère, -dulsi, -dultum, favor.
dūō, -ere, induī, indūtum, put on.
inēō, -ire, inii, initum (ēō, go), enter upon, begin, undertake.
inermis, -e, adj. (arma, arms), unarmed.
infēro, -ferre, intuli, illātum (ferō, bear), bring in or into; wage upon, inflict; offer; cause; signa infere, advance, charge.
inferus, -a, -um, adj., low; comp., inferior, -ius, lower; superl., infimus or imus, -a, -um, lowest, lowest part of, bottom.
inflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, bend down, bend.
infuō, -ere, -fūxi, -fluxum (fuō, flow), flow into, empty into.
ingēns, ingentis, adj., huge, enormous, large.
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum, enter.
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iacō, throw), throw into or upon; inspire, infuse.
inimicus, -a, -um, adj. (amicus, friendly), unfriendly, hostile; masc. as noun, enemy.
iniquitās, iniquitātis, f. (iniquus, unequal), unevenness, inequality.
iniquus, -a, -um, adj. (aequus, equal, just), unjust, unequal; unfavorable.
initium, -ī, n. (ineō, go into), beginning.
inīuria, -ae, f. (iūs, right), wrong, injustice, injury, outrage; abl. as adv., wrongfully.
iniusūs, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m. (iubeō, order), without command or orders.
ināscor, -i, -nātus sum (nāscor, be born), be born in, spring up, arise.
initor, -i, -nīxus sum (nītor, rest on), lean upon.
incentia, -ae, f., integrity, uprightness.
inopia, -ae, f., lack, need, scarcity.
inopināns, inopīnantis, adj., not expecting, off one’s guard.
incisēns, incisentis, adj. (sciō, know), not knowing, unaware, ignorant.
insequor, -ī, -secūtus sum (sequor, follow), follow up, follow, pursue.
insidiae, -ārum, f., ambush, ambuscade; treachery; cunning.

insigne, insignis, n. (insignis, marked), mark, sign; ornament.

insignis, insignis, adj. (cf. signum, mark), marked; distinguished, remarkable.

insiliō, -īre, -sīlui, -sūltum, leap upon.

insistō, -ere, institi, —, step upon.

insolenter, adv., haughtily, arrogantly.

instar, indecl. n., image; with gen., like.

institūō, -ere, -stitūi, -stitūtum: (statūō, set up), put in place, draw up; train, educate.

institutum, -ī, n. (institūō, put in place), habit, custom, practice.

instō, -āre, institi, instātum, stand near, come near, approach.

instruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum, build upon, erect; draw up, arrange.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, know, understand, perceive; find out, learn.

inter, prep. with acc., between, among, in the midst of; during; inter sē dare, exchange; inter sē differre, differ from each other.

intercedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, go), go or come between, be between, intervene.

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (capiō, take), take between; intercept.

interculō, -ere, -clúsi, -clūsum (claudō, close), shut off, cut off.

interdicō, -ere, -diixī, -dictum (dicō, speak), forbid, exclude, banish.

interdiū, adv. (cf. diēs, day), by day.

interdum, adv. (dum, while), at times, sometimes.

interea, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -flectum (faciö, make), kill, slay.

intericiō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (iacō, throw), hurl between, place among; in pass., intervene.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interior, -ius, comp. adj., inner; superl., intimus, innermost.

intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missum (mittō, send), leave off, cease, stop.

interniciō, interneciōnias, f. (necō, kill), extermination, annihilation.

interpellō, 1, interrupt, hinder, interfere with.

interpŏnō, -ere, -posui, -positum (pŏnō, place), place between, interpose; propose.

interpretās, interpretis, m. and f., interpreter.

interscindō, -ere, interscidī, interscissum, cut in two, cut down; destroy.

intersum, -esse, interfui, — (sum, be), be between, intervene; concern.

intervallum, -ī, n. (vallum, rampart), interval; distance.

intexō, -ere, -texui, -textum, weave in, interweave.

intrā, prep. with acc., within, inside.

intrō, 1, go into, enter.

intrūdōcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum (ducō, lead), lead into, bring into.

intrūmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum
(mittō, send), send in; let in, admit.
intrōsus, adv., within.
intueor, 2 (tueor, look), look at, gaze upon.
inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. ūtor, use), unusual, uncommon, strange.
inūtilis, -e, adj. (cf. ūtor, use), useless, worthless.
inveniō, -ēre, -vēnī, -ventum (veniō, come), come upon, find; learn.
inveterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī, — (cf. vetus, old), grow old; become fixed.
invictus, -a, -um, adj. (vincō, conquer), unconquered; unconquerable.
invīdeo, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum (videō, see), look askance at; envy.
invītō, 1, invite, ask.
invītus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling; sē invitō, against his will.
ipsa, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius, intens. pron., self, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, them; very; in genitive, own.
irācundus, -a, -um, adj., irritable, passionate.
irrīdeo, -ēre, -risī, -risum, laugh at, mock.
irridiculē, adv., without wit.
is, ea, id, demonstr. pron., this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; such; in genitive, his, her, hers, its, their.
ita, adv., so, in such a way, thus; just as.
Ītalia, -ae, f., Italy.
itaque, conj. (ita, so + que, and), and so, therefore, accordingly.
item, adv., in like manner, likewise, besides.
iter, itineris, n. (eō, go), march, journey, progress; route, road; line of march; iter facere, march; magnum iter, forced march.
iterum, adv., again, a second time.
iuba, -ae, f., mane (of a horse).
iueō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, order, command.
iūdicium, -i, n. (cf. iūdicō, judge), court, trial; opinion, judgment.
iūdicō, 1, judge, decide; think.
iugum, -i, n. (iungō, join), yoke; ridge, height.
iūmentum, -i, n. (iungō, join), draft animal, beast of burden, pack animal.
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūncutum, join.
Iūra, -ae, m., the fura mountains.
iūrō, 1 (iūs, right), take oath, swear.
iūs, iūris, n., right, law, justice.
iūs iūrandī, iūris iūrandī, n. (iūs, right and iūrō, swear), oath.
iūstitia, -ae, f. (iūstus, just), justice, fairness; uprightness.
iūstus, -a, -um, adj. (iūs, right), just, proper.
iuvō, -āre, iuvī, iūtum, help, assist.
iūxtā, adv., next, near.

K
Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Calends, the first day of each Roman month.

L
L., abbr. for Luctus, a Roman given name.
Labienus, -I, m., the name of a Roman gens. Titus Labienus, a favorite officer of Caesar.
labor, labôris, m., toil, effort, hardship.
labôrō, 1 (labor, toil), toil, strive for; be hard pressed.
lacessō, -ere, lacessivī, lacessitum, harass, provoke, annoy; attack.
lacrima, -ae, f., tear.
lacus, -ūs, m., lake.
lapis, lapidis, m., stone.
largior, 4 (cf. largier, generously), give generously; bribe.
largier, adv., generously, much; largier posse, have great influence.
largītō, largitōnīs, f. (largior, give generously), liberality; bribery.
lassitūdō, lassitūdinis, f., weariness, exhaustion.
lātē, adv. (lātus, broad), broadly, widely.
lateō, -ère, latuī, —, lie hid.
lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f. (lātus, broad), breadth.
Latobrigiī, -īrum, m., a Gallic tribe in western Germany.
lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive.
latus, lateris, n., side, flank (of an army).
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory.
laxō, t, widen, extend, open.
lēgātiō, légātiōnis, f. (cf. lēgātus, ambassador), embassy, commission.
lēgātus, -i, m., ambassador, commissioner, envoy; lieutenant, staff-officer.
legiō, legiōnis, f., legion.
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. (legiō, legion), belonging to a legion, legionary.
Lemannus, -i, m., Lake Geneva.
lēnitās, lēnitātis, f. (cf. lēniter, smoothly), smoothness, gentleness.
lēniter, adv., smoothly, gently, gradually.
Leucī, -ŏrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
levis, -e, adj., light (in weight).
levitās, levitātis, f. (levis, light), lightness; fickleness.
lēx, légis, f., law.
libenter, adv., willingly, gladly.
liber, -era, -ērum, adj., free; undisputed.
liberālitās, liberālitātis, f. (cf. liber, free), generosity.
liberālīter, adv. (cf. liber, free), generously, kindly.
liberē, adv. (liber, free), freely.
liberi, -ŏrum, m. (liber, free), children (of free parents).
libertas, libertātis, f. (liber, free), freedom, liberty.
liceor, 2, bid (at an auction).
lícet, -ère, licuit, impers., it is lawful, permitted, allowed.
Lingōnēs, -um, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language.
linter, lintria, f., small boat, skiff.
Liscus, -ī, m., a magistrate of the Aeduans.
littera, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter, epistle.
locus, -i, m., pl. loca, -ŏrum, n., place, position, locality; room, chance, opportunity; condition, state.
longē, adv. (longus, long), far, at a distance; by far.
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. longus, long), long continued.
longitūdō, longitūdinis, f. (longus, long), length.
longus, -a, -um, adj., long; distant; extended.
loquor, -i, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
lūna, -ae, f., moon.
lūx, lūcis, f., light; primā lūce, at daybreak.
lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury.

M
M., abbr. for Mārcus.
māchinātiō, māchinātiōnis, f., contrivance, machine; engine.
magis, comp. adv., see magnopere.
magistrātus, -ūs, m., public office, magistracy, administration; public officer, magistrate.
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f. (magnus, great), greatness, size, extent.
magnopere, adv. (magnus, great), greatly, much, earnestly; comp., magis, more, rather; superl., maximē, most, very, especially.
magnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large, serious; comp., maior, -ius; superl., maximus, -a, -um.
maior, maioris, comp. of magnus, greater; maior nātū, elder; masc. pl. as a noun, ancestors.
male, adv., badly, adversely; comp., peius, worse; superl., pessimē, worst.
maleficium, -ī, n. (male, badly + faciō, do), evil deed, mischief, harm, outrage.
malus, -a, -um, adj., bad, evil; comp., peior; superl., pessimus.
mandātum, -ī, n. (mandō, intrust), instructions, order, command, message.
mandō, 1 (manus, hand + dō, give), give over, intrust; command, direct, instruct.
maneō, -ere, mānsī, mānsūm, remain, stay; in eō manēre, abide by that.
manipulus, -ī, m., company (of soldiers); maniple (third of a cohort).
mānsuētūdō, mānsuētūdinis, f., gentleness, kindness.
manus, -ūs, f., hand; force, band.
Marcomannī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany.
Mārcus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.
marītus, -a, -um, adj., of the sea, maritime.
Marius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. Gaius Marius, a famous Roman general; defeated the Cimbri and the Teutoni.
matara, -ae, f., javelin.
māter, mātris, f., mother; mātrēs familiae, married women, matrons.
mātrimōnium, -ī, n. (māter, mother), marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to take in marriage, marry.
Matrona, -ae, m., a river in northern Gaul; the modern Marne.
mātūrē, mātūrius, mātūrrimē, adv. (mātūrus, ripe), early, quickly.
mātūrō, 1 (mātūrus, ripe), ripen; hasten.
mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe, early; comp., mātūrior; superl., mātūr·rimus.
maximē, adv., see magnopere.
### LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maximus, -a, -um, adj., see magnus.</td>
<td><strong>Maximus, -i, m., see Fabius.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mediocriter, adv. (cf. medius, in the middle of), moderately, in an ordinary degree.</td>
<td><strong>Mediocriter, adv. (cf. medius, in the middle of), moderately, in an ordinary degree.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medius, -a, -um, adj., in the middle of, in the middle of, mid-.</td>
<td><strong>Medius, -a, -um, adj., in the middle of, in the middle of, mid-</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memoria, -ae, f., memory, recollection, tradition.</td>
<td><strong>Memoria, -ae, f., memory, recollection, tradition.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menapii, -orum, m., a tribe of Belgians.</td>
<td><strong>Menapii, -orum, m., a tribe of Belgians.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēns, mentis, f., mind; thought.</td>
<td><strong>Mēns, mentis, f., mind; thought.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēnais, mēnais, m., month.</td>
<td><strong>Mēnais, mēnais, m., month.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mercātor, mercātoris, m., trader, merchant.</td>
<td><strong>Mercātor, mercātoris, m., trader, merchant.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mercēs, mercēdis, f., price, hire, pay.</td>
<td><strong>Mercēs, mercēdis, f., price, hire, pay.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēro, 2, deserve, earn.</td>
<td><strong>Mēro, 2, deserve, earn.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mērīdeis, -ēi, m. (medius, mid- + diēs, day), midday, noon.</td>
<td><strong>Mērīdeis, -ēi, m. (medius, mid- + diēs, day), midday, noon.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merĭtum, -ī, n. (mēroer, deserve), desert, merit.</td>
<td><strong>Merĭtum, -ī, n. (mēroer, deserve), desert, merit.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messāla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. Marcus Valerius Messala, consul B.C. 61.</td>
<td><strong>Messāla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. Marcus Valerius Messala, consul B.C. 61.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>métior, -īri, mēnus sum, measure, deal out.</td>
<td><strong>Métior, -īri, mēnus sum, measure, deal out.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metius, -ī, m., Marcus Metius, a friend of Ariovistus.</td>
<td><strong>Metius, -ī, m., Marcus Metius, a friend of Ariovistus.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miles, militis, m., soldier.</td>
<td><strong>Miles, militis, m., soldier.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milia, see mille.</td>
<td><strong>Milia, see mille.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militāris, -e, adj. (miles, soldier), of a soldier, military; rēs militāris, art of war.</td>
<td><strong>Militāris, -e, adj. (miles, soldier), of a soldier, military; rēs militāris, art of war.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mille, indecl. num., adj., a thousand; pl. as noun, milia, milium, n., thousands; milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles.</td>
<td><strong>Mille, indecl. num., adj., a thousand; pl. as noun, milia, milium, n., thousands; milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimē, superl. adv., see parum.</td>
<td><strong>Minimē, superl. adv., see parum.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimum, adv. (minimus, least), very little; minimum posse, have very little power.</td>
<td><strong>Minimum, adv. (minimus, least), very little; minimum posse, have very little power.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimus, -a, -um, superl. adj., see parvus.</td>
<td><strong>Minimus, -a, -um, superl. adj., see parvus.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, minus, comp. adj., see parvus.</td>
<td><strong>Minor, minus, comp. adj., see parvus.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minūō, -ere, minūi, minūtum (minus, less), lessen, diminish.</td>
<td><strong>Minuō, -ere, minūi, minūtum (minus, less), lessen, diminish.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minus, comp. adv., see parum.</td>
<td><strong>Minus, comp. adv., see parum.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrōr, i, wonder.</td>
<td><strong>Mīrōr, i, wonder.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrus, -a, -um (mīrōr, wonder), wonderful, strange; mīrum in modum, astonishingly.</td>
<td><strong>Mīrus, -a, -um (mīrōr, wonder), wonderful, strange; mīrum in modum, astonishingly.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser, -era, -erum, adj., miserior, miserrimus, unhappy, wretched, miserable.</td>
<td><strong>Miser, -era, -erum, adj., miserior, miserrimus, unhappy, wretched, miserable.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misericordia, -ae, f., pity, mercy.</td>
<td><strong>Misericordia, -ae, f., pity, mercy.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miseror, i (miser, unhappy), lament, bemoan, deplore.</td>
<td><strong>Miseror, i (miser, unhappy), lament, bemoan, deplore.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō, -ere, misi, missum, send; hurl.</td>
<td><strong>Mittō, -ere, misi, missum, send; hurl.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōbilitās, mōbilitātis, f., changeable-ness, fickleness.</td>
<td><strong>Mōbilitās, mōbilitātis, f., changeable-ness, fickleness.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modo, adv. (abl. of modus, measure), only; nōn modo ... sed etiam, not only ... but also.</td>
<td><strong>Modo, adv. (abl. of modus, measure), only; nōn modo ... sed etiam, not only ... but also.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modus, -ī, m., measure, manner, kind; quem ad modum, as, how.</td>
<td><strong>Modus, -ī, m., measure, manner, kind; quem ad modum, as, how.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moenia, moenum, n., city walls, walls.</td>
<td><strong>Moenia, moenum, n., city walls, walls.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molestē, adv., with annoyance; molestē ferre, be vexed.</td>
<td><strong>Molestē, adv., with annoyance; molestē ferre, be vexed.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molimentum, -i, n., exertion, trouble.</td>
<td><strong>Molimentum, -i, n., exertion, trouble.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molō, -ere, molūi, molūtum, grind.</td>
<td><strong>Molō, -ere, molūi, molūtum, grind.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēō, 2, warn, advise, instruct.</td>
<td><strong>Monēō, 2, warn, advise, instruct.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōns, montis, m., mountain.</td>
<td><strong>Mōns, montis, m., mountain.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mora, -ae, f., delay.</td>
<td><strong>Mora, -ae, f., delay.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morinī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.</td>
<td><strong>Morinī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morior, morī or morīrī, mortuus sum (mors, death), die.</td>
<td><strong>Moriōr, morī or morīrī, mortuus sum (mors, death), die.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moror, i (mora, delay), delay, wait; hinder.</td>
<td><strong>Moriōr, morī or morīrī, mortuus sum (mors, death), die.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mors, mortis, f., death.</td>
<td><strong>Mors, mortis, f., death.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom.</td>
<td><strong>Mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Latin-English Vocabulary**

mŏveō, -ēre, mŏvi, mŏtum, move, stir, remove; with castra, break.
mulier, mulieris, f., woman.
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. (multus, much), great number, multitude, crowd; the common people.
multō, adv. (multus, much), by far, much.
multum, plūs, plūrinum, adv. (multus, much). much, very greatly.
multus, -a, -um, adj., much; pl., many; masc. pl. as noun, many persons; neut. pl. as noun, many things; ad multam noctem, till late at night; multō diē, late in the day; comp., plūs, plūris, more; pl., several, many; superl., plūrissimus, -a, -um, most; pl. as noun, very many; quam plūrimi, as many as possible.
mūnimentum, -i, n. (mūniō, fortify), fortification, defense.
mūniō, 4, defend with a wall, fortify, protect.
mūntiō, mūntiōnis, f. (mūniō, fortify), a fortifying; rampart, fortification; strength.
mūnus, mūneris, n., present, gift.
mūrus, -ī, m., wall.

**N**
nactus, -a, -um, see nanciscor.

nam, conj., for.
Nammēius, -ī, m., a prominent Helvetian.

namque, conj. (nam, for), for.
nanciscor, -ī, nactus sum, get, meet with, find.

'nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born; spring up, rise.

Nasua, -ae, m., a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Cimmerius.
nātīō, nātiōnis, f. (nāscor, be born), race, tribe, people.
nātūra, -ae, f. (nāscor, be born), nature, character, disposition.
nātus, -ūs, m. (nāscor, be born), birth; maior nātū, elder.
nāvicula, -ae, f. (diminutive of nāvis, ship), small boat, skiff.
nāvis, nāvis, f., ship.

nāvō, 1, do well; with operam, do one’s best.
nē, 1. conj., that not, in order that not, lest; not; 2. adv., nē . . quidem, not even.

-nē, enclitic, merely the sign of a question; utrum . . . necne, whether . . . or not.

nec, see neque.
necessāriō, adv. (necessārius, necessary), necessarily, of necessity.
necessārius, -a, -um, adj., necessary, urgent; critical; masc. as noun, kinsman, friend.
necessitās, necessitātis, f. (cf. necessārius, necessary), necessity, urgency.
necessitūdō, necessitudinis, f. (cf. incessārius, kinsman), close relations, intimacy.
necne, conj., or not.

 necō, 1 (nex, death), put to death.
egneglēgō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, disregard, neglect.
egnegō, 1, say . . . not.
egnōtium, -i, n., business, concern, task, undertaking; trouble.
Nemētēs, -um, m., a tribe living on the border of Germany and Gaul.
nēmō, dat. nēmini, acc. nēminem, m. and f. (nē, not + homō, man), no one, nobody.
neque, nec (nē, not + que, and), and not, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.
ñēquīquam, adv. (nē, not + quisquam, any), in no way, to no purpose, in vain.
Nervii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians. nervus, -ī, m., sinew; pl., force, strength.
neu, conj., see nēve.
neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. neutrius, adj. (nē, not + uter, which of two), neither.
nēve, neu, conj., and not, and lest, nor.
nex, necis, f., death.
nihil, indecl. n., nothing; as adv., not at all.
nihilō, adv. (nihil, nothing), by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless.
nisi, conj. (si, if), if not, unless, except.
nitor, -i, nīxus sum, rest on, depend on.
nōbilia, -e, adj., well-known, noted; noble.
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f. (nōbilia, well-known), fame; the nobility; noble birth, high rank.
noctū, adv. (nox, night), by night. nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. (nox, night), night, by night.
ñōlō, nōlle, nōli, — (nē, not + volō, wish), not wish, be unwilling.
nōmēn, nōminis, n., name; suō nōmine, on his own account.
nōminātim, adv. (nōminō, name), by name, one by one, expressly.
nōminō, 1 (nōmen, name), call by name, name, mention.
nōn, adv., not; nōn iam, no longer. nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., ninety.
nōndum, adv., not yet.
nōnnūlus, -a, -um, gen. nōnnūlius, adj. (nūlūs, no), some, several.
nōnnumquam, adv. (numquam, never), sometimes.
nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. (novem, nine), ninth.
Nōrēia, -ae, f., chief town of the Norici.
Nōricus, -a, -um, Norican, of the Norici, a tribe in modern western Austria.
nōs, nostrum or nostrī, pl. of ego, we.
noster, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. (nōs, we), our, ours; masc. pl. as noun, our men.
novem, indecl. num. adj., nine.
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Suessiones in Belgic Gaul.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new, novel, unusual; novae rēs, revolution, change of government; novissimum agmen, the rear; masc. pl. as noun, the rear.
nox, noctis, f., night.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsi, nūptum, marry, of women only.
nūdō, 1 (nūdus, naked), make bare, strip; leave unprotected.
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, bare, unprotected.
nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūllius, adj. (nē, not + ullūs, any), not any, no; as noun, no one, none.
um, interrog. particle, hinting a negative answer.
numerī, -ī, m., number, amount; in numerō, among.
Numidae, -ārum, m., a tribe of barbarians in northern Africa.
umquam, adv. (nē, not + um quam, ever), never.
nunc, adv., now.
nūntiō, i (nūntius, messenger), announce, report.
nūntius, -ī, m. (novus, new), messenger; message.
nūper (noviper), superl. nūperrimē, adv., recently.
nūtus, -ūs, m., nod; command.

O
ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for.
obaerātus, -a, -um, adj., in debt; masc. as noun, debtor, serv.
odbūcō, -ere, -düxi, -ductum (dücō, lead), lead towards; extend.
obiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (iaciō, throw), throw in the way, place in front, expose.
obitus, -ūs, m., destruction.
obliviscor, -i, oblivitus sum, forget.
obscurō, i, implore, entreat.
observō, i (servō, keep safe), watch over, guard; regard.
obses, obsidias, m. and f., hostage.
obsignō, i, seal.
obstringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, bind, pledge.
obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (teneō, hold), hold, keep, possess.
obtuli, see offerō.
obveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum (veniō, come), come to, come upon, meet.
occāsus, -ūs, m. (caddō, fall), a going down, setting.
occīdō, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum (caedō, cut), cut down, slay, kill; masc. of the perf. part. as noun, the dead.
occultā, i, hide, conceal.
occultus, -a, -um, adj., hidden, secret; in occultō, in secret, in hiding.
ockupō, i, seize, occupy; employ.
occurrō, -ere, -currī, -currum, run in the way of, meet, come against; attend to.
Ōceanus, -i, m., ocean, the Atlantic.
Ocelum, -i, n., a town in western Cisalpine Gaul.
octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. (octō, eight), eighth.
ocτō, indecl. num. adj., eight.
ocτōgintā, indecl. num. adj., (cf. octō, eighty).
occulus, -i, m., eye.
ōdī, ōdisse, defective, perf. tenses used with meaning of pres., hate.
offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, hurt, harm.
offensīō, offensīōnis, f. (offendō, hurt), offense.
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum (ferō, bear), bring towards, offer; carry, take.
officium, -i, n., service, duty, allegiance.
ominīō, adv. (omnis, all), in all, entirely; at all.
omnis, -e, adj., all, every, entire; masc. pl. as noun, all; neut. pl. as noun, all things.
onus, oneris, n., load, burden, weight.
operā, -ae, f. (opus, work), work, exertion; dare operam, do one’s best.
v 38

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

opiniō, opiniōnis, f., idea, impression, expectation, reputation.
oporetet, -ēre, oportuit, impers., it is necessary, it is proper; translated personally, must, ought.
oppidānus, -i, m. (oppidum, town), townsman.
oppidum, -i, n., fortified town, town.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, lucky, convenient, advantageous.
oppimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum (premō, press), press down, crush, overwhelm.
oppunātiō, oppunātiōnis, f. (oppunō, fight against), assault, attack; method of assault.
oppunō, i (pugnō, fight), fight against, assault, attack, storm.
ops, opis, f., help, aid; pl., wealth, resources, power.
optrimē, adv., superl. of bene, see benē.
opimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of bonus, see bonus.
1. opus, operis, n., work, labor; fortification.
2. opus, indecl. n., need, necessity; opus est, there is need.
orātiō, orātiōnis, f. (orō, speak), a speaking, speech, address.
orō, ordinis, m., row, rank; order, arrangement; primī ordinēs, centurions of the first rank.
Orgetorix, Orgetorīgis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetians.
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, rise, begin, start; be descended from; oriēns sōl, rising sun; east.
ornāmentum, -i, n., decoration, adornment.
orō, i, speak; beg, entreat, plead.

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in extreme western Gaul.
ostenō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum (tendō, stretch), stretch out before; show, display; assert.

P

P, abbr. for Publius, a Roman given name.
pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis, f. (pābulum, fodder), foraging.
pābulum, -i, n., fodder.
pācō, i (pāx, peace), make peaceful, subdue, pacify.
paene, adv., nearly, almost.
pāgus, -i, m., district, canton.
palūs, palūdis, f., swamp, marsh.
pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, spread out, stretch out, extend.
pār, paris, adj., equal, similar, like.
pāratūs, -a, -um, adj. (parō, prepare), prepared, ready.
pāreō, 2, appear; obey, yield to.
pārō, i, prepare, get ready.
pars, partis, f., part, portion; side, quarter; direction; quā ex parte, and for this reason; magnā ex parte, to a large extent.
partim, adv. (pars, part), partly; partim . . . partim, some . . . others.
parum, minus, minimē, adv. (cf. parvus, small), little or too little, less, least.
parvulus, -a, -um, adj. (diminutive of parvus, small), very small, slight.
parvus, -a, -um, minor, minimus, adj., small or little, less, least.
1. passus, -a, -um, perf. part. of pandō.
2. passus, -ūs, m., double step; pace, five Roman feet; mille passūs, a mile.

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum
(pateō, lie open; faciō, make), lay open, open up, open.

patēns, patentis, adj. (pres. part. of pateō, lie open), open.
pateō, -ēre, patuī, —, lie open; extend, reach.
pater, patris, m., father.
patrior, -i, passus sum, suffer, endure; allow, permit.
patrius, -a, -um, adj. (pater, father), of a father, ancestral.
pauci. -ae, -a, adj., few; as noun, a few persons or things.
paulātim, adv. (cf. paulum, a little), little by little, gradually.
paulisper, adv. (cf. paulum, a little), for a short time.
paulō, adv. (cf. paulum, a little), a little, somewhat.
paululum, adv. (diminutive of paulum, a little), a very little.
paulum, adv., a little, somewhat.
pāx, pācis, f., peace.
peccō, i, do wrong, sin.
pedes, peditis, m. (pēs, foot), foot-soldier; pl., infantry.
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. (pēs, foot), on foot; referring to soldiers, infantry.
Pedius, -i, m., the name of a Roman gens. Quintus Pedius, a lieutenant of Caesar.

peior, -ius, comp. of malus, see malus.
pellis, pellis, f., skin, hide.
pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, drive, drive out, rout; defeat.

pendō, -ere, pependi, pēnsum, weigh, weigh out, pay.

per, prep. with acc., through, by way of; over; by, by means of, through the help of; on account of.
percontātiō, percontātiōnis, f., inquiring, questioning.

perducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum (dūcō, lead), lead through; build, construct.
pereō, -ire, perīi, perītum (eō, go), be destroyed, perish.

perfacilis, -e, adj. (facilis, easy), very easy.

perfērō, -ferre, pertuli, perlātum (ferō, bear), carry through; carry among, spread; bear, endure, suffer, undergo.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (faciō, make), carry through, carry out, complete, bring about, accomplish, cause.

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum (frangō, break), break through.

perfugā, -ae, m. (perfugiō, flee), desert.

perfugiō, -ere, -fugiō, -fugītum (fugio, flee), flee for refuge, seek refuge with; desert.

periclitor, i (periculum, trial, danger), try, test, make a test.

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj. (periculum, danger), dangerous.

periculum, -ī, n., trial, danger, risk.

peritus, -a, -um, adj., tried, skilled, experienced.

perlatus, see perferō.

permanēō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum (maneō, remain), stay through, remain; continue.
permittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum (mittō, send), yield, allow, permit.

permoveō, -ère, -mōvi, -mōtum (moveō, move), move thoroughly; arouse, alarm, influence.

pernicīēs, -ēī, f. (cf. nēx, death), destruction, ruin.

perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. (pauci, few), very few.

perpetuō, adv. (perpetuus, continuous), continuously.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, lasting; entire.

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through, force a passage.

persequor, -i, -secūtus sum (sequor, follow), follow up.

persevērō, ī, persist, persevere.

persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum, pay in full, pay; suffer.

perspicīō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum, look through, see through; understand, perceive.

persuādeō, -ère, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade, induce, convince.

perterreō, 2, frighten thoroughly, terrify, dismay.

pertinācia, -ae, f. (pertineō, hold through), stubbornness, obstinacy.

pertineō, -ère, -tinui, — (teneō, hold), hold through, extend, reach; pertain, concern.

perturbō, i, disturb thoroughly, throw into confusion.

perveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum (veniō, come), come to, arrive at, reach.

pēs, pedis, m., foot; pedem referre, retreat.

petō, -ere, petīvī or petīi, petitum, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for; beg, ask.

phalanz, phalangia, f., a compact body (of soldiers), phalanx.

plum, -i, n., heavy javelin.

Pisō, Pisōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. (1) Marcus Pu- pius Piso, consul b.c. 61, i. 26; 690. (2) Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, consul b.c. 58, father-in-law of Caesar, i. 110; 218. (3) Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, consul b.c. 112, grandfather of (2), i. 218.

placeō, 2, please; impers., it pleases.

plānítēs, -ēī, f., plain.

plēbēs, -ei, or plēbs, plēbis, f., people, common people.

plērumque, adv. (plērusque, the larger part of), for the most part, generally.

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj., the larger part of, most of.

plūrimum, adv. (plūrimum, most), superl. of multum, most, very much; plūrimum posse, be very powerful; plūrimum valēre, be the most influential.

plūrimum, -a, -um, adj., superl. of multus, see multus.

plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus, see multus.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty.

polliceor, 2, promise, offer.

pondus, ponderis, n. (cf. pendō, weigh), weight.

pōnō, -ere, posui, positum, place, put, establish; with castra, pitch.

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

poposcī, see poscō.

populātiōnis, f. (popu-
lor, devastate), devastation, ravaging.

populor, i, devastate, lay waste, ravage, pilage.

populus, -i, m., people, a people, nation.

porrectus, -a, -um, adj., extended.

porta, -ae, f., gate.

portō, i, carry, take, transport.

portōrium, -i, n., toll, tax, duty.

poscō, -ere, poposci, —, ask, demand, request.

positus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of pōnō, place), situated.

possessō, possessiōnis, f. (possidēō, occupy), occupation, possession; possessions.

possidēō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, occupy, possess, control.

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can, be powerful; plūrimum posse, be very powerful; minimum posse, have very little power.

post, prep. with acc., behind, after; adv., afterwards, later.

postea, adv. (post, after), afterwards, later.

postēāquam, conj. (postea, afterwards + quam, than), after.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., posterior, postrēmus (post, after), next, following.

postquam, conj. (post, after + quam, than), after, as soon as.

postrēmō, adv. (postrēmus, last), finally, at last.

postridiē, adv. (posterus, next + diēs, day), on the next day, the following day.

postulātum, -i, n. (postulō, demand), demand, claim.

postulō, i, demand, ask, require.

potēns, potentis, adj.- (pres. part. of possum, be able), powerful, influential.

potentātus, -ūs, m. (potēns, powerful), chief power, control, supremacy.

potentia, -ae, f. (potēns, powerful), power, influence.

potestās, potestātis, f. (potēns, powerful), power, control; chance, opportunity.

potior, -īri, potītus sum, become master of, gain control of, gain, obtain.

potius, comp. adv., rather.

praē, prep. with abl., before; in comparison with.

praecūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed.

praebō, 2, hold out, offer, furnish.

praecaveō, -ēre, -cāvi, -cautum (caveō, be on one’s guard), guard against in advance, take precautions.

praecēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (cēdō, go), go before; surpass.

praeeceps, praecipitis, adj. (cf. caput, head), headlong.

praecipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (capiō, take), take beforehand; direct.

praecipuē, adv., especially, particularly.

praedicō, i, proclaim, declare, report; boast.

praedōr, i, plunder, rob, raid.

praefectus, -i, m. (praeficio, put in command of), officer, commander.

praefero, -ferre, praetuli, praelatum
praetor, praetoris, m., commander, praetor.
praetorius, -a, -um, adj. (praetor, commander), of a commander, praetorian; praetoria cohors, body guard.
premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, press, push hard, assail.
prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsum, lay hold of, seize, catch.
pretium, -ī, n., price.
prex, precis, f., prayer, entreaty.
prīdiē, adv. (praē, before + diēs, day), on the day before.
primipilus, -ī, m., chief centurion.
prīmō, adv. (prīmus, first), at first, in the first place.
prīnum, adv. (prīmus, first), first, in the first place.
prīmus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of prior), first; prīmā lūce, at daybreak; prīmā nocte, in the first part of the night.
prīncēps, prīncipis, adj. (prīmus, first + capiō, take), chief, first; masc. as noun, chief, leader, prominent man.
principātus, -ūs, m. (prīnceps, chief); chieftainship, leadership.
prior, prius, comp. adj., former; masc. pl. as noun, those in front; superl., prīmus.
priśtinus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. prior, former), former, old, ancient.
prius, comp. adv. (prius, former), before, sooner; with quam, a conj., sooner than, before.
prīvātim, adv. (prīvātus, private), privately; as private citizens.
prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal, individual.
prō, prep. with abl., before, in front of; for, in behalf of; for, in place of, as; in return for, in consideration of; in view of; in accordance with.
probō, 1, approve; prove, show.
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, go), go forward, advance; proceed.
Procillus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Procillus, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus.
procul, adv., at a distance, a long way off.
prōcumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, lean forward; fall down.
prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run forward, rush ahead.
prōdeō, -ire, prōdiō, prōditum (eō, go), go forward, advance.
prōdō, -ere, prōdidī, prōditum (dō, give), give forth; hand down.
prōducō, -ere, -duxi, -ductum (ducō, lead), lead forth, lead out; draw up.
proelior, 1 (proelium, battle), engage in battle, fight.
proelium, -i, n., battle, fight.
profectīō, profectiōnis, f. (proficiscor, start out), a starting out, departure.
proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, start out, depart, go; come.
prōfīgō, 1, strike down, overcome; rout.
profugīō, -ere, -fugiō, -fugītum (fugiō, flee), flee, run away, escape.
prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj. (nāscō, be born), descended, sprung.
prōgredior, progredi, -gressus sum, go forward, proceed, advance.
prohibēō, 2 (habeō, have, keep), keep from, keep out, hinder, prevent, prohibit; defend.
prōiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (iaciō, throw), throw forward, cast, hurl; give up, reject, abandon.
prōmoveō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum (moveō, move), move forward, push forward, advance.
prope, prep. with acc., near, close to; adv., prope, propius, proximē, near, almost.
prōpellō, -ere, propuli, propulsum (pellō, drive), drive forward, drive, put to flight, rout, repel.
properō, 1, hasten, hurry.
propinquitās, propinquitatīs, f. (propinquus, near), nearness; kinship, relationship.
propinquus, -a, -um, adj. (prope, near), near, close by; as noun, relative, kinsman.
propius, sec prope.
prōpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum (pōnō, place), put forward, present, display; make known, disclose.
propter, prep. with acc., on account of, because of.
proptereaē, adv. (propter, on account of), on account of this, for this reason; propterea quod, conj., for the reason that, because.
prōpugnō, 1 (pugnō, fight), fight for, defend, make a sortie.
prōpulsō, 1 (frequentative of propellō, drive forward), drive forward, drive off, repel.
prōsequor, -i, -secūtus sum (sequor, follow), follow, pursue; with ōrātiōne, address.
prōspectus, -ūs, m. (prōspiciō, look forward), view, outlook, prospect.
prōspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum, look forward, look out for, see to, provide for.
prōstinus, adv., at once, immediately.
prōturbō, 1, drive in confusion, frighten away, repel.
prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -visum (videō, see), see ahead, foresee; attend to, care for, see to.
prōvinciā, -ae, f, province.
prōvolō, 1, fly forth, rush out.
prōximē, adv., superl. of prope (proximus, nearest), nearest; last, most recently.
prōximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of proprius, nearest, next, following; shortest; last; with the force of a prep. with acc., next to.
prūdentia, -ae, f. (cf. prōvideō, see beforehand), foresight, wisdom, prudence.
公共ē, adv. (publicus, public), in the name of the state, officially.
publicus, -a, -um, adj., public, of the state; rés pública, commonwealth, state, government.
Publius, -ī, m., a Roman given name.
pudor, pudōris, m., sense of shame, sense of honor.
puer, puerī, m., boy; pl., children.
pugna, -ae, f. (pugnō, fight), fighting, battle.
pugnō, 1, fight, contend, strive.
pulsum, see pellō.
pūrgō, 1, clean, clear, excuse, free from blame.
pūtō, 1, think, consider.
Pyrēnāeus, -a, -um, of the Pyrenees (mountains); between Gaul and Spain.

Q
Q, abbr. for Quintus.
queda, adv. (abl. of qui, who), by which way, where.
quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. quattuor, four), forty.
quadrīngentiā, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. quattuor, four + centum, hundred), four hundred.
quaeō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, seek, look for; ask, inquire about.
quaeōtor, quaestōris, m. (quaerō, seek), quaestor, Roman officer in charge of public money and military finances.
quālis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort.
quam, 1. interrog. adv., in what manner, how; 2. rel. adv., with a superl., as . . . as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible; quam diū, as long as; 3. conj., with a comp., than; priusquam, sooner than.
quantopere, adv. (quantus, how great + opus, work), how greatly, how much.
quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., how great, how large, how many; neut. as noun, how much; tantus . . . quantus, as much as, as great as.
quārē, adv. (qui, which + rés, thing), on account of which thing, why.
quārūs, -a, -um, num. adj. (quattuor, four), fourth.
quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four.
quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj. (quattuor, four + decem, ten), fourteen.
-que, conj., enclitic, and.
queror, -i, questus sum, lament, be-
mourn.
qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who,
which, what, that; he who, those
who; quem ad modum, as; quam
ob rem, why, therefore.
qui, quae, quod, interrog. adj., which,
what; quem ad modum, how;
quam ob rem, why.
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcum-
que, indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or
quoddam, indef. pron., a certain,
a certain one, one; certain, some.
quidem, adv., indeed, at any rate;
nē . . . quidem, not even.
quīn, conj., that not, but that, from;
quīn etiam, nay, even; moreover.
quīnam, quaenam, quodnam;
quīnam, quīdnam, interrog. pron., whoever, whichever, what-
ever.
quīndecim, indecl. num. adj. (quīn-
que, five + decem, ten), fifteen.
quīn- 
egintī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (quīn-
que, five + centum, hundred), five
hundred.
quīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (quīn-
que, five), five each, five.
quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf.
quīnque, five), fifty.
quīnquē, indecl. num. adj., five.
quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj. (quīnque,
five), fifth.
Quīntus, -i, m., a Roman given name.
quis, quīd, interrog. pron., who,
which, what; quid, why, how.
quis, quae, quid, indef. pron. used
after sī, nisi, nē, num, any one,
anything; some one, something; any.

quisam, see quīnam.
quīsquam, quicquam, indef. pron.,
any, any one, anything.
quīsque, quaeque, quidque and (as
adj.) quodque, indef. pron., each,
each one, every, every one.
quīsquis, quicquid, indef. rel. pron.,
whoever, whatever.
quīvis, quaevīs, quīdvis and (as
adv. or adj.) quodvīs, indef. pron., any
one, anything whatever, any.
quō, 1. adv., rel., where; interrog.,
whither; indef., anywhere; 2.
conj., with a comp., in order that,
so that; ēō . . . quō, the . . . the.
quōd, conj., in that, as to the fact that,
that, namely that; so far as;
because; propterēa quod, for the
reason that, because; quod sī, but
if.
quōminus, conj., so that not, that not,
but that, to.
quoniam, conj., since now, since, be-
cause.
quoque, conj., also, too.
quōt, indecl. num. adj., how many.
quōtannis, adv. (cf. annus, year),
yearly, annually.
quōtiēns, adv., how many times, how
often.

R
rādīx, rādicis, f., root; pl. with
montis, foot, base.
rāda, -ae, f., wagon (with four
wheels).
rāmus, -i, m., bough, branch.
rapia, -ae, f., robbery, plunder;
plundering.
ratiō, ratiōnis, f., reckoning, list,
estimate; plan, method, design;
saepès, saepis, f., hedge.
sagittārius, -ī, m., archer, Bowman.
salūs, salūtis, f., welfare, preservation; security, safety.
sancīō, -īre, sānxi, sānctum, guarantee, arrange, agree.
sānītās, sānītātis, f., soundness, good sense, sanity.
Santonī, -ōrum (Santonēs, -um), m., a tribe of western Gaul.
sarcinae, -ārum, f., packs, personal luggage.
satia, adv., enough, sufficiently; indecl. adj., enough, sufficient, rather; indecl. noun, enough: satia habēre, be satisfied.
satisfaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factum (satiā, enough + faciō, do), do enough, make amends; apologize.
satisfaciōnīs, f. (satisfaciō, do enough), satisfaction; apology.
saxum, -ī, n., rock, large stone.
scelus, sceleris, n., wickedness, wicked deed, crime.
scientia, -ae, f. (sciō, know), knowledge, skill.
scliō, 4, know, understand.
scribō, -ere, scripsum, scriptum, write.
scūtum, -ī, n., shield, buckler.
sē, see sui.
sēcrētō, adv., separately, secretly, privately.
sectō, sectōnis, f., booty.
sēcum, for cum sē.
secundum, prep. with acc. (cf. sequor, follow), after, besides, along.
secundus, -a, -um, adj. (sequor, follow), second; favorable, successful, prosperous.
seđ, conj., but, but yet, but in fact.
sēdecim, indecl. num. adj. (sex, six + decem, ten), sixteen.
sēdēs, sēdis, f., seat, residence, abode, settlement.
sēditōsus, -a, -um, adj., rebellious, mutinous.
Sedusii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Germany.
Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of east central Gaul.
semel, num. adv., once; semel atque iterum, time and again.
sēmentis, sēmentis, f., a sowing.
semper, adv., always, constantly.
senātor, senātōris, m. (senex, old), elder; senator.
senātus, -ūs, m. (senex, old), body of elders, senate.
senex, senis, adj., old; masc. as noun, old man.
sēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (sex, six), six each.
Senonēs, -um, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.
sententia, -ae, f. (sentiō, perceive), opinion, thought, view; purpose.
sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnum, perceive, feel, realise, think.
sentis, sentis, m., brier, thorn.
sēparātim, adv. (parō, prepare), separately, individually.
septem, indecl. num. adj., seven.
septentriō, septentriōnis, m. (cf. septem, seven), the seven stars of the Great Bear; hence the north.
septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (septem, seven), seventh.
septultūra, -ae, f., burial.
Sēquana, -ae, m., a river in Gaul; the modern Seine.
Sēquanus, -a, -um, Sequanian; generally masc. pl., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
sequor, -i, secūtus sum, follow, pursue; accompany, attend.
servīlis, -e, adj. (servus, slave), of a slave, of slaves, servile.
servitūs, servitūtis, f. (servus, slave), slavery, subjection.
servō, i, keep, maintain.
servus, -i, m., slave.
sescenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. (sex, six + centum, hundred), six hundred.
sēsē, see sui.
sētius, adv., less; nihilō sētius, nevertheless.
seu, see sive.
sex, indecl. num. adj., six.
sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. sex, six), sixty.
Sextius, -i, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Baculus.
si, conj., if, whether, to see whether; quod si, but if.
sić, adv., so, thus, in such a way; as follows, sicut or sicutī, adv. (sic, so + ut, as), so as, just as.
signifer, signiferī, m. (signum, standard + ferō, bear), standard bearer.
significātiō, significātiōnis, f. (significō, make signs), announcement, indication, signal.
significō, i (signum, sign + faciō, make), make signs, make plain, show, announce, indicate.
signum, -i, n., sign, signal, standard, ensign; signa ferre, advance; signa inferre, charge; signa convertere, wheel about.
silva, -ae, f., wood, woods, forest.
silvestris, -e, adj. (silva, wood), wooded.
simul, adv., at the same time.
simulātiō, simulātiōnis, f. (simulō, pretend), pretense, feigning.
simulō, i, pretend, feign.
sīn, conj., but if.
sine, prep. with abl., without.
singulāris, -e, adj. (singulī, one by one), one by one; singular, remarkable, unusual.
singulī, -ae, -a, num. adj., one by one, single, separate.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left, on the left; fem. as noun, left hand.
sīve, seu, conj., or if; sīve . . . sīve, either . . . or, whether . . . or.
socer, socerī, m., father-in-law.
socius, -i, m., comrade, ally.
sōl, sōlis, m., sun.
solicitō, i, arouse, disturb, stir up; tempt; incite.
solum, -i, n., soil.
sūlum, adv. (sūlus, alone), alone, only; nōn sūlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.
sūlus, -a, -um, gen. sūlius, adj., alone, only.
soror, sorōris, f., sister; soror ex mātre, half-sister.
sors, sortis, f., lot.
spātium, -i, n., space, distance, period of time.
speciēs, -ēs, f., sight, appearance, show.
spectō, i, look at, face, lie; consider.
speculātor, speculātōris, m. (speculōr, spy), spy, scout.
speculator, i, spy.
spērō, i (spēs, hope), hope, expect.
spēs, speī, f., hope, expectation.
spiritus, -ūs, m., breath; pride, haughtiness, airs.
spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), f., of one's own will; suā sponte, by their own influence, of his own free will.
statim, adv., immediately, at once, on the spot.
statiō, statiōnis, f., guard, outpost, picket.
statū, -ere, statuā, statūtum, set up, put in place; decide, determine; pass sentence, judge.
statūra, -ae, f., size (of body), stature.
stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj. (stipendium, tribute), paying tribute, tributary.
stipendium, -i, n., tribute, tax.
strepitus, -ūs, m., uproar, din, noise.
studeō, -ere, studuī, —, be eager for, strive for, desire; pay attention to; favor.
studium, -i, n. (studeō, be eager), eagerness, zeal; devotion.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl.; 1, with acc., under, up to, towards, near to; 2, with abl., under, at the foot of.
subdūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum (ducō, lead), lead off, withdraw.
subeō, -ire, subiī, subitum (eō, go), go under, come up to, approach; undergo, endure.
subicīō, -ere, iēci, iectum (iacīō, throw), throw from under, cast upward, hurl.
subītō, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly.
sublātus, see tollō.
sublevō, i, raise up, lighten; aid, assist, help.

subministrō, i, furnish, supply, provide.
submittō, -ere, -misi, -missum (mittō, send), send up, send, dispatch.
submoveō, -ère, -mōvī, -mōtum (moveō, move), move away, drive away, dislodge.
subruō, -ere, subruī, subrūtum, undermine, dig under.
subsequor, -i, -secūtus sum (sequor, follow), follow closely, follow up, pursue.
subsidium, -i, n., relief, reserves; aid, help, assistance, réinforcement.
subsistō, -ere, substitī, —, stand fast, halt, hold one's position, make a stand.
subsum, -esse, subfui, — (sum, be), lie near, be at hand, be close by.
subtrahō, -ere, trāxi, tractum (traho, drag), take away, withdraw.
subvehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, bring up, carry up, convey up.
succēdō, -ere, cessi, cessum (cessō, go), come up to, approach near to; come up, advance.
Suēbus, -a, -um, of the Suebi; generally masc. pl., a tribe of central Germany.
Suessiōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of Belgians.
Sūii (gen.), sibi, sē (sēsē), sē (sēsē), third pers., reflex. pron., himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Sülla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. Lucius Cornelius Sulla, consul R.C. 88, dictator 81-79.
sum, esse, fui, —, be, exist, live; come to pass, happen; remain.
summa, -ae, f. (summus, highest),
sum, total; control, management;
summa imperii, chief command.
summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of
superus, see superus.
sümö, -ere, sümpsi, sümpsum, take
away, take up, gather; take, as-
sume; with supplicium, insist.
sümpsumus, -üs, m., expense.
superbē, adv., haughtily, proudly,
arbitrarily.
superior, -ius, adj., superl. of su-
perus, see superus.
superō, 1 (superus, above), conquer,
defeat.
supersedēō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, re-
frain from, postpone, omit.
supersum, -esse, superfui, — (sum,
bé), be over, survive, remain.
superus, -a, -um, adj., above, over;
comp., superior, higher, upper;
former, previous; superl., sum-
num, highest, greatest, chief; re-
markable, most important; sum-
num mōns, the top of the moun-
tain.
suppētō, -ere, -petīvī, -petitum
(petē, seek), be near, be on hand.
supplex, supplicis, adj., suppliant.
supplicātiō, supplicatiōnis, f., pub-
lic prayer, thanksgiving.
supplicer, adv. (supplex, suppli-
ant), humbly.
supplícium, -i, n. (supplex, sup-
pliant), punishment, capital pun-
ishment, torture.
supportō, 1 (portō, carry), bring up,
convey.
suprā, adv., above, before.
suscipió, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (capiō,
take), take up, undertake, assume.
suscipió, suspiciōnis, f. (suspicer,
suspect), suspicion.
suspicer, 1, suspect, mistrust.
sustentō, 1 (frequentative of sus-
tineō, hold up), hold up, sustain,
withstand, hold out.
sustineō, -ēre, -tīnī, -tentum
(teneō, hold), hold up, withstand,
sustain; stand up; hold out; en-
dure.
suus, -a, -um, possess. adj., his own,
her own, its own, their own; his,
her, hers, its, their; masc. pl. as
noun, his (their) men, friends,
countrymen; neut. as noun, his
(thier) property, possessions.

T
T., abbr. for Titus.
tabernāculum, -i, n., tent.
tabula, -ae, f., board; tablet, list.
taceō, 2, be silent, keep silent, leave
unmentioned.
tacitus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of
taceō, be silent), silent.
tam, adv., so far, so, to such a de-
gree.
tamen, adv., nevertheless, still, how-
ever.
tametsi, conj., although.
tandem, adv., at length, at last, fi-
nally; quid tandem, what, pray.
tantopere, adv. (tantus, so great +
opus, work), so greatly, so eagerly; so
bitterly.
tantulus, -a, -um, adj. (diminutive
of tantus, so great), so small, so
trifling.
tantum, adv. (tantus, so great), so
much, so far, to such a degree.
tantus, -a, -um, adj., so large, so great, so much; tantis, of such value; tantus . . . quantus, as much as, as great as.
tardō, 1 (tardus, slow), make slow, delay; check.
tardus, -a, um, adj., slow, weary.
tectum, -i, n., shelter, roof.
tegmentum, -i, n., covering.
tēlum, -i, n., missile, weapon; dart, spear.
temerārius, -a, -um, adj. (temerē, rashly), rash, reckless, headstrong.
temerē, adv., rashly, recklessly, blindly.
temperantia, -ae, f. (temperō, control one's self), self-control, prudence, moderation.
temperō, 1, control one's self, restrain; sibi temperēre quin, restrain themselves from.
temptō, 1, try to gain, attempt, try; tempt.
tempsus, temporis, n., time; crisis, emergency; omnī tempore, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future.
tendō, -ere, tetendi, tentum or tēnsum, stretch; stretch out, extend.
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum, hold, have, keep, occupy; keep back, restrain, bind.
tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender, young.
ter, num. adv. (cf. trēs, three), three times.
tergum, -i, n., back; terga verteō, flee.
terra, -ae, f., the earth, ground, soil, land.
terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. (terra, earth), of earth.
terror, terrōris, m., fright, panic, alarm.
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. (ter, three times), third.
testamentum, -i, n. (cf. testis, witness), will.
testimōnium, -i, n. (cf. testis, witness), evidence, proof.
testis, testis, m. and f., witness.
testūdō, testūdinis, f., tortoise; bulwark of shields, testudo, formed by a body of soldiers holding their shields over their heads.
Teutonī, -ōrum (Teutonēs, -um), m., a tribe of northern Germany.
Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of the Tigurini; generally masc. pl., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, fear, be afraid.
timidus, -a, -um, adj. (timeō, fear), fearful, afraid, cowardly, timid.
timor, timōris, m. (timeō, fear), fear, dread, cowardice, fright, panic.
Titūrius, -i, m., see Sabīnus.
Titus, -i, m., a Roman given name.
tolerō, 1 (cf. tollō, lift), bear, endure, sustain; with famem, satisfy.
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, lift, take up, carry away, remove; give up; perf. part., elated.
Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.
tormentum, -i, n., windlass; war engine.
totidem, adv., just as many, the same number.
tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius, adj., the whole, entire, all.
trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber.
trädö, -ere, trädīdī, trädītūm (dō, give), give over, give up, surrender, yield.
trädūcō, -ere, -düxi, -ductum (dücō, lead), lead over or across, bring over.
trágula, -ae, f., javelin, dart.
trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractum, drag, draw; hurry along.
trānō, 1, swim over or across.
trāns, prep. with acc., across, over, beyond.
trānsseō, -ire, trānsīi, trānsītūm (ēō, go), go across, cross; pass through.
trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fīctum, pierce through, transfix.
transgrediōr, trāngredīōr, trāngressum sum, go across, cross.
trānsportō, 1 (portō, carry), carry across, bring over.
trānsversus, -a, -um, adj. (vertō, turn), turned across; crosswise; trānsversa fossa, cross-ditch.
trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (trēs, three + centum, hundred), three hundred.
trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three.
Trēverī, -orum, m., a tribe of northeastern Gaul.
Trībōcī, -orum, m., a tribe of Germans in Belgic Gaul.
trībūnus, -ī, m., tribune; trībūnus militarii, military tribune, of whom there were six in each legion.
trībuō, -ere, tribui, trībūtum, distribute; assign, ascribe, attribute, give credit; magnopere trībuere, give especial credit.
trīduum, -ī, n. (trēs, three + diēs, day), three days.
trigintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. trēs, three), thirty.

trīni, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. trēs, three), three each, triple.
triplēx, triplicis, adj. (cf. trēs, three), triple.
trīstīs, -e, adj., sud, gloomy, dejected.
trīstitia, -ae, f. (tristis, sad), sadness, dejection.
Troucillus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a Gaul, personal friend of Caesar.
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet.
Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.
tum, adv., at that time, then; then too; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; tum dēmum, then finally or at length.
tumultus, -ūs, m., uproar, confusion, noise; uprising, insurrection.
tumulus, -ī, m., mound, hillock.
Turolī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
turpis, -e, adj., ugly; disgraceful, shameful.
turpitūdō, turpitūdinis, f. (turpis, ugly), disgrace, shame.
turris, turris, f., tower.
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., secure, safe, protected.

U
ubi, rel. adv., where; when, as soon as.
ulcisōr, -ī, ultus sum, avenge; punish.
ūllus, -a, -um, gen. āullus, adj., any; as noun, any one.
ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., farther, more remote; superl., ultimus, farthest, most remote.
ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond.
ultrō, adv., willingly, voluntarily; ultrō citrōque, back and forth.
ultus, see ulciscor.
umquam, adv., at any time, ever.
ūnā, adv. (ūnus, one), in the same place; with cum, at the same time with, along with.
unde, rel. adv., from which place, whence.
ūndecimūs, -a,-um, num. adj. (ūnus, one + decem, ten), tenth.
undique, adv. (unde, whence), from all sides, on all sides.
ūniversus, -a,-um, adj. (ūnus, one + vertō, turn), all, whole, entire, in a lump.
ūnus, -a,-um, gen. ūnīus, num. adj., one, only one, alone; ūnō tempore, at the same time; neut. as noun, one fact.
urbs, urbis, f., city; the city (of Rome).
urgeō, -ēre, ursi, —, press, push hard.
uaque, adv., all the way, up to, as far as; even.
ūsus, -ūs, m. (ūtor, use), use, experience, practice; profit, advantage; ex īsus, to the advantage.
ut, utī, adv., how, as, as if; conj. with indic., as, when; conj. with subjunc. of purpose, that, in order that; with subjunc. of result, that, so that.
ūtēr, utra, utrum, gen. ūtrīus, adj., which of two, which.
ūterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. ūtrīusque, adj., each of two, either, both.
ūtī, see ut.
ūtī, see ūtōr.
ūtōr, -ī, ūsus sum, use, employ; accept, adopt; enjoy, receive; practice, display.
utrimquē, adv. (uterque, each of two), on each side.
ūtrum, conj. (uter, which of two), whether; utrum . . . necne, whether . . . or not.
uxor, uxōris, f., wife.

V
vacō, 1, be empty, lie unoccupied.
vacuus, -a, -um, adj. (vacō, be empty), empty, unoccupied; clear, free.
vadam, -i, m., shallow place, ford.
vagor, 1, wander, roam, rove.
valeō, 2, be strong, have power or influence.
Valerius, -i, m., the name of a Roman gens. See Prociulius, Cæbūrus, Flaccus, Troucillius.
vāllum, -i, n., rampart, entrenchment, earthworks.
Vangionēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.
vārius, -a, -um, adj., changing, varying.
vāstō, 1, lay waste, plunder, ravage.
vāticinātiō, vāticinātiōnis, f., prediction, prophecy.
vectigal, vectigālis, n., tax, toll, tribute; pl., revenue.
vehementer, adv., vigorously, fiercely, severely, thoroughly, very much.
vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.
Veliocassēs, -ium, m., a tribe of the Belgians.
vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., swift, rapid.
velut, adv., as, just as.
vendō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dō, give), offer for sale, sell.
Venellī, -ôrum, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.
Venetī, -ôrum, m., a tribe of extreme western Gaul.
veniō, -âre, vēnī, ventum, come, arrive; impers. in pass., ventum est, he (they) came.
Verbigenus, -î, m., a district of Helvetia.
verbum, -î, n., word; facere verba, speak, plead.
vereor, 2, reverence; fear, dread.
vergō, -ere, —, —, incline; slope, lie.
vergobretus, -î, m., vergobret, the title of the Aeduan chief magis-trate.
vērō, adv. (vērus, true), in fact; but, however.
versō, 1 (frequentative of vertō, turn), keep turning; pass., be engaged, be busy; be, remain.
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn; terga vertere, flee.
Verucloetius, -î, m., an ambassador of the Helvetians.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.
Vesontiō, Vesontiōnis, f., a town of the Sequanians.
vesper, vesperī or vesperis, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards nightfall.
veterānus, -âre, -um, adj. (vetus, old), old, veteran.
vētō, -âre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid.
vetus, veteris, adj., old, former, ancient, long-standing; comp., lacking; superl., veterrimus.
vēxillum, -î, n., standard, ensign, flag.
vexō, 1, harass, disturb; plunder, overrun.
via, -ae, f., way, road; march.
victor, victôria, m. (vincō, conquer), conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious, flushed with victory.
victôria, -ae, f. (victor, conqueror), victory.
victus, see vincō.
vīctus, -îus, m., mode of living, living.
vicus, -î, m., village, hamlet.
videō, -âre, vidi, viâsum, see, notice, perceive, know; pass., be seen, seem, appear; seem best.
vigilia, -ae, f., watching, period of watching, watch, one of the four equal parts of the time from sunset to sunrise.
vigintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty.
vimen, vîminis, n., twig, osier.
vinciō, -âre, vînxi, vincitum, bind, fetter.
vincō, -ere, vici, victum, conquer, defeat, overcome.
vinculum, -î, n. (vinciō, bind), chain, fetters; ex vinculis, in chains.
vînea, -ae, f., shed (movable), shelter.
vînum, -î, n., wine.
vir, virī, m., man.
Viromandui, -ôrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.
virtūs, virtūtis, f. (vir, man), manliness; valor, courage; pl., good qualities, virtues.
vis, vis, f., force, strength, power; large number; vim facere, offer violence.
vita, -ae, f., life.

vītō, i, avoid, shun.

vīx, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.

Vocciō, Vocciōnis, m., a king of the Noricans.

vōcō, i (vōx, voice), call, summon.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme southeastern Gaul.

volē, velle, volūi, —, wish, be willing, desire; mean, intend.

voluntās, voluntātis, f. (volē, wish), wish, desire, free will; good will; approval, consent.

voluptās, voluptātis, f. (volē, wish), satisfaction, pleasure, enjoyment.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, utterance, tones of the voice; pl., words, cries.

vulgō, adv. (vulgus, common people), commonly, generally.

vulgus, -ī, n., the common people, crowd, the public, populace.

vulnērō, i (vulnus, wound), wound, hurt.

vulnus, vulneris, n., a wound.

vultus, -ūs, m., looks, expression, countenance.
To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M—6-40